

# reledmac

## Typeset scholarly editions with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X\*

Maïeul Rouquette<sup>†</sup>

based on the original ledmac by

Peter Wilson

Herries Press

which was based on the original edmac, tabmac and edstanza by

John Lavagnino, Dominik Wujastyk, Herbert Breger and Wayne Sullivan.

### Abstract

The **reledmac** provides many tools in order to typeset scholarly editions. It is based on the **eledmac** package, which was based on the **ledmac** package, which was based on the **edmac** T<sub>E</sub>X package.

It can be used in combination with **reledpar** in order to typeset two texts in parallel, like an original text and its translation in a modern language.

**reledmac** provides many tools and options. Normally, they are all documented in this file. Also provided is a help folder, “examples”. The folder contains additional examples (although not for every possible case). Examples starting with “1-” are for basic uses, those starting with “2-” are for advanced uses.

To report bugs or request a new feature, please go to ledmac GitHub page and click on “New Issue”: <https://github.com/maieul/ledmac/issues/>. You must create an account on github.com to access my page (maieul/ledmac). GitHub accounts are free for open-source users. You can post messages in English or in French (preferred).

You can subscribe to the **reledmac** mail list at:  
<http://geekographie.maieul.net/146>

## Contents

<b>1 Introduction</b>	<b>11</b>
1.1 Aim of the package . . . . .	11
1.2 History . . . . .	12
1.2.1 edmac . . . . .	12
1.2.2 ledmac . . . . .	13
1.2.3 eledmac . . . . .	13

---

\*This file (**reledmac.dtx**) has version number v2.14.1a, last revised 2016/07/14.

<sup>†</sup>maieul at maieul dot net

1.2.4 <code>reledmac</code> . . . . .	14
1.3 List of works edited with (r)(e)ledmac . . . . .	14
<b>2 How the package works</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>3 Compatibility warning</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>4 Options</b>	<b>15</b>
4.1 Specific features . . . . .	15
4.2 Optimizing package performance . . . . .	15
<b>5 Text lines and paragraphs numbering</b>	<b>16</b>
5.1 Text lines numbering . . . . .	16
5.2 Paragraphs . . . . .	16
5.2.1 Basics . . . . .	16
5.2.2 Automatically producing <code>\pstart ... \pend</code> . . . . .	17
5.2.3 Content before specific <code>\pstart</code> and after specific <code>\pend</code> . . . . .	18
5.2.4 Content before every <code>\pstart</code> and after every <code>\pend</code> . . . . .	18
5.2.5 Numbering paragraphs ( <code>\pstart</code> ) . . . . .	18
5.2.6 Languages written in Right to Left . . . . .	18
5.2.7 Memory limits . . . . .	18
5.3 Lineation commands . . . . .	19
5.3.1 Disabling lineation . . . . .	19
5.3.2 Setting lineation start and step . . . . .	19
5.3.3 Setting lineation reset . . . . .	20
5.3.4 Setting line number margin . . . . .	20
5.3.5 Other settings . . . . .	20
5.4 Changing the line numbers . . . . .	21
5.4.1 Sublineation . . . . .	21
5.4.2 Locking lineation . . . . .	21
5.4.3 Setting and changing line number . . . . .	21
5.4.4 Line number style . . . . .	22
5.4.5 Skipping and hiding number . . . . .	22
5.4.6 Execute code at each line . . . . .	22
<b>6 Apparatus commands</b>	<b>23</b>
6.1 Terminology . . . . .	23
6.2 Critical notes . . . . .	23
6.2.1 The lemma . . . . .	23
6.2.2 Footnotes . . . . .	24
6.2.3 Endnotes . . . . .	24
6.2.4 Paragraph in critical apparatus . . . . .	26
6.2.5 Change lemma and line number . . . . .	26
6.2.6 Changing the names of commands for critical apparatus . . . . .	27
6.3 Disambiguation of identical words in the apparatus . . . . .	27
6.3.1 Basic use . . . . .	27

6.3.2 Notes about input encoding with UTF-8 processor . . . . .	28
6.3.3 Use with <code>\lemma</code> command . . . . .	28
6.3.4 Customizing . . . . .	30
6.4 Apparatus of Manuscripts . . . . .	30
6.4.1 Marking sections of text . . . . .	31
6.4.2 Layout of the apparatus of manuscripts . . . . .	31
6.4.3 Settings . . . . .	32
6.5 Familiar notes . . . . .	32
6.5.1 Basic use . . . . .	32
6.5.2 Customizing mark . . . . .	32
6.5.3 Separator for multiple footnotes . . . . .	32
6.6 Changing series . . . . .	33
6.6.1 Create a new series . . . . .	33
6.6.2 Delete series . . . . .	33
6.6.3 Series order . . . . .	33
6.7 Position of critical and familiar footnotes . . . . .	33
<b>7 Critical apparatus appearance</b> . . . . .	<b>33</b>
7.1 Notes arrangement in a series . . . . .	34
7.2 Control line number printing . . . . .	35
7.2.1 Print line number only at first time . . . . .	35
7.2.2 Arbitrary text before line number . . . . .	35
7.2.3 Separator for line range . . . . .	35
7.2.4 Abbreviate line range . . . . .	35
7.2.5 Disable line number . . . . .	36
7.2.6 Printing pstart number . . . . .	36
7.2.7 Printing stanza number . . . . .	36
7.2.8 Separator between line and subline numbers . . . . .	37
7.2.9 Space around number . . . . .	37
7.2.10 Space around line symbol . . . . .	37
7.2.11 Space in place of number . . . . .	37
7.2.12 Boxing line number and line symbol . . . . .	37
7.3 For endnotes . . . . .	38
7.4 Arbitrary code around line number . . . . .	39
7.5 Separator between the lemma and the note . . . . .	39
7.5.1 For footnotes . . . . .	39
7.5.2 For endnotes . . . . .	39
7.6 Font style . . . . .	40
7.6.1 For line number . . . . .	40
7.6.2 For the lemma . . . . .	40
7.6.3 For all notes . . . . .	40
7.7 Wrapping notes . . . . .	41
7.7.1 Wrapping lemmas . . . . .	41
7.7.2 Wrapping contents . . . . .	41
7.8 Indent of notes content . . . . .	41
7.9 Arbitrary code at the beginning of notes . . . . .	41

7.10 Arbitrary code before inserting note . . . . .	42
7.11 Options for footnotes in columns . . . . .	42
7.11.1 Alignment . . . . .	42
7.11.2 Size of the columns . . . . .	42
7.12 Options for paragraphed footnotes . . . . .	43
7.12.1 Mark separation of notes . . . . .	43
7.12.2 Ragged text . . . . .	43
7.13 Options for block of notes . . . . .	43
7.13.1 Text before notes . . . . .	43
7.13.2 Code before notes . . . . .	43
7.13.3 Spacing . . . . .	43
7.13.4 Rule . . . . .	44
7.13.5 Maximum height . . . . .	44
7.13.6 Width . . . . .	44
7.14 Footnotes and the <code>reledpar</code> columns . . . . .	45
7.15 Endnotes in one paragraph . . . . .	45
<b>8 Fonts</b>	<b>45</b>
<b>9 Verse</b>	<b>46</b>
9.1 Basic . . . . .	46
9.2 Define stanza indents . . . . .	46
9.3 Repeating stanza indents . . . . .	46
9.4 Manual stanza indent . . . . .	47
9.5 Stanza breaking . . . . .	47
9.6 Hanging symbol . . . . .	48
9.7 Long verse and page break . . . . .	48
9.8 Content before/after verses . . . . .	48
9.9 Numbering stanza . . . . .	48
9.10 Various tools . . . . .	49
9.11 Notes on empty lines . . . . .	49
<b>10 Grouping</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>11 Cross referencing</b>	<b>50</b>
11.1 Basic use . . . . .	50
11.2 Cross-referencing to a critical note . . . . .	50
11.3 Cross-referencing which return a number in any case . . . . .	51
11.3.1 Cross-referencing in order to define line number of a critical note . . . . .	51
11.4 Not automatic cross-referencing . . . . .	51
11.5 Normal $\LaTeX$ cross-referencing . . . . .	52
11.6 References to start and end lines . . . . .	52
11.6.1 Reference to main text lines . . . . .	52
11.6.2 References to lines that are commented on in the apparatus . . . . .	52
11.6.3 Settings . . . . .	52
11.7 Compatibility with <code>xr</code> package . . . . .	54

<b>12 Side notes</b>	<b>54</b>
12.1 Basics . . . . .	54
12.2 Setting . . . . .	55
12.2.1 Width . . . . .	55
12.2.2 Vertical position . . . . .	55
12.2.3 Distance to the main text . . . . .	55
12.2.4 Separator between notes . . . . .	55
<b>13 Indexing</b>	<b>55</b>
13.1 Basics . . . . .	55
13.2 Referring to critical notes . . . . .	56
13.3 Separator between page and line numbers . . . . .	56
13.4 Using xindy . . . . .	57
13.5 Advanced setting . . . . .	57
<b>14 Glossary</b>	<b>58</b>
14.1 Preamble setting . . . . .	58
14.2 Commands . . . . .	58
<b>15 Tabular material</b>	<b>58</b>
<b>16 Sectioning commands</b>	<b>61</b>
16.1 Sectioning commands without line numbers or critical notes . . . . .	61
16.2 Sectioning commands with line numbering and critical notes . . . . .	62
16.3 Optimization . . . . .	62
<b>17 Quotation environments</b>	<b>63</b>
<b>18 Page breaks</b>	<b>63</b>
18.1 Control page breaking . . . . .	63
18.2 Prevent page break in a long verses . . . . .	63
<b>19 Miscellaneous</b>	<b>64</b>
19.1 Known and suspected limitations . . . . .	64
19.1.1 Non-standard geometry . . . . .	64
19.1.2 floatrow package compatibility . . . . .	64
19.1.3 ‘No room for a new’ . . . . .	64
19.1.4 Marginal notes . . . . .	65
19.1.5 Paragraph shape . . . . .	65
19.1.6 Paragraphed footnotes . . . . .	65
19.1.7 Use with other packages . . . . .	66
19.1.8 Parallel typesetting . . . . .	67
<b>I Implementation overview</b>	<b>68</b>

<b>II Preliminaries</b>	<b>68</b>
II.1 Links with original edmac . . . . .	68
II.2 Package declaration . . . . .	68
II.3 Package options . . . . .	69
II.4 Loading packages . . . . .	71
II.5 Compatibility with Lua $\TeX$ . . . . .	71
II.6 Boolean flags . . . . .	71
II.7 Messages . . . . .	72
II.8 Gobbling . . . . .	78
II.9 Miscellaneous commands . . . . .	78
II.10 Prepare reledpar . . . . .	79
II.11 Booleans provided by other optional packages which are required in any case . . . . .	80
<b>III Sectioning commands</b>	<b>80</b>
<b>IV List macros</b>	<b>84</b>
<b>V Line counting</b>	<b>85</b>
V.1 Choosing the system of lineation . . . . .	85
V.2 Line number margin . . . . .	87
V.3 Line number initialization and increment . . . . .	88
V.4 Line number locking . . . . .	89
V.5 Line number style . . . . .	90
V.6 Line number printing . . . . .	90
V.7 Line number counters and lists . . . . .	91
V.8 Line number locking counter . . . . .	93
V.9 Line number associated to lemma . . . . .	93
V.10 Reading the line-list file . . . . .	96
V.11 Commands within the line-list file . . . . .	98
V.12 Writing to the line-list file . . . . .	111
<b>VI Marking text for notes</b>	<b>117</b>
VI.1 <code>\edtext</code> itself . . . . .	117
VI.2 Substitute lemma . . . . .	124
VI.3 Substitute line numbers . . . . .	125
VI.4 Lemma disambiguation . . . . .	126
<b>VII Paragraph decomposition and reassembly</b>	<b>132</b>
VII.1 Boxes, counters, <code>\pstart</code> and <code>\pend</code> . . . . .	132
VII.2 Processing one line . . . . .	137
VII.2.1 General process . . . . .	137
VII.2.2 Process for “normal” line . . . . .	138
VII.2.3 Process for line containing <code>\eledsection</code> command . . . . .	139
VII.2.4 Hooks . . . . .	140
VII.2.5 Sidenotes and marginal line number initialization . . . . .	140

<b>VIII Line and page number computation</b>	<b>141</b>
<b>IX Line number printing</b>	<b>144</b>
<b>X Pstart number printing in side</b>	<b>148</b>
<b>XI Restoring footnotes and penalties</b>	<b>149</b>
XI.1 Add insertions to the vertical list . . . . .	150
XI.2 Penalties . . . . .	151
XI.3 Printing leftover notes . . . . .	151
XI.4 Text before notes . . . . .	152
<b>XII Critical footnotes</b>	<b>153</b>
XII.1 Fonts . . . . .	153
XII.2 Individual note options . . . . .	154
XII.3 Notes language . . . . .	154
XII.4 General survey of the way we manage notes . . . . .	155
XII.5 General setup . . . . .	156
XII.6 Footnotes arrangement . . . . .	156
XII.6.1 User level macro . . . . .	156
XII.6.2 Normal footnote . . . . .	157
XII.6.3 Paragraphed footnotes . . . . .	161
XII.6.4 Columnar footnotes . . . . .	168
XII.7 Critical notes presentation . . . . .	174
XII.7.1 Font tools . . . . .	174
XII.7.2 Pstart number in footnote . . . . .	175
XII.7.3 Lemma printing . . . . .	175
XII.7.4 Line number printing . . . . .	176
<b>XIII Familiar footnotes</b>	<b>185</b>
XIII.1 Adjacent footnotes . . . . .	185
XIII.2 Regular footnotes for numbered texts . . . . .	186
XIII.3 Footnote formats . . . . .	188
XIII.4 Footnote arrangement . . . . .	189
XIII.4.1 User level macro . . . . .	189
XIII.4.2 Normal footnotes . . . . .	189
XIII.4.3 Two columns footnotes . . . . .	195
XIII.4.4 Three columns footnotes . . . . .	197
XIII.4.5 Paragraphed footnotes . . . . .	199
XIII.5 Wrapping footnote marks in hyperlink . . . . .	203
<b>XIV Code common to both critical and familiar footnote in normal arrangement</b>	<b>204</b>
<b>XV Footnotes' width for two columns</b>	<b>205</b>
<b>XVI Footnotes' order</b>	<b>206</b>

<b>XVII Footnotes' rule</b>	<b>206</b>
<b>XVIII Specific skip for first series of footnotes</b>	<b>207</b>
XVIII.0.1 Overview . . . . .	207
XVIII.0.2 User level command . . . . .	208
XVIII.0.3 Internal commands . . . . .	208
<b>XIX Endnotes</b>	<b>209</b>
XIX.1 Internal commands . . . . .	209
XIX.2 User level commands . . . . .	213
XIX.2.1 Inserting contents to endnotes . . . . .	213
XIX.2.2 Printing endnotes . . . . .	214
<b>XX Generate series of notes</b>	<b>218</b>
XX.1 Test if series is still existing . . . . .	219
XX.2 Init specific to <code>reledpar</code> . . . . .	219
XX.3 For critical footnotes . . . . .	219
XX.3.1 Options . . . . .	219
XX.3.2 Create inserts, needed to add notes in foot . . . . .	221
XX.3.3 Create commands for critical apparatus, <code>\Afootnote</code> , <code>\Bfootnote</code> etc. . . . .	221
XX.3.4 Set standard display . . . . .	223
XX.4 For familiar footnotes . . . . .	224
XX.4.1 Options . . . . .	224
XX.4.2 Create tools for familiar footnotes ( <code>\footnotex</code> ) . . . . .	224
XX.5 The endnotes . . . . .	226
XX.5.1 The auxiliary file . . . . .	226
XX.5.2 The main macro . . . . .	227
XX.5.3 Tools . . . . .	227
XX.5.4 Internal commands . . . . .	228
XX.5.5 The options . . . . .	228
XX.6 Init standards series (A,B,C,D,E) . . . . .	229
<b>XXI Setting series display</b>	<b>230</b>
XXI.1 Change series order . . . . .	230
XXI.2 Test series order . . . . .	230
XXI.2.1 Get the first series . . . . .	230
XXI.3 Series setting . . . . .	231
XXI.3.1 General way of working . . . . .	231
XXI.3.2 Tools to set options . . . . .	231
XXI.3.3 Tools to generate options commands . . . . .	233
XXI.3.4 Options for critical notes . . . . .	234
XXI.3.5 Options for familiar notes . . . . .	236
XXI.3.6 Options for endnotes . . . . .	236
XXI.4 Hooks for a particular footnote . . . . .	238
XXI.5 Alias . . . . .	239



<b>XXII Output routine</b>	<b>239</b>
XXII.1 Page number management . . . . .	239
XXII.2 Extra footnotes output . . . . .	239
XXII.3 Patching standard output of commands . . . . .	242
<b>XXIII Cross referencing</b>	<b>244</b>
XXIII.1 Compatibility with xref . . . . .	257
<b>XXIV Side notes</b>	<b>258</b>
<b>XXV Minipages and such</b>	<b>266</b>
<b>XXVI Indexing</b>	<b>270</b>
XXVI.1 Looking on package order . . . . .	270
XXVI.2 Auxiliary macros for \edindex . . . . .	270
XXVI.3 Code specific to \edindexin critical footnotes . . . . .	271
XXVI.4 Analysis of command in indexed text . . . . .	273
XXVI.5 Code for the formatted index . . . . .	273
XXVI.6 Main code . . . . .	273
XXVI.7 Hyperlink . . . . .	275
XXVI.8 ‘innote’ and ‘notenumber’ option of indextols package . . . . .	277
<b>XXVII Glossaries</b>	<b>278</b>
<b>XXVIII Verse</b>	<b>280</b>
XXVIII.1 Hanging symbol management . . . . .	280
XXVIII.2 Using & character . . . . .	281
XXVIII.3 Code category setting . . . . .	281
XXVIII.4 Stanza count and indent . . . . .	281
XXVIII.5 Numbering stanza . . . . .	283
XXVIII.6 Stanza number in note . . . . .	284
XXVIII.7 Main work . . . . .	284
XXVIII.8 Restore catcode and penalties . . . . .	286
<b>XXIX Apparatus of Manuscripts</b>	<b>287</b>
XXIX.1 User level macro . . . . .	287
XXIX.2 Setting macro . . . . .	288
XXIX.3 Counters and lists . . . . .	288
XXIX.4 Auxiliary file macros . . . . .	288
XXIX.5 Action macro . . . . .	289
XXIX.6 Inserting footnote . . . . .	294
XXIX.7 Other . . . . .	294

<b>XXX Arrays and tables</b>	<b>294</b>
XXX.1 Preamble: macro as environment . . . . .	294
XXX.2 Tabular environments . . . . .	298
XXX.2.1 Disabling and restoring commands . . . . .	298
XXX.2.2 Counters, boxes and lengths . . . . .	301
XXX.2.3 Tabular typesetting . . . . .	305
XXX.2.4 Environments . . . . .	316
<b>XXXI Quotation's commands</b>	<b>317</b>
<b>XXXII Section's title commands</b>	<b>318</b>
XXXII.1 Commands to disable some feature . . . . .	318
XXXII.2 General overview . . . . .	318
XXXII.3 \beforeeledchapter command . . . . .	319
XXXII.4 Auxiliary commands . . . . .	319
XXXII.5 Patching standard commands . . . . .	320
XXXII.6 Main code of \eledxxx commands . . . . .	325
XXXII.7 Macros written in the auxiliary file . . . . .	328
<b>XXXIII Page breaking or no page breaking depending of specific lines</b>	<b>330</b>
<b>XXXIV Long verse: prevents being separated by a page break</b>	<b>331</b>
<b>XXXV Tools for hyperref package</b>	<b>332</b>
<b>XXXVI Compatibility with eledmac</b>	<b>333</b>
<b>Appendix A Things to do when changing versions</b>	<b>336</b>
Appendix A.1 Migrating from edmac to ledmac . . . . .	336
Appendix A.2 Migration from ledmac to eledmac . . . . .	337
Appendix A.3 Migration to eledmac 1.5.1 . . . . .	338
Appendix A.4 Migration to eledmac 1.12.0 . . . . .	338
Appendix A.5 Migration to eledmac 17.1 . . . . .	339
Appendix A.6 Migration to eledmac 1.21.0 . . . . .	339
Appendix A.6.1 \Xledsetnormalparstuffand\ledsetnormalparstuffX	339
Appendix A.6.2 Endnotes . . . . .	339
Appendix A.7 Migration to eledmac 1.22.0 . . . . .	339
Appendix A.8 Migration to eledmac 1.23.0 . . . . .	339
Appendix A.9 Migration from eledmac to reledmac . . . . .	340
Appendix A.9.1 Risk of 'no room for a new' . . . . .	340
Appendix A.9.2 Multiple indices with memoir . . . . .	340
Appendix A.9.3 Deprecated commands and options . . . . .	340
Appendix A.9.4 \renewcommandreplaced by command . . . . .	341
Appendix A.9.5 Commands the names of which have been changed . . . . .	341
Appendix A.9.6 Endnotes . . . . .	343
Appendix A.9.7 Z Series . . . . .	343
Appendix A.9.8 Internal commands . . . . .	343

Appendix A.10 Migration to <code>reledmac</code> 2.1.0 . . . . .	343
Appendix A.11 Migration to <code>reledmac</code> 2.1.3 . . . . .	343
Appendix A.12 Migration to <code>reledmac</code> 2.3.0 . . . . .	343
Appendix A.13 Migration to <code>reledmac</code> 2.4.0 . . . . .	344
Appendix A.14 Migration to <code>reledmac</code> 2.5.0 . . . . .	344
Appendix A.15 Migration to <code>reledmac</code> 2.7.0 . . . . .	344
Appendix A.16 Migration to <code>reledmac</code> 2.7.2 . . . . .	344
Appendix A.17 Migration to <code>reledmac</code> 2.8.0 . . . . .	344
Appendix A.18 Migration to <code>reledmac</code> 2.13.1 . . . . .	344
<b>References</b>	<b>346</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>346</b>
<b>Change History</b>	<b>393</b>

# 1 Introduction

## 1.1 Aim of the package

The `reledmac` package, together with  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , provides several important facilities for formatting critical editions of texts in a traditional manner. Major features include:

- automatic stepped line numbering, by page, section or paragraph;
- sub-lineation within the main series of line numbers;
- variant readings automatically keyed to line numbers;
- caters to both prose and verse;
- multiple series of footnotes and endnotes;
- block or columnar formatting of the footnotes;
- simple tabular material may be line numbered;
- indexing keyed to page and line numbers.

`reledmac` allows the scholar engaged in preparing a critical edition to focus attention wholly on the task of creating the critical text and evaluating the variant readings, text-critical notes and testimonia.  $\text{\LaTeX}$  and `Eledmac` will take care of the formatting and visual correlation of all the disparate types of information.

Apart from `reledmac` there are other  $\text{\LaTeX}$  packages for typesetting critical editions. However, the aim of `reledmac` is to provide an “all in one” and flexible tool in the field of critical editions.

Any suggestions for new features are welcome.

This manual contains a general description of how to use `reledmac` followed by the complete source code and its extensive documentation (in sections I and following,

enumerated with Roman numerals). It ends with a list of actions to do when migrating from one version to other, a change history and an index to the source code.

You do not need to read the source code for this package in order to use it; we provide this code primarily for reference, and many of our comments on it repeat material that is also found in earlier sections. But no documentation, however thorough, can cover every question that comes up and many can be answered quickly by consulting the code. On a first reading, we suggest that you read only the general documentation in sections 2, unless you are particularly interested in the innards of `reledmac`.

## 1.2 History

### 1.2.1 `edmac`

The original version of `edmac` was `TEXTED.TEX`, written by John Lavagnino in late 1987 and early 1988 for formatting critical editions of English plays.

John passed these macros on to Dominik Wujastyk who, in September–October 1988, added the footnote paragraphing mechanism, margin swapping and other changes to suit his own purposes, making the style more like that traditionally used for classical texts in Latin and Greek (e.g., the Oxford Classical Texts series). He also wrote some extra documentation and sent the files out to several people. This version of the macros was the first to be called `edmac`.

The present version was developed in the summer of 1990, with the intent of adding necessary features, streamlining and documenting the code, and further generalizing it to make it easily adaptable to the needs of editors in different disciplines. John did most of the general reworking and documentation, with the financial assistance of the Division of the Humanities and Social Sciences, California Institute of Technology. Dominik adapted the code to the conventions of Frank Mittelbach’s `doc` option, and added some documentation, multiple-column footnotes, cross-references, and crop marks.<sup>1</sup> A description by John and Dominik of this version of `edmac` was published as ‘An overview of `edmac`: a PLAIN  $\TeX$  format for critical editions’, *TUGboat* 11 (1990), pp. 623–643.

From 1991 through 1994, the macros continued to evolve, and were tested at a number of sites. We are very grateful to all the members of the (now defunct) `edmac@mailbase.ac.uk` discussion group who helped us with smoothing out the bugs and infelicities in the macros. Ron Whitney and our anonymous reviewer at the TUG were both of great help in ironing out last-minute wrinkles, while Ron made some important suggestions which may help to make future versions of `edmac` even more efficient. Wayne Sullivan, in particular, provided several important fixes and contributions, including adapting the Mittelbach/Schöpf ‘New Font Selection Scheme’ for use with PLAIN  $\TeX$  and `edmac`. Another project Wayne has worked on is a DVI post-processor which works with an `edmac` that has been slightly modified to output `\specials`. This combination enables you to recover to some extent the text of each line as ASCII code, facilitating the creation of concordances, an *index verborum*, etc.

As of 1994, we were pleased to be able to say that `edmac` was being used for the real-life book production of several interesting editions, such as the Latin texts of Euclid’s *Ele-*

---

<sup>1</sup>This version of the macros was used to format the Sanskrit text in volume I of *Metarules of Pāṇinian Grammar* by Dominik Wujastyk (Groningen: Forsten, 1993).

ments,<sup>2</sup> an edition of the letters of Nicolaus Copernicus,<sup>3</sup> Simon Bredon's *Arithmetica*,<sup>4</sup> a Latin translation by Plato of Tivoli of an Arabic astrolabe text,<sup>5</sup> a Latin translation of part II of the Arabic *Algebra* by Abū Kāmil Shujā' b. Aslam,<sup>6</sup> the Latin *Rithmarchia* of Werinher von Tegernsee,<sup>7</sup> a middle-Dutch romance epic on the Crusades,<sup>8</sup> a seventeenth-century Hungarian politico-philosophical tract,<sup>9</sup> an anonymous Latin compilation from Hungary entitled *Sermones Compilati in Studio Generali Quinqueecclesiensi in Regno Ungarie*,<sup>10</sup> the collected letters and papers of Leibniz,<sup>11</sup> Theodosius's *Spherics*, the German *Algorismus* of Sacrobosco, the Sanskrit text of the *Kāśikāvṛtti* of Vāmana and Jayāditya,<sup>12</sup> and the English texts of Thomas Middleton's collected works.

### 1.2.2 ledmac

Version 1.0 of `tabmac` was released by Herbert Breger in October 1996. This added the capability for typesetting tabular material.

Version 0.01 of `edstanza` was released by Wayne Sullivan in June 1992, to help a colleague with typesetting Irish verse.

In March 2003 Peter Wilson started an attempt to port `edmac` from TeX to LaTeX. The starting point was `edmac` version 3.16 as documented on 19 July 1994 (available from CTAN). In August 2003 the `tabmac` functions were added; the starting point for these being version 1.0 of October 1996. The `edstanza` (v0.01) functions were added in February 2004. Sidenotes and regular footnotes in numbered text were added in April 2004. This port was called `ledmac` (L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X `edmac`).

Since July 2011, `ledmac` is maintained by Maïeul Rouquette. It is increasingly powerful and flexible, but it also has become increasingly divergent from the original TeX macro.

### 1.2.3 eledmac

Important changes were put in version 1.0, to make `ledmac` more easily extensible (see 7 p. 33). These changes can trigger small problems with the old customization. That is why a new name was selected: `eledmac` (extended `ledmac`).

<sup>2</sup>Gerhard Brey used `edmac` in the production of Hubert L. L. Busard and Menso Folkerts, *Robert of Chester's (?) Redaction of Euclid's Elements, the so-called Adelard II Version*, 2 vols., (Basel, Boston, Berlin: Birkhäuser, 1992).

<sup>3</sup>Being prepared at the German Copernicus Research Institute, Munich.

<sup>4</sup>Being prepared by Menso Folkerts *et al.*, at the Institut für Geschichte der Naturwissenschaften in Munich.

<sup>5</sup>Richard Lorch, Gerhard Brey *et al.*, at the same Institute.

<sup>6</sup>Richard Lorch, 'Abū Kāmil on the Pentagon and Decagon' in *Vestigia Mathematica*, ed. M. Folkerts and J. P. Hogendijk (Amsterdam, Atlanta: Rodopi, 1993).

<sup>7</sup>Menso Folkerts, 'Die *Rithmarchia* des Werinher von Tegernsee', *ibid.*

<sup>8</sup>Geert H. M. Claassens, *De Middelnederlandse Kruisvaartromans*, (Amsterdam: Schipphower en Brinkman, 1993).

<sup>9</sup>Emil Hargittay, *Csáky István: Politica philosophiai Okoskodás-szerint való rendes életnek példája (1664–1674)* (Budapest: Argumentum Kiadó, 1992).

<sup>10</sup>Being produced, as was the previous book, by Gyula Mayer in Budapest.

<sup>11</sup>Leibniz, *Sämtliche Schriften und Briefe*, series I, III, VII, being edited by Dr. H. Breger, Dr. N. Gädeke and others at the Leibniz-Archiv, Niedersächsische Landesbibliothek, Hannover. (see <http://www.nlb-hannover.de/Leibniz>)

<sup>12</sup>Being prepared at Poona and Lausanne Universities.

To migrate from `ledmac` to `eledmac`, please read Appendix A.2 p. 337.

#### 1.2.4 `reledmac`

`eledmac` has facilitated the creation of customized critical editions. However, the changes made to allow such customization were made in a non-systematic way. Many deprecated commands were kept and many technical ‘debts’ were accumulated, hindering the future evolution of the package.

For these reasons, Maïeul Rouquette decided on a spring cleaning of the code. As some commands name were changed, the resulting compatibility was broken (a little).

A new name was selected: `reledmac` (extended renewed `eledmac`). To migrate from `eledmac` to `reledmac`, please read Appendix A.9 p. 340.

### 1.3 List of works edited with (r)(e)ledmac

A collaborative list of works edited with (r)(e)ledmac is available at [https://www.zotero.org/groups/critical\\_editions\\_typeset\\_with\\_edmac\\_ledmac\\_and\\_eledmac/items](https://www.zotero.org/groups/critical_editions_typeset_with_edmac_ledmac_and_eledmac/items). Please add your own edition made with (r)(e)ledmac.

## 2 How the package works

The `reledmac` package is a three-pass package like  $\LaTeX$  itself. Although your textual apparatus and line numbers will be printed on the first run, it takes two more passes through  $\LaTeX$  to be sure that everything is correctly placed. If you make any subsequent changes altering the number of lines or notes, the input file may similarly require three passes to get everything to the right place. `reledmac` will tell you that you need to make more runs when it detects changes, but it does not expend the labor to check this thoroughly. If you have problems with a line or two misnumbered at the top of a page, try running  $\LaTeX$  once or twice more.

## 3 Compatibility warning

However, the best way to be sure that one has made the right number of runs is to use some of  $\LaTeX$ ’s run scripts like *latexmk*.

If you use other classes than `\article` or `\book`, or modify the layout with `geometry`, some settings should be made to have correct height for the blocks of notes.

Please read 7.13.5 p. 44.

A file may mix *numbered* and *unnumbered* text.

Numbered text is printed with marginal line numbers and can include footnotes and endnotes that are referenced to those line numbers: this is how you will want to print the text that you are editing.

Unnumbered text is not printed with line numbers, and you can’t use `reledmac`’s note commands with it: this is appropriate for introductions and other material added by the editor around the edited text.

## 4 Options

The package can be loaded with a number of global options which are listed here. There are two types of options: 1) options which provide specific features, and, 2) options which optimize the package's performance. It is advisable for you to read the relevant parts of the handbook, before reading about the first type of option (specific features), but you can look at the second type (package optimization) in your first reading of the manual.

### 4.1 Specific features

**draft** underlines lemmas in the main text.

**auxdir** `reledmac` generates auxiliary files. It could be useful to store them in a specific directory. You can set it using `auxdir=<folder>` option. Note the two following point:

1.  $\TeX$  is not able to create folder. You should create it yourself.
2. The option does not change the default  $\LaTeX$  auxiliary files (`.aux`, `.toc`, ...).

**eledmac-compat** help to migrate from `eledmac` to `reledmac` (see Appendix A.9.5 p. 341).

**nopenalties** must be called in some cases when using paragraphed endnotes (?? p. ??)

**nopbinverse** prevents page break within verse environment.

**noquotation** by default, the quotation environment is redefined within numbered text. You can disable this redefinition with `noquotation` (see 17 p. 63).

**parapparatus** by default, the apparatus cannot contain paragraph breaks; this option enables paragraphing inside the apparatus.

**widthliketwocolumns** set the width of the text printed in a single column to be the same as the width of the text printed in two parallel columns with `reledpar`. This is useful when alternating between normal and parallel typesetting.

**xindy** and `xindy+hyperref` select `xindy` as the index processor (13.4 p. 57).

### 4.2 Optimizing package performance

**nocritical** disables tools for critical footnotes (`\Afootnote`, `\Bfootnote` etc.). If you do not need critical footnotes, this option lets `eledmac` run faster. It will also preserve room for other packages.

**noeledsec** disables tools for `\eledsection` and related commands (16.2 p. 62).

**noend** disables tools for endnotes (`\Aendnote`, `\Bendnote` etc.). If you do not need endnotes, this option lets `reledmac` run faster. It will also preserve room for other packages.

**nofamiliar** disables tools for familiar footnotes (`\footnoteA`, `\footnoteB` etc.). If you do not need familiar footnotes, this option lets `eledmac` run faster. It will also preserve room for other packages.

**noledgroup** `reledmac` allows use of a series of critical notes and a new series of normal notes inside `minipage` and `ledgroup` environments (see 10 p. 49). However, such features use up computer memory, at the expense of other processing needs. So if you do not need this feature, use `noledgroup` option. This should make `reledmac` faster.

**series** `reledmac` defines five levels of notes: A, B, C, D, E. Using all these levels consumes memory space and processing speed. This is why, if your work does not require the entire A–E series, you can narrow down the available number of series. For example, if you only need A and B series, call the package with `series={A,B}` option.

## 5 Text lines and paragraphs numbering

### 5.1 Text lines numbering

`\beginnumbering` Each section of numbered text must be preceded by `\beginnumbering` and followed by `\endnumbering`, as in the following example.

```
\beginnumbering
Text
\endnumbering
```

The `\beginnumbering` macro resets the line number to zero, reads an auxiliary file called `<jobname>.nn` (where `<jobname>` is the name of the main input file for this job, and `nn` is 1 for the first numbered section, 2 for the second section, and so on), and then creates a new version of this auxiliary file to collect information during this run. The first instance of `\beginnumbering` also opens a file called `<jobname>.<series>end` to receive the text of the endnotes. `\endnumbering` closes the `<jobname>.nn` file.

If the line numbering of a text is to be continuous from start to end, then the whole text will be typed between one pair of `\beginnumbering` and `\endnumbering` commands. But your text will most often contain chapter or other divisions marking sections that should be independently numbered, and these will be appropriate places to begin new numbered sections.

`reledmac` has to read and store in memory a certain amount of information about the entire section when it encounters a `\beginnumbering` command, so it speeds up the processing and reduces memory use when a text is divided into a larger number of sections (at the expense of multiplying the number of external files that are generated).

### 5.2 Paragraphs

#### 5.2.1 Basics

`\pstart` Within a numbered section, each paragraph of numbered text must be marked using the `\pend`



`\pstart` and `\pend` commands like this:

```
\pstart
Paragraph of text.
\pend
```

Text that appears within a numbered section but is not marked with `\pstart` and `\pend` will not be numbered.

The following example shows the proper section and paragraph markup and the kind of output that would typically be generated:

```
\beginnumbering
\pstart
This is a sample paragraph, with
lines numbered automatically.
\pend

\pstart
This paragraph too has its
lines automatically numbered.
\pend

The lines of this paragraph are
not numbered.

\pstart
And here the numbering begins
again.
\pend
\endnumbering
```

### 5.2.2 Automatically producing `\pstart ... \pend`

`\autopar` You can use `\autopar` to avoid the nuisance of this paragraph markup and still have every paragraph automatically numbered. The scope of the `\autopar` command needs to be limited by keeping it within a group, as follows:

```
\begingroup
\beginnumbering
\autopar

A paragraph of numbered text.

Another paragraph of numbered
text.

\endnumbering
\endgroup
```

`\autopar` fails, however, on paragraphs that start with a `{` or with any other command that starts a new group before it generates any text. Such paragraphs need to

be started explicitly, before the new group is opened, using `\indent`, `\noindent`, or `\leavevmode`, or using `\pstart` itself.<sup>13</sup>

### 5.2.3 Content before specific `\pstart` and after specific `\pend`

Both `\pstart` and `\pend` can take a optional argument in brackets. Its content will be printed before the beginning of `\pstart` / after the end of `\pend` instead of the argument of `\AtEveryPstart` / `\AtEveryPend`. If you need to start a `\pstart` with brackets, or to add brackets after a `\pend`, just add a `\relax` between `\pstart ... \pend` and the brackets.

This feature is also useful when typesetting verses (see 9 p. 46) or `reledpar` (see 19.1.8 p. 67).

A `\noindent` is automatically added before this argument.

### 5.2.4 Content before every `\pstart` and after every `\pend`

`\AtEveryPstart` You can use both `\AtEveryPstart` and `\AtEveryPend`. Their arguments will be  
`\AtEveryPend` printed before every `\pstart` begins / after every `\pend` ends.

### 5.2.5 Numbering paragraphs (`\pstart`)

`\numberpstarttrue`  
`\numberpstartfalse`  
`\thepstart`

It is possible to insert a number at every `\pstart` command; you must use the `\numberpstarttrue` command to have it. You can stop the numbering with `\numberpstartfalse`. You can redefine the command `\thepstart` to change style. You can change the value of the `pstart` number by using *after* `\beginnumbering`:

```
\setcounter{pstart}{value}
```

`\sidepstartnumtrue`  
`\labelpstarttrue`

On each `\beginnumbering` the numbering restarts.

With the `\sidepstartnumtrue` command, the number of `\pstart` will be printed inside. In this case, the line number will be not printed.

With the `\labelpstarttrue` command, a `\label` added just after a `\pstart` will refer to the number of this `pstart`.

### 5.2.6 Languages written in Right to Left

If you use languages written right to left with `LuaLaTeX` or `XLaTeX`, you must switch text direction *before* the `\pstart` command.

### 5.2.7 Memory limits

**This paragraph is kept for history, but the problems described below should not appear with the most recent version of `TeX`.**

`\pausenumbering`  
`\resumenumbering`

`reledmac` stores a lot of information about line numbers and footnotes in memory as it goes through a numbered section. But at the end of such a section, it empties its

<sup>13</sup>For a detailed study of the reasons for this restriction, see Barbara Beeton, ‘Initiation rites’, *TUGboat* 12 (1991), pp. 257–258.

memory out, so to speak. If your text has a very long numbered section it is possible that your  $\text{\LaTeX}$  may reach its memory limit. There are two solutions to this.

The first solution is to get a larger  $\text{\LaTeX}$  with increased memory.

The second solution is to split your long section into several smaller ones. The trouble with this is that your line numbering will start again at zero with each new section. To avoid this problem, we provide `\pausenumbering` and `\resumenumbers` which are just like `\endnumbering ... \beginnumbering`, except that they arrange for your line numbering to continue across the break. Use `\pausenumbering` only between numbered paragraphs:

```
\beginnumbering
\pstart
Paragraph of text.
\pend
\pausenumbering

\resumenumbers
\pstart
Another paragraph.
\pend
\endnumbering
```

We have defined these commands as two macros, in case you find it necessary to insert text between numbered sections without disturbing the line numbering. But if you are really just using these macros to save memory, you might as well type,

```
\newcommand{\memorybreak}{\pausenumbering\resumenumbers}
```

and type `\memorybreak` between the relevant `\pend` and `\pstart`.

## 5.3 Lineation commands

### 5.3.1 Disabling lineation

`\numberlinefalse` Line numbering can be disabled with `\numberlinefalse`. It can be enabled again with `\numberlinetrue`.

### 5.3.2 Setting lineation start and step

`\firstlinenum` By default, `reledmac` numbers every 5th line. There are two counters that control this behaviour: `firstlinenum` and `linenumincrement`. They can be changed using `\firstlinenum{<num>}` and `\linenumincrement{<num>}`. `\firstlinenum` specifies the first line that will have a printed number, and `\linenumincrement` is the difference between successive numbered lines. For example, to start printing numbers at the first line and to have every other line numbered:

```
\firstlinenum{1} \linenumincrement{2}
```

`\firstsublinenum` There are similar commands, `\firstsublinenum{<num>}` and `\sublinenumincrement{<num>}` for controlling sub-line numbering.

`\sublinenumincrement` You can define `\linenumberlist` to specify a non-uniform distribution of printed

`\linenumberlist`

line numbers. For example:

```
\def\linenumberlist{1,2,3,5,7,11,13,17,19,23,29}
```

to have numbers printed on prime-numbered lines only. There must be no spaces within the definition which consists of comma-separated integer numbers. The numbers can be in any order but it is easier to read if you put them in numerical order. Either omitting the definition of `\linenumberlist` or following the empty definition

```
\def\linenumberlist{}
```

the standard numbering sequence is applied. The standard sequence is that specified by the combination of the `firstlinenum`, `linenumincrement`, `firstsublinenum` and `linenumincrement` counter values.

### 5.3.3 Setting lineation reset

`\lineation` Lines can be numbered either by page, by `pstart` or by section; you specify this using the `\lineation{<arg>}` macro, where `<arg>` is either `page`, `pstart` or `section`.

You may only use this command at places where numbering is not in effect; you can't change the lineation system within a section. You can change it between sections: they don't all have to use the same lineation system. The package's standard setting is `\lineation{section}`. If the lineation is by `pstart`, the `pstart` number will be printed before the line number in the notes.

### 5.3.4 Setting line number margin

`\linenummargin` The command `\linenummargin{<location>}` specifies the margin where the line (or `pstart`) numbers will be printed. The permissible values for `<location>` are `left`, `right`, `inner`, or `outer`: for example, `\linenummargin{inner}`. The package's default setting is

```
\linenummargin{left}
```

to typeset the numbers in the left hand margin. You can change this whenever you're not in the middle of making a paragraph.

More precisely, the value of `\linenummargin` used is the value in effect at the `\pend` of a numbered paragraph. Apart from an initial setting for `\linenummargin`, only change `\linenummargin` after a `\pend`, whereupon it will apply to all following numbered paragraphs, until changed again (changing it between a `\pstart` and `\pend` pair will apply the change to all of the current paragraph).

### 5.3.5 Other settings

`\leftlinenum` `\rightlinenum` `\linenumsep` When a marginal line number is to be printed, there are many ways to display it. You can redefine `\leftlinenum` and `\rightlinenum` to change the way marginal line numbers are printed in the left and right margins respectively; the initial versions print the number in font `\numlabfont` (described below) at a distance `\linenumsep` (initially set to one pica) from the text.

## 5.4 Changing the line numbers

Normally, line numbering starts at 1 for the first line of a section and increments by one for each line thereafter. There are various common modifications of this system and the commands described here allow you to put such modifications into effect.

### 5.4.1 Sublineation

`\startsub` `\endsub` You insert the `\startsub` and `\endsub` commands in your text to turn sub-lineation on and off. For example, stage directions in plays are often numbered with sub-line numbers: as line 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, rather than as 11, 12, and 13. Titles and headings are sometimes numbered with sub-line numbers as well.

When sub-lineation is in effect, the line number counter is frozen and the sub-line counter advances instead. If one of these commands appears in the middle of a line, it doesn't take effect until the next line; in other words, a line is counted as a line or sub-line depending on what it started out as, even if it changes in the middle.

You can change the separator between line number and subline number or using `\Xsublinesep` without any option argument (7.2.8 p. 37 or using `\Xsublinesepside`. But in the second case, it will change the separator only for line number in side, not for the footnotes.

### 5.4.2 Locking lineation

`\startlock` `\endlock` The `\startlock` command, used in running text, locks the line number at its current value, until you insert `\endlock`. It can tell for itself whether you are in a patch of line or sub-line numbering. One use for line-number locking is in printing poetry: there the line numbers should be those of verse lines rather than of printed lines, even when a verse line requires several printed lines. But in this case you may use the `\stanza` mechanism, see 9 p. 46.

`\lockdisp` When line-number locking is used, several printed lines may have the same line number, and you have to specify whether you want the number attached to the first printed line or the last, or whether you just want the number printed by them all, assuming that the settings of the previous parameters requires the display of a line number for this line. You specify your preference using `\lockdisp{<arg>}`; its argument is a word, either `first`, `last`, or `all`. The package initially sets this as `\lockdisp{first}`.

### 5.4.3 Setting and changing line number

`\setline` `\advanceline` In some cases you may want to modify the line numbers that are automatically calculated: if you are printing only fragments of a work but want to print line numbers appropriate to a complete version, for example. The `\setline{<num>}` and `\advanceline{<num>}` commands may be used to change the current line's number (or the sub-line number, if sub-lineation is currently on). They change both the marginal line numbers and the line numbers passed to the notes. `\setline` takes one argument, the value to which you want the line number set; it must be 0 or greater. `\advanceline` takes one argument, an amount that should be added to the current line number; it may be positive or negative.

`\setlinenum` The `\setline` and `\advanceline` macros should only be used within a `\pstart... \pend` group. The `\setlinenum{⟨num⟩}` command can be used outside such a group, for example between a `\pend` and a `\pstart`. It sets the line number to `⟨num⟩`. It has no effect if used within a `\pstart... \pend` group.

#### 5.4.4 Line number style

`\linenumberstyle` Line numbers are normally printed as arabic numbers. You can use `\linenumberstyle{⟨style⟩}`  
`\sublinenumberstyle` to change the numbering style. `⟨style⟩` must be one of:

**Alph** Uppercase letters (A ... Z).

**alph** Lowercase letters (a ... z).

**arabic** Arabic numerals (1, 2, ...)

**Roman** Uppercase Roman numerals (I, II, ...)

**roman** Lowercase Roman numerals (i, ii, ...)

Note that with the **Alph** or **alph** styles, ‘numbers’ must be between 1 and 26 inclusive.

Similarly `\sublinenumberstyle{⟨style⟩}` can be used to change the numbering style of sub-line numbers, which is normally arabic numerals.

#### 5.4.5 Skipping and hiding number

`\skipnumbering` When inserted into a numbered line the macro `\skipnumbering` causes the numbering of that particular line to be skipped; that is, the line number is unchanged and no line number will be printed. Note that if you use it in `\stanza`, you must call it at the beginning of the verse.

`\hidenumbering` When inserted into a numbered line, the macro `\hidenumbering` causes the number for that particular line to be hidden; namely, no line number will print. Note that if you use it in `\stanza`, you must call it at the beginning of the verse.

`\hidenumberingonleftpage` `\hidenumberingonleftpage` is like `hidenumbering`, but is applied only on left page. `\hidenumberingonrightpage` is applied on right page. They can be useful if the position of the line number is depending of the position of the page, but the position of marginal note is fixed.

#### 5.4.6 Execute code at each line

`\dolinehook` `\doinsidelinehook` `reledmac` provides an advanced feature for users. The argument passed to `\dolinehook{⟨arg⟩}` will be executed before slicing a new line in the paragraph. The argument passed to `\doinsidelinehook{⟨arg⟩}` will be executed before printing a new line. In many cases, the latter is more useful than the former. The file `examples/2-line_numbers_in_header.tex` provides an example for printing the first and last line numbers of a page in the header.

## 6 Apparatus commands

### 6.1 Terminology

We call “critical notes” notes which refer to both a lemma, that is a part of text and a line number. Critical notes are subdivided in critical footnotes and critical endnotes.

We call “familiar notes” notes which refer to a footnote mark in the main text.

`reledmac` manages many series of notes of each category. A series of notes is identified by an uppercase letter. When the series letter is at the *beginning* of a command name, it refers to a critical footnote. When the series letter is at the *end* of a command name, it refers to a familiar footnote.

So :

- `\Afootnote` is a critical footnote of the series A.
- `\Bendnote` is a critical endnote of the series B.
- `\footnoteC` is a familiar footnote of the series C.

### 6.2 Critical notes

#### 6.2.1 The lemma

`\edtext` Within numbered paragraphs, all footnotes and endnotes are generated by the `\edtext` macro:

```
\edtext{⟨lemma⟩}{⟨commands⟩}
```

The `⟨lemma⟩` argument is the lemma in the main text: `\edtext` both prints this as part of the text, and makes it available to the `⟨commands⟩` you specify to generate notes.

For example:

I am happy :		1	I am happy : I saw my friend Smith on
I saw my friend <code>\edtext{Smith}{</code>		2	Tuesday.
<code>\Afootnote{Jones C, D.}}</code>			
on Tuesday.			
			1 Smith] Jones C, D.

The lemma `Smith` is printed as part of this sentence in the text, and is also made available to the footnote that specifies a variant, `Jones C, D`. The footnote macro is supplied with the line number at which the lemma appears in the main text.

The `⟨lemma⟩` may contain further `\edtext` commands. Nesting makes it possible to print an explanatory note on a long passage together with notes on variants for individual words within the passage. For example:

I am happy : <code>\edtext{I saw my friend</code>	1	I am happy : I saw my friend Smith on
<code>\edtext{Smith}{\Afootnote{Jones</code>	2	Tuesday.
<code>C, D.}}</code> on Tuesday.]{		
<code>\Bfootnote{The date was</code>		
July 16, 1954.}		1 Smith] Jones C, D.
}		
		1-2 I saw my friend Smith on Tuesday.] The
		date was July 16, 1954.

However, `\edtext` cannot handle overlapping but unnested notes—for example, one note covering lines 10–15, and another covering 12–18; an `\edtext` that starts in the `\lemma` argument of another `\edtext` must end there, too. (The `\lemma` and `\linenum` commands may be used to generate overlapping notes if necessary.)

### 6.2.2 Footnotes

The second argument of the `\edtext` macro, `\commands`, may contain a series of subsidiary commands that generate various kinds of notes.

`\Afootnote` Five separate series of the footnotes are maintained; each macro takes one argument like `\Afootnote{\text}`. When all of the six are used, the A notes appear in a layer just below the main text, followed by the rest in turn, down to the E notes at the bottom. These are the main macros that you will use to construct the critical apparatus of your text.

If you need more series of critical notes, please look at 6.6.1 p. 33.

An optional argument can be added before the text of the footnote. Its value is a comma-separated list of options. The available options are:

- `fulllines` to disable `\Xtwolines` and `\Xmorethantwolines` features for this note (cf. 7.2.4 p. 35).
- `nonum` disables line numbering for this note. A horizontal blank space is added instead. You can use `\Xinplaceoflemmaseparator` to set it (7.5.1 p. 39).
- `nosep` to disable the lemma separator for this note.
- `linangesep=<c>` to change to `<c>` the separator between start line and end line for this particular note.

Example: `\Afootnote[nonum]{\text}`.

### 6.2.3 Endnotes

`\Aendnote` **Inserting endnotes** The package also maintains five separate series of endnotes.

`\Bendnote` If you do not need the endnotes facility, you should use `noend` option when loading `reledmac`.

`\Cendnote` The mechanism is similar to the one for footnotes: each macro takes one or more optional arguments and one single argument, like:

`\Dendnote` `\Aendnote[option]{\text}`.

`\Eendnote` `option` can contain a comma-separated list of values. Allowed values are:

- `fulllines` to disable `\Xendtwolines` and `\Xendmorethantwolines` features for this particular note (cf. 7.2.4 p. 35).
- `nonum` to disable line number for this particular note.
- `nosep` to disable the lemma separator for this particular note. A horizontal blank space is added instead. You can use `\Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator` to set it (7.5.2 p. 40).



- `linangesep=<c>` to change to `<c>` the separator between start line and end line for this particular note.

`\doendnotes` **Printing endnotes** Normally, endnotes are not printed: you must use the `\doendnotes{<s>}`, where `<s>` is the letter of the series to be printed. Put this command where you want the corresponding set of endnotes printed. In this case, all the endnotes of the `<s>` series are printed, for all numbered sections.

`\doendnotesbysection` However, you may want to print the endnotes of one given series covering the first numbered section, then the endnotes of another given series covering the first numbered section, then the endnotes of the first given series covering the second numbered section, then the endnotes of the second given series covering the second numbered section, and so forth. In this case, use `\doendnotesbysection{<s>}`. For each value of `<s>`, the first call of the command will print the notes for the first series, the second call will print the notes for the second series etc. For example, do:

```
\section{Endnotes}
\subsection{First text}
\doendnotesbysection{A}
\doendnotesbysection{B}
\subsection{Second text}
\doendnotesbysection{A}
\doendnotesbysection{B}
```

Note that by default inside endnotes no separator is used between the lemma and the content. However you can use the `\Xendlemmaseparator` macro to define one (7.5.2 p. 39).

As endnotes may be printed at any point in the document they always start with the page number where they are called.

`toendnotes` **Code between endnotes** Sometimes, it is useful to insert content between endnotes of the same series: for example to separate endnotes of different sections of the same text. In this case, you could use *inside numbered text* the command:  
`Xtoendnotes[<series>]{<content>}` where `<series>` is a comma-separated list of the series of endnotes where `<content>` must be inserted. If `<series>` is empty, then `<content>` is inserted to all the series.

For example:

```
\toendnotes{\section{Section's title}}
```

Alternatively, you can use `\Xtoendnotes{<content>}`, where “X” must be replaced by a series letter.

Remember that the endnotes are temporarily stored in an auxiliary file. That means in general you want to write the `<content>` in the auxiliary file *without expanding it*, that is without interpreting TeX content.

However, in some case, you may want to write once-expanded<sup>14</sup> version of the  $\langle content \rangle$ , that is the version where the commands are expanded on the first level. This can be, for example, to get a counter value. Use the starred version in this case. For example:

```
\Atoendnotes*{\string\section{Letter 1 (chap. \thechapter)}}
```

### 6.2.4 Paragraph in critical apparatus

By default, no paragraph can be made in the notes of the critical apparatus. You can allow it by adding the options `parapparatus` when loading the package :

```
\usepackage[parapparatus]{eledmac}
```

Note that you *cannot* use paragraphs (e.g. blank lines or `\par`) inside of notes, when they are set to paragraph arrangement!

### 6.2.5 Change lemma and line number

`\lemma` If you want to change the lemma that gets passed to the notes, you can do this by using `\lemma{ $\langle alternative \rangle$ }` within the second argument to `\edtext` and before the note commands. The most common use of this command is to abbreviate the lemma that's printed in the notes. For example:

```
I am happy :
\edtext{I saw my friend
\edtext{Smith}{\Afootnote{Jones
C, D.}} on Tuesday.}
{\lemma{I \dots\ Tuesday.}
\Bfootnote{The date was
July 16, 1954.}
}
```

1 I am happy : I saw my friend Smith on  
2 Tuesday.

---

1 Smith ] Jones C, D.

---

1-2 I ... Tuesday. ] The date was July 16, 1954.

`\linenum` You can use `\linenum{ $\langle arg \rangle$ }` to change the line numbers passed to the notes.  $\langle arg \rangle$  actually consist of seven parameters: the page, line, and sub-line number for the start of the lemma; the same three numbers for the end of the lemma; and the font specifier for the lemma. As the argument to `\linenum`, you specify those seven parameters in that order, separated by vertical bars (the `|` character). I.e.

```
\linenum{ $\langle start page \rangle$  |  $\langle s. line \rangle$  |  $\langle s. sub-l. \rangle$  |  $\langle end p. \rangle$  |  $\langle e. l. \rangle$  |  $\langle e. sub-l. \rangle$  |  $\langle font \rangle$  | }
```

However, you can retain the value computed by `reledmac` for any number by simply omitting it; and you can omit a sequence of vertical bars at the end of the argument. For example, `\linenum{|||23}` changes only the ending page number of the current lemma.

This command does not change the marginal line numbers in any way; it just changes the numbers passed to the notes. Its use comes in situations that `\edtext` has trouble dealing with for whatever reason. If you need notes for overlapping passages that aren't

<sup>14</sup>The expansion mechanism' of TeX is a quite complex problem, but fundamental. We have no place to explain it fully here. Read introduction to TeX to understand well.

nested, for instance, you can use `\lemma` and `\linenum` to generate such notes despite the limitations of `\edtext`. If the  $\langle lemma \rangle$  argument to `\edtext` is extremely long, you may run out of memory; here again you can specify a note with an abbreviated lemma using `\lemma` and `\linenum`. The numbers used in `\linenum` need not be entered manually; you can use the ‘x-’ symbolic cross-referencing commands below (11 p. 50) to compute them automatically.

Similarly, being able to manually change the lemma’s font specifier in the notes might be important if you were using multiple scripts or languages. The form of the font specifier is three separate codes separated by / characters, giving the family, series, and shape codes as defined within NFSS.

### 6.2.6 Changing the names of commands for critical apparatus

The commands for generating the apparatus have been given rather bland names, because editors in different fields have widely divergent notions of what sort of notes are required, where they should be printed, and what they should be called. But this does not mean you have to type `\Afootnote` when you would rather type something you find more meaningful, like `\variant`.

We recommend that you create a series of such aliases and use them instead of the names chosen here; all you have to do is put commands of this form at the start of your file:<sup>15</sup>

```
\newcommandx{\variant}[2][1,usedefault]{\Afootnote[#1]{#2}}
\newcommandx{\explanatory}[2][1,usedefault]{\Bfootnote[#1]{#2}}
\newcommand{\trivial}[1]{\Aendnote{#1}}
\newcommandx{\testimonia}[2][1,usedefault]{\Cfootnote[#1]{#2}}
```

## 6.3 Disambiguation of identical words in the apparatus

Sometimes, the same word occurs twice (or more) in the same line. `reledmac` provides tools to disambiguate references in the critical notes. The lemma will be followed by a reference number if a given word occurs more than once in the same line.

### 6.3.1 Basic use

`\sameword` To use this tool, you have to mark every occurrence of the potentially ambiguous term with the `\sameword` command:

```
Lupus \sameword{aut} canis \edtext{\sameword{aut}}{\Afootnote{et}} felix
```

In this example, `aut` will be followed, in the critical note, by the exponent 2 if it is printed in the same line as the first `aut`, but it will not if it is printed in a different line. The number is printed only after the second run.

<sup>15</sup>We use `\newcommand` and `\newcommandx` instead of classical `\let` command because the `edtabular` environments have to modify the notes definition, and we need to use the newest definition of notes. Read the handbook of `xargs` to know more about `\newcommandx`.

### 6.3.2 Notes about input encoding with UTF-8 processor

If you use UTF-8 processor, like  $\text{Xe}\text{\LaTeX}$  or  $\text{Lua}\text{\LaTeX}$ , there should not be any glitches. However, pay attention to how characters are encoded. Similar-looking characters may be represented differently in unicode numbering.

For instance, in Greek, “α” has two possible unicode numbers:

- GREEK SMALL LETTER ALPHA (U+03B1) + COMBINING GREEK YPOGEGRAMMENI (U+0345)
- GREEK SMALL LETTER ALPHA WITH YPOGEGRAMMENI (U+1FB3)

Which unicode number you use depends, many times, on your keyboard configuration (the computer-input system).

Inside `reledmac`, the `\sameword` command considers these two unicodes (code positions) as different characters. If you use only one unicode number consistently, the distinction will probably make no difference to how your text looks, but `\sameword` will process the text inaccurately, based on the unicode numbers. To prevent this, do the following:

- If you use  $\text{Xe}\text{\LaTeX}$ , add this line in your preamble: `\XeTeXinputnormalization 1`.
- If you use  $\text{Lua}\text{\LaTeX}$ , use the `uninormalize` package of Michal Hoftich<sup>16</sup> with the `buffer` option set to true.

With these tools,  $\text{Xe}\text{\LaTeX}$  /  $\text{Lua}\text{\LaTeX}$  will dynamicaly normalize unicode input when reading the file. Consequently, you will have no problems with the `\sameword` command.

### 6.3.3 Use with `\lemma` command

If you use the `\lemma` command, `reledmac` cannot know to which occurrence of `\sameword` in the first argument of `\edtext` a word marked with `\sameword` in `\lemma` should refer.

For example in the following example:

```
some thing
\edtext{\sameword{sw}
        and other \sameword{sw}
        and again \sameword{sw}
        it is all}%
{\lemma{\sameword{sw} \ldots all}\Afootnote{critical note}}.%
```

`reledmac` cannot know if the “sw” in `\lemma` refers to the word after “thing”, after “other”, or after “again”.

Consequently, you must tell `reledmac` to which instance of `\sameword` you are referring in the first argument of `\edtext`:

<sup>16</sup><https://github.com/michal-h21/uninormalize>.

- In the content of `\lemma`, use `\sameword` with no optional argument.
- In the first argument of `\edtext`, use `\sameword` with the optional argument `[\langle X \rangle]`.  $\langle X \rangle$  is the depth of the `\edtext` where the `\lemma` is used. So if the `\lemma` is called in a `\edtext` inside another `\edtext`,  $\langle X \rangle$  is equal to 2. If the `\lemma` is called in a `\edtext` “of first level”,  $\langle X \rangle$  is equal to 1. If the lemma is called in both 1 and 2 `\edtext` depth,  $\langle X \rangle$  is 1,2. If that word is referenced in the lemma of every `\edtext` depth,  $\langle X \rangle$  can also be set to `inlemma`.

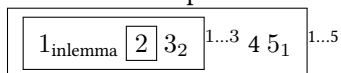
Note that only words that are actually referenced in a `\lemma` need the optional argument. Therefore, the first `\sameword` in the example above should have “1” as its optional argument, to be referenced correctly in the lemma.

Note also that the  $\langle X \rangle$  does not refer to the level where the `\sameword` occurs, but to the level of the `\lemma` that refers to that `\sameword`. For example:

```
\edtext{some \edtext{\sameword[1]{word}}{\Afootnote{om. M}}
      and other \sameword{word}
      and again a \sameword{word}
      it is all}%
}{\lemma{some \sameword{word} \ldots all}\Afootnote{critical note}}.%
```

Here the `\sameword` occurs in an `\edtext` of level 2, but since it is referenced by `\lemma` on level 1, it has “1” in the optional argument.

In the following example figure, each framed box represents an `\edtext` level. Each number is an occurrence of `\sameword`. After a framed box, the text in superscript represents the content of `\lemma` for that `\edtext` level. The text in subscript at the right of a number represents the content of the optional argument of `\sameword`.



The `\sameword` number 3 is called in a `\lemma` related to an `\edtext` of level 2. It must be marked by “2”.

The `\sameword` number 5 is called in a `\lemma` related to `\edtext` of level 1. It must be marked by “1”.

The `\sameword` number 1 is called in two `\lemmas`: one related to a `\edtext` of level 1, the other related to `\edtext` of level 2. It must be marked by “1,2”. However, as `\lemma` is called only in level 1 and 2, “1,2” could be replaced by “inlemma”.

The `\sameword` number 2 is in the first argument of a `\edtext` of level 3, but it has no `\lemma`-command, so there is no need to mark it.

Here, the corresponding code:

```

\edtext{%
  \edtext{%
    \sameword[inlemma]{A} (1)
    \edtext{%
      \sameword{A} (2)
    }%
  }%
  \Afootnote[level~3]%
}
\sameword[2]{A} (3)
}%
{%
  \lemma{%
    \sameword{A}%
    \ldots%
    \sameword{A}%
  }%
  \Afootnote[level~2]%
}%
\sameword{A} (4)
\sameword[1]{A} (5)
}%
{%
  \lemma{\sameword{A}\ldots\sameword{A}}%
  \Afootnote[level~1]%
}

```

1	A (1) A (2) A (3) A (4) A (5)
1	A <sup>1</sup> ...A <sup>5</sup> ] level 1
1	A <sup>1</sup> ...A <sup>3</sup> ] level 2
1	A <sup>2</sup> (2) ] level 3

### 6.3.4 Customizing

`\showwordrank` You can redefine the `\showwordrank` macro to change the way the number is printed. The default value is

```

\newcommand{\showwordrank}[2]{%
  #1\textsuperscript{#2}%
}

```

## 6.4 Apparatus of Manuscripts

The critical notes mostly refer to textual variants between manuscripts which contain the text to be edited. It may so happen that the manuscripts only contain parts of the text. Depending on one's wishes, `reledmac` can generate lists of relevant manuscripts for any delimited portion of text. Such lists are referred to as “apparatuses of manuscripts”.

To produce an apparatus of manuscripts with `reledmac`, you have to insert specific commands that are used to mark the sections for which only part of the manuscripts are relevant. These commands will be processed, and **after the second `TEX` run**, corresponding apparatuses of manuscripts will be inserted in the first (viz. ‘A’ series) level of footnotes.

As the insertion of this apparatus can change the page breaks, you may have to run  $\text{\TeX}$  two or more times. We strongly recommend to use tools like *latexmk* to do that.

### 6.4.1 Marking sections of text

$\backslash\text{msdata}$   $\backslash\text{msdata}\{\langle\text{text}\rangle\}$  must be inserted at the point where a section for which only part of the manuscripts are relevant starts.  $\langle\text{text}\rangle$  can be any arbitrary text, viz. a list of the manuscripts that are used for the section that starts. The command must be attached right at the point where the section starts, with no space, like so:

```
 $\backslash\text{msdata}\{\text{ABC}\}\text{Lorem ipsum}$ 
```

Which means that the section of text starting by “Lorem ipsum” is witnessed by manuscripts A, B and C.

$\backslash\text{stopmsdata}$   $\backslash\text{stopmsdata}$  must be inserted at the point where the section of text previously marked by  $\backslash\text{msdata}$  ends. The command must be attached right to the end of the section, with no space. As  $\backslash\text{stopmsdata}$  is a  $\text{\TeX}$  argumentless macro, it will gobble the following space. To keep that space, you have to either append a backslash followed by a space or  $\{\}$  to  $\backslash\text{stopmsdata}$ , like so:

```
 $\backslash\text{msdata}\{\text{ABC}\}\text{Lorem ipsum dolor}$   
[...]  
 $\text{amet}\backslash\text{stopmsdata}\{\}\backslash\text{msdata}\{\text{ABCD}\}\text{sic transit [...]}$ 
```

Which means that the part of text containing “Lorem ipsum dolor ... amet” is witnessed by manuscripts A, B and C, while the part of text starting by “sic transit” is witnessed by manuscripts A, B, C and D.

$\backslash\text{stopmsdata}$  is also automatically inserted by  $\backslash\text{msdata}$ .

Note that in most cases, any  $\backslash\text{stopmsdata}$  is followed by  $\backslash\text{msdata}$ . However, as these two command are usually separated by a space, it may happen that a line break be automatically inserted between them. This is why it is advised to always insert  $\backslash\text{stopmsdata}$ , even if  $\backslash\text{msdata}$  inserts it in case it is forgotten.

### 6.4.2 Layout of the apparatus of manuscripts

On every page, the apparatus of manuscripts marks the corresponding section with starting and ending line numbers. However, the following rules will be applied:

- If the section does not start on the current page, the starting line number will be the line number of the first line on the page.
- If the section does not stop on the current page, the ending line number will be the line number of the last line on the page.
- If the section neither starts nor ends on the current page, no line number will be printed. The same is true in case both  $\backslash\text{msdata}$  is called at the very beginning of the page and  $\backslash\text{endmsdata}$  is called at the very end of the page.

### 6.4.3 Settings

As the apparatus of manuscripts technically consists of first-level critical notes ('A' series), any setting available for critical notes can be applied (7 p. 33). However, the following *additional* commands are available.

`\setmsdataseries` The series used by default for the apparatus of manuscripts is series A. However, you can change it with `\setmsdataseries{<series>}`.

`\setmsdatalabel` As the apparatus of manuscripts consists of regular critical footnotes, a lemma is associated to them. By default, it is "Ms.". You can change it using `\setmsdatalabel{<txt>}`.

## 6.5 Familiar notes

### 6.5.1 Basic use

`\footnoteA` As well as the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X footnotes generated via `\footnote`, the package also provides five series of additional footnotes called `\footnoteA` through `\footnoteE`. These have the familiar marker in the text, and the marked text at the foot of the page can be formatted using any of the styles described for the critical footnotes. Note that the 'regular' footnotes have the series letter at the end of the macro name whereas the critical footnotes have the series letter at the start of the name.

`\footnoteB`

`\footnoteC`

`\footnoteD`

`\footnoteE`

### 6.5.2 Customizing mark

`\thefootnoteA` Each series uses a set of macros for styling the marks. The mark numbering scheme of series A is defined by the `\thefootnoteA` macro; the default is:

`\bodyfootmarkA` `\renewcommand*{\thefootnoteA}{\arabic{footnoteA}}`

`\footfootmarkA` The appearance of the mark in the text is controlled by `\bodyfootmarkA` which is defined as:

```
\newcommand*{\bodyfootmarkA}{%
  \hbox{\textsuperscript{\normalfont\@nameuse{@thefnmarkA}}}}
```

The command `\footfootmarkA` controls the appearance of the mark at the start of the footnote text. It is defined as:

```
\newcommand*{\footfootmarkA}{\textsuperscript{\@nameuse{@thefnmarkA}}}
```

There are similar command triples for the other series.

### 6.5.3 Separator for multiple footnotes

The `footmisc` package [Fai03] by Robin Fairbairns has an option whereby sequential footnote marks in the text can be separated by commas<sup>3,4</sup> like so. As a convenience `reledmac` provides this automatically.

`\multfootsep` `\multfootsep` is used as the separator between footnote markers. Its default definition is:

```
\providecommand*{\multfootsep}{\textsuperscript{\normalfont,}}
```

and can be changed if necessary.



## 6.6 Changing series

### 6.6.1 Create a new series

If you need more than five series of critical footnotes, you can create extra series, using `\newseries` command. For example, to create F and G series `\newseries{G,H}`.

### 6.6.2 Delete series

As the number of series which are defined increases, `reledmac` gets slower. If you do not need all of the six standard series (A–E), you can load the package with the `series` option. For example if you need only series A and B, use:

```
\usepackage[series={A,B}]{eledmac}
```

### 6.6.3 Series order

The default series order is the one called with the `series` option of the package, or, if this option is not used, A, B, C, D, E. Series order determines footnotes order.

```
\seriesatbegin
\seriesatend
```

However in some specific cases, you need to change the series order at some point inside the document. You can use `\seriesatbegin{<s>}` to pull up a given series `<s>` to the beginning, or `\seriesatend{<s>}` to push it down to the end.

## 6.7 Position of critical and familiar footnotes

```
\fnpos
\mpfnpos
```

There is a historical incoherence in `(r)(e)ledmac`. The familiar footnotes are before the critical footnotes in a normal page, but after in a minipage or in a ledgroup. However, it is possible to change the relative position of both types of footnotes. If you want to have familiar footnotes after critical footnotes in a normal page, use:

```
\fnpos{critical-familiar}
```

Or, if you want a minipage or ledgroup to have critical footnotes after familiar footnotes, use:

```
\mpfnpos{familiar-critical}
```

## 7 Critical apparatus appearance

Some commands can be used to change the display of the footnotes. All can have an optional argument `[<s>]`, which is the letter of the series — or a list of letters separated by comma — depending on which option is applied. If the optional argument is omitted or empty, the setting will apply to the entire series.

When a length, noted `<l>`, is used, it can be stretchable: `a` plus `b` minus `c`. The final length `m` is calculated by `TeX` to have:  $a - c \leq m \leq a + b$ . If you use some relative unit<sup>17</sup>, it will be relative to font size of the footnote, except for commands concerning

<sup>17</sup>Like `em` which is the width of an ‘m’ in a given font.

the place kept by the notes — including blank space.

Some commands are boolean, indicating when an option is enabled. If you want to disable the option after enabling it, you must use `[false]` as the second optional argument. For example:

- `\XX[A][false]` to disable the ‘XX’ option for the series A.
- `\XX[] [false]` to disable it for all series.

There is also name convention:

- Names prefixed by X are for setting of critical footnotes.
- Names prefixed by Xend are for setting of critical endnotes.
- Names suffixed by X are for setting of familiar footnotes.

## 7.1 Notes arrangement in a series

`\Xarrangement`  
`\arrangementX`

By default, all footnotes are formatted as a series of separate paragraphs in one column. Three other formats are also available for notes.

Use `\Xarrangement[⟨s⟩]{⟨a⟩}` to change the arrangement of the `⟨s⟩` series of critical footnotes and `\arrangementX[⟨s⟩]{⟨a⟩}` to change the arrangement of the `⟨s⟩` series of familiar footnotes.

The value of `⟨a⟩` can be one of the following

- `paragraph` formats all the footnotes of a series as a single paragraph. If you use this arrangement, you are strongly encouraged to read 19.1.6 p. 65.
- `twocol` formats them as separate paragraphs, but in two columns;
- `threecol`, in three columns.
- `normal`, restore normal arrangement.

You should set up the page layout parameters, and in particular the `\baselineskip` of the footnotes, before you call this macro because its action depends on these; too much or too little space will be allotted for the notes on the page if these macros use the wrong values.

Note that you *cannot* use paragraphs (e.g. blank lines or `\par`) or line breaks (`\break` or `\linebreak` or `\newline` etc.) inside of notes, when they are set to `paragraph` arrangement!

The notes arrangement must be called after having defined the document geometry setting. If you must change geometry setting inside your document, do not forget to call note arrangement again.

`\hsize` has been set for the pages that use this series of notes; otherwise  $\TeX$  will try to put too many or too few of these notes on each page. If you need to change the `\hsize` within the document, call the arrangement macro again afterwards to take account of the new value.

## 7.2 Control line number printing

### 7.2.1 Print line number only at first time

`\Xnumberonlyfirstinline` By default, the line number is printed in every note. If you want to print it only the first time for a given line number (i.e., one time for line 1, one time for line 2, etc.), you can use `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline[⟨s⟩]`.

`\Xnumberonlyfirstintwoline` Suppose you have a lemma on line 2 and a lemma between line 2 and line 3. With `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline`, the second lemma is considered to be on the same line as the first lemma. But if you use both `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline[⟨s⟩]` and `\Xnumberonlyfirstintwoline[⟨s⟩]`, a distinction is made.

`\Xsymlinenum` For setting a particular symbol in place of the line number, you can use `\Xsymlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨symbol⟩}` in combination with `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline[⟨s⟩]`. From the second lemma of the same line, the symbol will be used instead of the line number. Note that any command called in `⟨symbol⟩` must be robust. Use `\robustify` to robustify a non-robust command.

`\Xendnumberonlyfirstinline` For endnotes, `\Xendnumberonlyfirstinline`; `\Xendnumberonlyfirstintwoline` and `\Xendsymlinenum` are the equivalents of `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline`; `\Xnumberonlyfirstintwoline` and `\Xsymlinenum`.

### 7.2.2 Arbitrary text before line number

`\Xbeforenumber` `\Xbeforenumber[⟨s⟩]{⟨txt⟩}` allow to insert `⟨txt⟩` before the line number, only when the line number is printed, so taking into account `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline` and similar.

### 7.2.3 Separator for line range

`\Xlinangeseparator` By default, the separator between the begin line and the end line in a lines' range is an en-dash in a normal font (`\textnormal{--}`). You can change it for critical footnotes with `\Xlinangeseparator[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}`, and with `\Xendlinangeseparator[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}` for critical endnotes.

### 7.2.4 Abbreviate line range

`\Xtwolines` If a lemma is printed on two subsequent lines, `reledmac` will print the first and the last line numbers. Instead of this, it is also possible to print an abbreviation which stands for “line 1 and subsequent line(s)”.  
`\Xmorethantwoline` To achieve this, use `\Xtwolines[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}` and `\Xmorethantwoline[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}`. The `⟨text⟩` argument of `\Xtwolines` will be printed if the lemma is on two lines, and the `⟨text⟩` argument of `\Xmorethantwoline` will be printed if the lemma is on three or more lines. For example:

```
\Xtwolines{sq.}
\Xmorethantwoline{sqq.}
```

will print “1sq.” for a lemma which falls on lines 1–2 and “1sqq.” for a lemma which falls on lines 1–4.

If you use `\Xtwolines` without setting `\Xmorethantwolines`, the `<text>` argument of `\Xtwolines` will be used for lemmas which fall on three or more lines.

However, if you want to use a short form (when the lemma overlaps two lines, but not more than two), use `\Xtwolinesbutnotmore[<series>]`.

When you use lineation by page, the final page number, if different from the initial page number, will not be printed, because the final page number is included in the `\Xendtwolines` symbol.

`\Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage`

However, you can force print the final page number with `\Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage[<series>]`.

You can disable `\Xtwolines` and related for a specific note by using the ‘`[fulllines]`’ argument in the note macro cf. 6.2.2 p. 24.

`\Xendtwolines`

`\Xendmorethantwolines`

`\Xendtwolinesbutnotmore`

For endnotes, use these macros: `\Xendtwolines`; `\Xendmorethantwolines`; `\Xendtwolinesbutnotmore`; `\Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage` instead of `\Xtwolines`; `\Xmorethantwolines`; `\Xtwolinesbutnotmore`; `\Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage`.

### 7.2.5 Disable line number

`\Xnonumber`

`\Xendnonumber`

You can use `\Xnonumber[<s>]` if you do not want to have the line number in a footnote. `\Xendnonumber[<s>]` is the same for endnote.

### 7.2.6 Printing pstart number

`\Xpstart`

You can use `\Xpstart[<s>]` if you want to print the pstart number in the footnote, before the line and subline number. Note that when you change the lineation system, the option is automatically switched :

- If you use lineation by pstart, the option is enabled.
- If you use lineation by section or by page, the option is disabled.

`\Xpstarteverytime`

By default, the pstart number is printed only in the part of text where you have called `\numberpstarttrue`. We don’t know why you would like to print the pstart number in the notes and not in the main text. However, if you want to do it, you can call `\Xpstarteverytime[<s>]`. In this case, the pstart number will be printed every time in footnote.

`\Xonlypstart`

In combination with `\Xpstart`, you can use `\Xonlypstart[<s>]` if you want to print only the pstart number in the footnote, and not the line and subline number.

### 7.2.7 Printing stanza number

`\Xstanza`

You can use `\Xstanza[<s>]` if you want to print the stanza number in the footnote, before the line and subline number.

Of course the stanza number is printed only when you use `\numberstanza`

`\Xstanzaseparator`

When using `\Xstanza`, you can use `\Xstanzaseparator[<s>]{<text>}` to print `<text>` after the stanza number. Default value is empty.

### 7.2.8 Separator between line and subline numbers

`\Xsublinesep` `\Xsublinesep[⟨s⟩]{⟨txt⟩}` changes the separator between line and subline in footnotes.

**Employed without optional argument, it also change separator in side number.**

`\Xendsublinesep` `\Xendsublinesep[⟨s⟩]{⟨txt⟩}` does the same thing for endnotes.

**However, it does not change anything for the separator in side number. Use `\Xsublinesep` without optional argument or `\Xsublinesepside{⟨txt⟩}` to do it.**

The default value is `\textnormal{.}`.

### 7.2.9 Space around number

`\Xbeforenumber` With `\Xbeforenumber[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}`, you can add some space before the line number in a footnote. If the line number is not printed, the space is not either. The default value is 0 pt.

`\Xafternumber` With `\Xafternumber[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` you can add some space after the line number in a footnote. If the line number is not printed, the space is not either. The default value is 0.5 em.

`\Xendbeforenumber` `\Xendbeforenumber` and `\Xendafternumber` are the equivalents of `\Xbeforenumber` and `\Xafternumber` for endnotes.

`\Xnonbreakableafternumber` By default, the space defined by `\Xafternumber` is breakable. With `\Xnonbreakableafternumber[⟨s⟩]` it becomes nonbreakable.

### 7.2.10 Space around line symbol

`\Xbeforemsymlinum` With `\Xbeforemsymlinum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` you can add some space before the line symbol in a footnote. The default value is value set by `\Xbeforenumber`.

`\Xaftersymlinum` With `\Xaftersymlinum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` you can add some space after the line symbol in a footnote. The default value is value set by `\Xafternumber`.

`\Xendbeforemsymlinum` `\Xendbeforemsymlinum` and `\Xendaftersymlinum` are the equivalents of `\Xbeforemsymlinum` and `\Xaftersymlinum` for the endnotes.

### 7.2.11 Space in place of number

`\Xinplaceofnumber` If no number or symbolic line number is printed, you can add a space, with `\Xinplaceofnumber[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}`. The default value is 1 em.

`\Xendinplaceofnumber` `\Xendinplaceofnumber[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` is the same, for critical endnotes.

### 7.2.12 Boxing line number and line symbol

`\Xboxlinenum` It could be useful to put the line number inside a fixed box: the content of the note will be printed after this box. You can use `\Xboxlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` to do that. To subsequently disable this feature, use `\Xboxlinenum` with length equal to 0 pt. One use of this feature is to print line number in a column, and the note in an other column:

```
\Xhangindent{1em}
\Xafternumber{0em}
```

`\Xboxlinenum{1em}`

`\Xboxsymlinenum`      `\Xboxsymlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` is the same as `\Xboxlinenum` but for the line number symbol.

`\Xendboxsymlinenum`      `\Xendboxsymlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` is the same as `\Xboxsymlinenum` but for endnotes.

`\Xboxlinenumalign`      If you put line number in box, it will be aligned left inside the box. However, you can change it using `\Xboxlinenumalign[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}` where `⟨text⟩` can be the following:

**L** to align left (default value);

**R** to align right;

**C** to center.

When using `\Xboxlinenum`, `reledmac` put all the line number description in the same box. That is, the same box will contain: the start line number, the dash, and either the end line number or the range symbol (like `ff.`). However, it is possible to box them in two different boxes.

- `\Xboxstartlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` will box the start line number in a box of length `⟨l⟩`. The content will be put at the right of the box.
- `\Xboxendlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` will box the dash plus the end line number or the range symbol in a box of length `⟨l⟩`. The content will be put at the left of the box.

With these two commands, it is possible to horizontally align the dash of line number when using critical notes, to obtain something like:

```
1
12-23
24ff.
```

`\Xendboxlinenum`      `\Xendboxlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}`, `\Xendboxlinenumalign[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}`, `\Xendboxstartlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}`  
`\Xendboxlinenumalign`      `\Xendboxendlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` are the same as, respectively, `\Xboxlinenum` and  
`\Xendboxstartlinenumalign`      `\Xboxlinenumalign`, `\Xboxstartlinenum`, `\Xboxendlinenum` except in endnotes.  
`\Xendboxendlinenumalign`

### 7.3 For endnotes

`\Xendbeforepagenumber`      `\Xendbeforepagenumber[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}` defines the text before the page number in endnotes. Default value is `p.` (“p” followed by a dot).

`\Xendafterpagenumber`      `\Xendafterpagenumber[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}` defines the text after the page number in endnotes. Default value is `)` (open parenthesis followed by a single space). `\Xendlineprefixsingle[⟨s⟩]` defines the text before the line number in endnotes, when there is only one line. Default value is empty. `\Xendlineprefixmore[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}` defines the text before the line number in endnotes, when there is more than one line. Default value is empty. If you don’t define it, use the value defined by `\Xendlineprefixsingle`.

## 7.4 Arbitrary code around line number

`\Xendbhooklinenumber` `\Xendbhooklinenumber[\langle s \rangle]{\langle code \rangle}` is used to execute code before line number in endnotes. The code is executed before the `\Xendbeforelinenumber` space and before the `\Xendnotenumfont` font setting.

`\Xendahooklinenumber` `\Xendahooklinenumber[\langle s \rangle]{\langle code \rangle}` is used to execute code after line number in endnotes. The code is executed after the `\Xendafternumber` space.

`\Xendbhookinplaceofnumber` `\Xendbhookinplaceofnumber[\langle s \rangle]{\langle code \rangle}` is used to execute code before space or symbol which replace line number in endnotes. The code is executed before the `\Xendbeforesymlinenum` space and before the `\Xendnotenumfont` font setting.

`\Xendahookinplaceofnumber` `\Xendahookinplaceofnumber[\langle s \rangle]{\langle code \rangle}` is used to execute code after space or symbol which replace line number in endnotes. The code is executed after the `\Xendaftersymlinenum` space.

## 7.5 Separator between the lemma and the note

### 7.5.1 For footnotes

`\Xlemmaseparator` By default, in a footnote, the separator between the lemma and the note is a right bracket (`\rbracket`)<sup>18</sup>. You can use `\Xlemmaseparator[\langle s \rangle]{\langle Xlemmaseparator \rangle}` to change it. The optional argument can be used to specify the series in which it is used. Note that there is a non-breakable space between the lemma and the separator, but a **breakable** space between the separator and the following text.

`\Xbeforelemmaseparator` Using `\Xbeforelemmaseparator[\langle s \rangle]{\langle l \rangle}` you can add some space between lemma and separator. If your lemma separator is empty, this space won't be printed. The default value is 0 em.

`\Xafterlemmaseparator` Using `\Xafterlemmaseparator[\langle s \rangle]{\langle l \rangle}` you can add some space between separator and note. If your lemma separator is empty, this space will not be printed. The default value is 0.5 em.

`\Xnolemmaseparator` You can suppress the lemma separator, using `\Xnolemmaseparator[\langle s \rangle]`, which is simply a alias of `\Xlemmaseparator[\langle s \rangle]{}`.

`\Xinplaceoflemmaseparator` With `\Xinplaceoflemmaseparator[\langle s \rangle]{\langle l \rangle}` you can add a space if no lemma separator is printed. The default value is 1 em.

### 7.5.2 For endnotes

`\Xendlemmaseparator` By default, there is no separator inside endnotes between the lemma and the content of the note. You can use `\Xendlemmaseparator[\langle s \rangle]{\langle Xendlemmaseparator \rangle}` to change this. The optional argument can be used to specify the series in which it is used. A common value of `\langle Xendlemmaseparator \rangle` is `\rbracket`.

Note that there is a non-breakable space between the lemma and the separator, but a **breakable** space between the separator and the following text.

`\Xendbeforelemmaseparator` Using `\Xendbeforelemmaseparator[\langle s \rangle]{\langle l \rangle}` you can add some space between the lemma and the separator. If your lemma separator is empty, this space won't be printed. The default value is 0 em.

`\Xendafterlemmaseparator` Using `\Xendafterlemmaseparator[\langle s \rangle]{\langle l \rangle}` you can add some space between

<sup>18</sup>For polyglossia, when the lemma is RTL, the bracket automatically switches to a left bracket.

the separator and the content of the note. If your lemma separator is empty, this space won't be printed. The default value is 0.5 em.

`\Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator`

With `\Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` you can add some space if you chose to remove the lemma separator. The default value is 0.5 em.

## 7.6 Font style

### 7.6.1 For line number

`\Xnotenumfont` `\Xnotenumfont[⟨s⟩]{⟨command⟩}` is used to change the font style for line numbers in critical footnotes ; `⟨command⟩` must be one (or more) switching command, like `\bfseries`.

`\Xendnotenumfont` `\Xendnotenumfont[⟨s⟩]{⟨command⟩}` is used to change the font style for line numbers in critical footnotes. `⟨command⟩` must be one (or more) switching command, like `\bfseries`.

`\notenumfontX` `\notenumfontX[⟨s⟩]{⟨command⟩}` is used to change the font style for note numbers in familiar footnotes. `⟨command⟩` must be one (or more) switching command, like `\bfseries`.

### 7.6.2 For the lemma

`\Xlemmadisablefontselection`

By default, font of the lemma in footnote is the same as font of the lemma in the main text. For example, if the lemma is in italic in the main text, it is also in italic in note. The `\Xlemmadisablefontselection[⟨s⟩]` command allows to disable it for a specific series.

`\Xendlemmadisablefontselection`

By default, font of the lemma in endnote is the same as font of the lemma in the main text. For example, if the lemma is in italic in the main text, it is also in italic in note. The command allows `\Xendlemmadisablefontselection[⟨s⟩]` to disable it for a specific series.

`\Xlemmafont`

`\Xendlemmafont`

Use `\Xlemmafont[⟨s⟩]{⟨cmd⟩}` to apply a  $\TeX$  font command to the lemma. For example, to have boldface lemma:

`\Xlemmafont{\bfseries}`

`\Xendlemmafont[⟨s⟩]{⟨cmd⟩}` is the same for endnotes.

### 7.6.3 For all notes

`\Xnotefontsize` `\Xnotefontsize[⟨s⟩]{⟨command⟩}` is used to define the font size of critical footnotes of the series. The default value is `\footnotesize`. The `⟨command⟩` must not be a size in pt, but a standard  $\TeX$  size, like `\small`.

`\notefontsizeX` `\notefontsizeX[⟨s⟩]{⟨command⟩}` is used to define the font size of familiar footnotes of the series. The default value is `\footnotesize`. The `⟨command⟩` must not be a size in pt, but a standard  $\TeX$  size, like `\small`.

`\Xendnotefontsize` `\Xendnotefontsize[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` is used to define the font size of end critical footnotes of the series. The default value is `\footnotesize`. The `⟨command⟩` must not be a size in pt, but a standard  $\TeX$  size, like `\small`.



## 7.7 Wrapping notes

### 7.7.1 Wrapping lemmas

`\Xwraplemma` `\Xwraplemma[\langle s \rangle]{\langle cmd \rangle}` is used to wrap, in the footnote, the lemma in a  $\LaTeX$  command. For example, with the `bidl` package, to ensure having a lemma written right to left, use `\Xwraplemma{\RL}`.

`\Xwrapendlemma` `\Xendwraplemma[\langle s \rangle]{\langle cmd \rangle}` is the same for endnotes.

### 7.7.2 Wrapping contents

`\Xwrapcontent` `\Xwrapcontent[\langle s \rangle]{\langle cmd \rangle}` is used to wrap the footnote contents — excluding the lemma — in a  $\LaTeX$  command.

For example, if the language of your note is not the same as the language of the lemma, use `\Xwrapcontent{\foreignlanguage{\langle language \rangle}}` (with `babel`) or `\Xwrapcontent{\text{\langle language \rangle}}` (for `babel`).

`\Xendwrapcontent` `\Xendwrapcontent[\langle s \rangle]{\langle cmd \rangle}` is the same for endnotes.

`\wrapcontentX` `\wrapcontentX[\langle s \rangle]{\langle cmd \rangle}` is the same for critical footnotes.

## 7.8 Indent of notes content

`\Xparindent` By default, `reledmac` does not add indentation before the paragraphs inside critical footnotes. Use `\Xparindent[\langle s \rangle]` to enable indentation.

`\parindentX` By default, `reledmac` does not add indentation before the paragraphs inside familiar footnotes. Use `\parindentX[\langle s \rangle]` to enable indentation.

`\Xhangindent` For critical notes NOT paragraphed you can define an indent with `\Xhangindent[\langle s \rangle]{\langle l \rangle}`, which will be applied in the second line of notes. It can help to make distinction between a new note and a break in a note. The default value is 0 pt.

`\hangindentX` For familiar notes NOT paragraphed you can define an indentation with `\hangindentX[\langle s \rangle]{\langle l \rangle}`, which will be applied in the second line of notes. It can help to make a distinction between a new note and a break in a note.

`\Xendhangindent` For critical endnotes NOT paragraphed you can define an indentation with `\Xendhangindent[\langle s \rangle]{\langle l \rangle}`, which will be applied in the second line of notes. It can help to make a distinction between a new note and a break in a note.

## 7.9 Arbitrary code at the beginning of notes

The three next commands add arbitrary code at the beginning of notes. As the name's space is local to the notes, you can use it to redefine some style inside the notes. For example, if you don't want the `pstart` number to be in bold, use :

```
\Xbhooknote{\renewcommand{\thepstart}{\arabic{pstart}}.}}
```

`\Xbhooknote` `\Xbhooknote[\langle s \rangle]{\langle code \rangle}` is to be used at the beginning of the critical footnotes.

`\bhooknoteX` `\bhooknoteX[\langle s \rangle]{\langle code \rangle}` is to be used at the beginning of the familiar footnotes.

`\Xendbhooknote` `\Xendbhooknote[\langle s \rangle]{\langle code \rangle}` is to be used at the beginning of the endnotes.

## 7.10 Arbitrary code before inserting note

`\Xbeforeinserting` `\beforeinsertingX` and `\beforeinsertingX` are very technical commands.

They allow one to add any arbitrary code just before the footnotes are added in the list of footnotes. The main use is to insert text direction code. For example, if you edit right-to-left text with `bidl`, but want your critical footnote be left-to-right, use `\Xbeforeinserting\LTR`. You should also use `\Xwraplemma` to ensure your lemmas are right-to-left in a left-to-right paragraph (7.7.1 p. 41)).

Note that the changes are local to the footnote.

## 7.11 Options for footnotes in columns

### 7.11.1 Alignment

`\Xcolalign` `\colalignX` By default, text in footnotes of two or three columns are flush left and without hyphenation. However, you can change this with `\Xcolalign` for critical footnotes, and `\colalignX` for familiar footnotes.

`<code>` must be one of the following command:

`\justifying` to have text justified, as usual with  $\text{\LaTeX}$ . You can also let `<code>` empty.

`\raggedright` to have text left aligned, but *without hyphenation*. That is the default `reledmac` setting.

`\RaggedRight` to have text left aligned *with hyphenation* (requires `ragged2e`).

`\raggedleft` to have text right aligned, but *without hyphenation*.

`\RaggedLeft` to have text right aligned *with hyphenation* (requires `ragged2e`).

`\centering` to have text centered, but *without hyphenation*.

`\Centering` to have text centered *with hyphenation* (requires `ragged2e`).

### 7.11.2 Size of the columns

For the following four macros, be careful that the columns are made from right to left.

`\Xhsizetwocol` `\Xhsizetwocol` `[<s>]{<l>}` is used to change width of a column when critical notes are displaying in two columns. Default value is `.45 \hsiz`.

`\Xhsizethreecol` `\Xhsizethreecol` `[<s>]{<l>}` is used to change width of a column when critical notes are displaying in three columns. Default value is `.3 \hsiz`.

`\hsizetwocolX` `\hsizetwocolX` `[<s>]{<l>}` is used to change width of a column when familiar notes are displaying in two columns. Default value is `.45 \hsiz`.

`\hsizethreecolX` `\hsizethreecolX` `[<s>]{<l>}` is used to change width of a column when familiar notes are displaying in three columns. Default value is `.3 \hsiz`.

## 7.12 Options for paragraphed footnotes

### 7.12.1 Mark separation of notes

`\Xafternote` You can add some horizontal space after a note by using `\Xafternote[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` (for critical footnotes) or `\afternoteX[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` (for familiar footnotes). The default value is 1em plus .4em minus .4em.

`\afternoteX`

`\Xparafootsep` For paragraphed footnotes (see below), you can choose the separator between each note by using `\Xparafootsep[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}` for critical notes and `\parafootsepX` for familiar notes. A common separator is the double pipe (`||`), which you can set by using `\Xparafootsep{$\parallel$}`.

`\parafootsepX` Note that if the symbol defined by `\Xsymlinenum` must be used at the beginning of a note, the `\Xparafootsep` / `\parafootsepX` is not used before this note.

### 7.12.2 Ragged text

`\Xragged` Text in paragraphed critical notes is justified, but you can use `\Xragged[⟨s⟩]{L}` if you want it to be ragged left (i.e., right justified), or `\Xragged[⟨s⟩]{R}` if you want it to be ragged right (i.e., left justified).

`\raggedX` Text in paragraphed footnotes is justified, but you can use `\raggedX[⟨s⟩]{L}` if you want it to be ragged left, or `\raggedX[⟨s⟩]{R}` if you want it to be ragged right.

## 7.13 Options for block of notes

### 7.13.1 Text before notes

`\Xtxtbeforenotes` You can add text before critical notes with `\Xtxtbeforenotes[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}`.

### 7.13.2 Code before notes

`\Xbhookgroup` While `\Xtxtbeforenotes` is for typesetting code before notes, `\Xbhookgroup` and `\bhookgroupX` (respectively for critical and familiar) are for executing code before a groups of notes, between the rules and the printing of the notes.

`\bhookgroupX`

### 7.13.3 Spacing

`\Xbeforenotes` You can change the vertical space before the rule of the critical notes with `\Xbeforenotes[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}`. The default value is 1.2em plus .6em minus .6em.

**Be careful, the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X footnote rule used by reledmac decreases by 3pt. This 3pt decrease is not changed by this command.**

`\beforenotesX` You can change the vertical space printed before the rule of the familiar notes with `\beforenotesX[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}`. The default value is 1.2em plus .6em minus .6em.

**Be careful, the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X footnote rule, which is used by reledmac, decreases 3pt. These 3pt are not changed by this command.**

`\Xprenotes` You can set the space before the first series of critical notes printed on each page and set a different amount of space for each subsequent series on the page. You can do it with `\Xprenotes{⟨l⟩}`. The default value is 0pt. You can disable this feature by setting the length to 0pt.

`\prenotesX` You can set the space before the first printed (in a page) series of familiar notes to be different from the space before other series. The default value is 0pt. You can do this with `\prenotesX{<l>}`. You can disable this feature by setting the length to 0pt.

#### 7.13.4 Rule

`\Xafterrule` You can change the vertical space printed after the rule of the critical notes with `\Xafterrule[<s>]{<l>}`. The default value is 0pt.

**Be careful, the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X footnote rule, which is used by reledmac, adds 2.6pt. These 2.6pt are not changed by this command.**

`\afterruleX` You can change the vertical space printed after the rule of the familiar notes with `\afterruleX[<s>]{<l>}`. The default value is 0pt.

**Be careful, the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X footnote rule, which is used by reledmac, adds 2.6pt. These 2.6pt are not changed by this command.**

#### 7.13.5 Maximum height

`\Xmaxhnotes` By default, one series of critical notes can take up to 80% of `\vsize`, before being broken to the next page. If you want to change the size use `\Xmaxhnotes[<s>]{<l>}`. Be careful : the length can't be flexible, and is relative to the the current font. For example, if you want the note to take, at most, 33% of the text height, do `\Xmaxhnotes{.33\textheight}`.

`\maxhnotesX` `\maxhnotesX[<s>]{<l>}` is the same as previous, but for familiar footnotes. Note that in many cases, you should call these commands in the begin of the document, because the `\vsize` in the preamble is not the same as `\vsize` after the preamble. That why we recommend to you to add in your preamble

```
\AtBeginDocument{
  \maxhnotesX{0.8\textheight}
  \Xmaxhnotes{0.8\textheight}
}
```

Be careful with the two previous commands. Actually, for technical purposes, one paragraphed note is considered as one block. Consequently, it cannot be broken between two pages, even if you used these commands. The debug is in the todolist.

#### 7.13.6 Width

`\Xwidth` `\Xwidth[<s>]{<l>}` sets the total width of critical footnotes. `\widthX[<s>]{<l>}` does the same for familiar footnotes.

`<l>` can be a length expression, parsable with `\dimexpr`. For example:

```
\Xwidth{\columnwidth+\marginparsep+\ledrsnotewidth}
\widthX{\columnwidth+\marginparsep+\ledrsnotewidth}
```

Note that changes the with of the block of notes. If you want to change the width of each column when typesetting notes in columns, use `\Xhsizetwocol`, `\Xhsizethreecol`, `\hsizetwocolX`, `\hsizethreecolX`, see 7.11.2 p. 42.

## 7.14 Footnotes and the `reledpar` columns

`\Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns`  
`\noteswidthliketwocolumnsX`

If you use `reledpar \columns` macro, you can call :

- `\Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns[⟨s⟩]` to create critical notes with a two-column size width.
- `\noteswidthliketwocolumnsX[⟨s⟩]` to create familiar notes with a two-column size width.

## 7.15 Endnotes in one paragraph

`\Xendparagraph`

By default, any new endnote starts a new paragraph. Use `\Xendparagraph[⟨s⟩]` to have all end notes of one given series set in one paragraph.

`\Xendafternote`

You can add some space after a endnote series by using `\Xendafternote[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}`. The default value is `1em plus.4em minus.4em`.

`\Xendsep`

You can choose the separator between each note by `\Xendsep[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}`. A common separator is the double pipe (`||`), which you can set by using `\Xendsep{${\parallel}$}`.

## 8 Fonts

One of the most important features of the appearance of the notes, and indeed of your whole document, will be the fonts used. We will first describe the commands that give you control over the use of fonts in the different structural elements of the document, especially within the notes, and then in subsequent sections specify how these commands are used.

For those who are setting up for a large job, here is a list of the complete set of `reledmac` macros relating to fonts that are intended for manipulation by the user: `\endashchar`, `\fullstop`, `\numlabfont`, and `\rbracket`.

`\numlabfont`

Line numbers for the main text are usually printed in a smaller font in the margin. The `\numlabfont` macro is provided as a standard name for that font: it is initially defined as

```
\newcommand{\numlabfont}{\normalfont\scriptsize}
```

You might wish to use a different font if, for example, you preferred to have these line numbers printed using old-style numerals.

`\select@lemmafont`

We will briefly discuss `\select@lemmafont` here because it is important to know about it now, although it is not one of the macros you would expect to change in the course of a simple job. Hence it is ‘protected’ by having the `@`-sign in its name.

When you use the `\edtext` macro to mark a word in your text as a lemma, that word will normally be printed again in your apparatus. If the word in the text happens to be in a font such as italic or bold you would probably expect it to appear in the apparatus in the same font. This becomes an absolute necessity if the font is actually a different script, such as Arabic or Cyrillic. `\select@lemmafont` does the work of decoding `reledmac`’s data about the fonts used to print the lemma in the main text and calling up those fonts for printing the lemma in the note.

`\select@lemmafont` is a macro that takes one long argument—the cluster of line numbers passed to the note commands. This cluster ends with a code indicating what

fonts were in use at the start of the lemma. `\select@lemmafont` selects the appropriate font for the note using that font specifier.

`reledmac` uses `\select@lemmafont` in a standard footnote format macro called `\normalfootfmt`. The footnote formats for each of the layers A to E are `\let` equal to `\normalfootfmt`. So all the layers of the footnotes are formatted in the same way.

## 9 Verse

### 9.1 Basic

`\stanza` Use `\stanza` at the start of a stanza. Each line in a stanza is ended by an ampersand (`&`), and the stanza itself is ended by putting `\&` at the end of the last line.

### 9.2 Define stanza indents

`\stanzaindentbase` Lines within a stanza may be indented. The indents are integer multiples of the length `\stanzaindentbase`, whose default value is 20pt.

`\setstanzaindents` In order to use the stanza macros, **one must set the indentation values**. First the value of `\stanzaindentbase` should be set, unless the default value 20pt is desired. Every stanza line indentation is a multiple of this.

To specify these multiples one invokes, for example `\setstanzaindents{3,1,2,1,2}`.

The numerical entries must be whole numbers, 0 or greater, separated by commas without embedded spaces. The first entry gives the hanging indentation to be used if the stanza line requires more than one print line.

If it is known that each stanza line will fit in one print line, then this first entry should be 0;  $\TeX$  does less work in this case, but no harm ensues if the hanging indentation is not 0 but is never used.

If you want the hanging verse to be flush right, you can use `\sethanginsymbol:` see p. 9.6 p. 48.

Enumeration is by stanza lines, not by print lines. In the above example the lines are indented one unit, two units, one unit, two units, with 3 units of hanging indentation in case a stanza line is too long to fit on one print line.

### 9.3 Repeating stanza indents

Since version 0.13, if the indentation is repeated every  $n$  verses of the stanza, you can define only the  $n$  first indentations, and indicate that they are repeated, defining the value of the `stanzaindentsrepetition` counter at  $n$ . For example:

```
\setstanzaindents{5,1,0}
\setcounter{stanzaindentsrepetition}{2}
```

is like

```
\setstanzaindents{5,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0}
```

**Be careful: the feature is changed in eledmac 1.5.1. See Appendix A.3 p. 338.**

If you don't use the `stanzaindentsrepetition` counter, make sure you have at least one more numerical entry in `\setstanzavalues` than the number of lines in the stanza.

If you want to disable this feature again, just put the counter to 0:

```
\setcounter{stanzaindentsrepetition}{0}
```

The macros make no restriction on the number of lines in a stanza. Stanza indentation values (and penalty values) obey  $\TeX$ 's grouping conventions, so if one stanza among several has a different structure, its indentations (penalties) may be set within a group; the prior values will be restored when the group ends.

## 9.4 Manual stanza indent

```
\stanzaindent
\stanzaindent*
```

You can set the indent of some specific verse by calling `\stanzaindent{⟨value⟩}` at the beginning of the verse, before any other character. In this case, the indent defined by `\setstanzaindents` for this verse is skipped, and `{⟨value⟩}` is used instead.

If you use the mechanism of indent repetition, the next verse will be printed as it should be even if the current verse would have its normal indent value. In other words, using `\stanzaindent` in a verse does not shift the indent repetition.

However, if you want to shift the indent repetition, so the next verse has the indent normally used for the current verse, use `\stanzaindent*` instead of `\stanzaindent`.

## 9.5 Stanza breaking

```
\setstanzapenalties
```

When the stanzas run over several pages, it is often desirable that page breaks should arise between certain lines in the stanza, so a facility for including penalties after stanza lines is provided. If you are satisfied with the page breaks, you need not set the penalty values.

The command

```
\setstanzapenalties{1,5000,10100,5000,0}
```

results in a penalty of 5000 being placed after the first and third lines of the stanza, and a penalty of  $-100$  after the second.

The first entry “1” is a control value. If it is zero, then no penalties are passed on to  $\TeX$ , which is the default. Values between 0 and 10000 are penalty values; values between 10001 and 20000 have 10000 subtracted and the result is given as a negative penalty. The mechanism used for indentations and penalties requires unsigned values less than 32768. No penalty is placed after the last line, so the final ,0 in then example above could be omitted. A penalty of 10000 will prevent a page break; such a penalty is included automatically where there is stanza hanging indentation. A penalty of  $-10000$  (corresponding to the entry value 20000 in this context) forces a page break. Values in between act as suggestions as to the desirability of a page break at a given line. There is

a subtle interaction between penalties and *glue*, so it may take some adjustment of skips and penalties to achieve the best results.

## 9.6 Hanging symbol

It is possible to insert a symbol in each line of hanging verse, as in French typography; for example, the opening bracket '['. To insert it in `reledmac`, use macro `\sethangingsymbol{<h>}` with this code. In the example of French typography, do

`\sethangingsymbol`

```
\sethangingsymbol{[,}
```

You can also use it to force hanging verse to be flush right:

```
\sethangingsymbol{\protect\hfill}
```

## 9.7 Long verse and page break

If you want to prevent page breaks inside long verses, use the option `nopbinverse` when loading package, or use `\lednopbinversetrue`. Read 18.2 p. 63 for further details.

## 9.8 Content before/after verses

It is possible to add content, like a subtitle or a spacing, before or after verse:

- The `\stanza` command can take an optional argument (in brackets). Its content will be printed before the stanza.

Use `\AtEveryStanza{<arg>}` to automatically add content at the begining of stanza.

- `&` can be replaced by `\newverse` with two optional arguments (in brackets). The first will be printed after the current verse, the second before the next verse.

Use `\AtEveryPend{<arg>}` to automatically add content after verses (including the final one) and `\AtEveryPstart{<arg>}` to automatically add content before verses (including the first one).

- `\&` can take an optional argument (in brackets). Its content will be printed after the stanza.

Use `\AtEveryStopStanza` to automatically add content at the end of stanzas.

## 9.9 Numbering stanza

`\numberstanzatrue`  
`\numberstanzafalse`

If you want to automatically number stanzas, use `\numberstanzatrue`. In this case, the line number will restart at each `\stanza`.

If you want to disable this feature again, use `\numberstanzafalse`.

You can use this feature in combination with `\Xstanza` (7.2.7 p. 36).

`\thestanza`

. You can redefine `\thestanza` to change the aspect of stanza number. Default value



is:

```
\renewcommand{\thestanza}{%
  \textbf{\arabic{stanza}}}%
}
```

You can change the value of the stanza counter with the usual commands of  $\TeX$ .

`\stanzanumwrapper` You can redefine `\stanzanumwrapper` in order to modify the way the stanza number is inserted in the flow of text. Default value is:

```
\newcommand{\stanzanumwrapper}[1]{%
  \flagstanza{#1}%
}
```

## 9.10 Various tools

`\ampersand` If you need to print an & symbol in a stanza, use the `\ampersand` macro, not `\&` which will end the stanza.

`\flagstanza` Putting `\flagstanza[len]{text}` at the start of a line in a stanza (or elsewhere) will typeset *text* at a distance *len* before the line. The default *len* is `\stanzaindentbase`.

## 9.11 Notes on empty lines

Since v2.3.0 of `reledmac`, empty lines when typesetting verses no longer produce new paragraphs, and consequently, do not insert vertical spaces. Use optional argument of `\stanza` or `\newverse` to insert vertical space (9.8 p. 48).

# 10 Grouping

In a `minipage` environment  $\TeX$  changes `\footnote` numbering from arabic to alphabetic and puts the footnotes at the end of the minipage.

`minipage` You can put numbered text with critical footnotes in a minipage and the footnotes are set at the end of the minipage.

You can also put familiar footnotes (see section 6.5) in a minipage but unlike with `\footnote` the numbering scheme is unaltered.

`ledgroup` Minipages, of course, are not broken across pages. Footnotes in a `ledgroup` environment are typeset at the end of the environment, as with minipages, but the environment includes normal page breaks. The environment makes no change to the `textwidth` so it appears as normal text; it just might be that footnotes appear in the middle of a page, with text above and below.

`ledgroupsize` The `ledgroupsize` environment is similar to `ledgroup` except that you must specify a width for the environment, as with a minipage.  
`\begin{ledgroupsize}[pos]{width}`

The required  $\langle width \rangle$  argument is the text width for the environment. The optional  $\langle pos \rangle$  argument is for positioning numbered text within the normal textwidth. It may be one of the characters:

- l (left) numbered text is flush left with respect to the normal textwidth. This is the default.
- c (center) numbered text is in the center of the textwidth.
- r (right) numbered text is flush right with respect to the normal textwidth.

Note that normal text, footnotes, and so forth are all flush left.

`\begin{ledgroupsize}{\textwidth}` is effectively the same as `\begin{ledgroup}`

## 11 Cross referencing

The package provides a simple cross-referencing facility that allows you to mark places in the text with labels, and generate page and line number references to those places elsewhere using those labels.

### 11.1 Basic use

`\edlabel` First you place a label in the text using the command `\edlabel{<lab>}`.  $\langle lab \rangle$  can be almost anything you like, including letters, numbers, punctuation, or a combination—anything but spaces; you might type `\edlabel{toves-3}`, for example.<sup>19</sup>

`\edpageref` Elsewhere in the text, either before or after the `\edlabel`, you can refer to its location via `\edpageref{<lab>}`, or `\edlineref{<lab>}` will produce, respectively, the

`\edlineref` page, line, sub-line and pstart on which the `\edlabel{<lab>}` command occurred.

`\sublineref` Note that the `\edlineref` command insert the side flag after the line number.

`\pstartref` An `\edlabel` command may appear in the main text, or in the first argument of `\edtext`, but not in the apparatus itself. But `\edpageref`, `\edlineref`, `\sublineref`, `\pstartref` commands can also be used in the apparatus to refer to `\edlabels` in the text.

The `\edlabel` command works by writing macros to `ℳℒX.aux` file. You will need to process your document through `ℳℒX` twice in order for the references to be resolved.

You will be warned if you use `\edlabel{foo}` and `foo` has been used as a label before. The `ref` commands will return references to the last place in the file marked with this label. You will also be warned if a reference is made to an undefined label. (This will also happen the first time you process a document after adding a new `\edlabel` command: the auxiliary file will not have been updated yet.)

### 11.2 Cross-referencing to a critical note

If you want to refer to a word which is a lemma word, the `\edlabel` command should be in the first argument of `\edtext` command.

<sup>19</sup>More precisely, you should stick to characters in the `ℒX` categories of “letter” and “other”.

If you want to refer to the content of a `\Xfootnote`, the line and subtitle number printed will be the start line.

If you want to refer to starting and ending lines, you should use `\appref` and related tools (11.6.2 p. 52).

### 11.3 Cross-referencing which return a number in any case

`\xpageref`  
`\xlineref`  
`\xsublineref`  
`\xpstartref`

Where #1 stands for the reference.

However, there are situations in which you will want `reledmac` to return a number without displaying any warning messages about undefined labels or the like: if you want to use the reference in a context where  $\TeX$  is looking for a number, such a warning will lead to a complaint that the number is missing. This is the case for references used within the argument to `\linenum`, for example (see 6.2.5 p. 26).

For this situation, four variants of the reference commands, with the `x` prefix, are supplied: `\xpageref`, `\xlineref`, `\xsublineref` and `\xpstartref`. They have these limitations:

- They will not tell you if the label is undefined.
- They must be preceded in the file by at least one of the four other cross-reference commands—e.g., a `\edlabel{foo}` command, even if you never refer to that label—since those commands can all do the necessary processing of the `.aux` file, and the `\x...` ones cannot.
- When `hyperref` is loaded, the `hyperref` link will not be added. (Indeed, it is not a limitation, but a feature.)
- With `reledpar`, the `\xlineref` does not insert the right side flag, in order to obtain a line number. Use `\xflagref` to obtain the side flag, depending of your flag.

#### 11.3.1 Cross-referencing in order to define line number of a critical note

`\xxref`

The macros `\xxref` and `\edmakelabel` let you manipulate numbers and labels in ways which you may find helpful in tricky situations.

The `\xxref{<lab1>}{<lab2>}` command generates a reference to a sequence of lines, for use in the second argument of `\edtext`. It takes two arguments, both of which are labels: e.g., `\xxref{mouse}{elephant}`.

It automatically calls `\linenum` (q.v., 6.2.5 p. 26 above) and sets the beginning page, line and subtitle numbers to those of the place where `\edlabel{mouse}` was placed, and the ending numbers to those where `\edlabel{elephant}` occurs.

### 11.4 Not automatic cross-referencing

`\edmakelabel`

Sometimes the `\edlabel` command cannot be used to specify exactly the page and line desired—for example, if you want to refer to a page and line number in another volume of your edition. In such cases, you can use the `\edmakelabel{<lab>}{<numbers>}` macro so that you can ‘roll your own’ label.

For example, if you type ‘`\edmakelabel{elephant}{10|25|0}`’ you will create a new label, and a later call to `\edpageref{elephant}` would print ‘10’ and `\lineref{elephant}` would print ‘25’. The sub-line number here is zero. It is usually best to collect your `\edmakelabel` statements near the top of your document, so that you can see them at a glance.

## 11.5 Normal $\text{\LaTeX}$ cross-referencing

`\label`      The normal `\label`, `\ref` and `\pageref` macros may be used within numbered text,  
`\ref`      and operate in the familiar fashion.  
`\pageref`

## 11.6 References to start and end lines

### 11.6.1 Reference to main text lines

Many times, you may want to make a cross-reference to a passage that is defined by a start line and an end line. `reledmac` provides specific tools for this scenario.

`\edlabelS`      Use `\edlabelS{<label>}` to mark the start line of the passage.  
`\edlabelE`      Use `\edlabelE{<label>}` to mark the end the end line of the passage. These two  
commands just create to label which are named `<label>:start` and `<label>:end`.  
`\edlabelSE`      Use `\edlabelSE{<label>}` to mark just one location in the text. Contrary to a clas-  
sical `\edlabel`, the `<label>` could be use with `\Seref` and `\Serefwithpage`.  
`\Seref`      The main utility is to use them with three other commands. `\Seref{<label>}` will  
make a cross-reference printed as a reference in critical footnotes.  
`\Serefwithpage`      `\Serefwithpage` will make a cross-reference printed as a reference in critical end-  
notes.  
`\Serefonlypage`      `\Serefonlypage` will make a cross-reference printed only with page number.

### 11.6.2 References to lines that are commented on in the apparatus

You may want to make a cross-reference to a passage that is referred to by `\edtext`. `reledmac` provides specific tools for this scenario.

`\applabel`      If you use `\applabel{<label>}` inside the second argument of a `\edtext`, `reledmac`  
will add a `\edlabel` at the beginning and end of the marked passage. The label at the  
beginning of the passage will have the title `<label>:start`, while the label at the end  
will have the title `<label>:end`.  
If you use `\linenum` (6.2.5 p. 26) to refer to these labels, `reledmac` will use your line  
settings to refer to the passage.  
`\appref`      You can also use `\appref{<label>}` and `\apprefwithpage{<label>}` to refer to these  
`\apprefwithpage` lines. The first one will print the lines as they are printed in the critical footnotes, while  
the second will print the lines as they are printed in endnotes.

### 11.6.3 Settings

`\setapprefprefixsingle`      **Specific to these tools** If you use `\apprefprefixsingle{<prefix>}`, `<prefix>` will be  
`\setapprefprefixmore` printed before the line numbers of a `\appref`-reference. If you use `\apprefprefixmore{<prefix>}`,  
`<prefix>` will be printed before the line numbers, if you refer to more than one line.

For example, you may use:

```
\setapprefprefixsingle{line~}
\setapprefprefixmore{lines~}
```

Note that if you have not used `\setapprefprefixmore` is empty, argument of `\setapprefprefixsingle` will be used in any case.

`\setSerefprefixsingle` and `\setSerefprefixmore` are similar for `\Seref` command.

Use `\setSerefonlypageprefixsingle{<prefix>}` to set the page prefix for `\Serefonlypage` when there is only one page. Use `\setSerefonlypageprefixmore{<prefix>}` to set it when there is more than one page. For example:

```
\setSerefonlypageprefixsingle{p.~}
\setSerefonlypageprefixmore{pp.~}
```

Note that if you do not use `\setSerefonlypageprefixmore`, the value of `\setSerefonlypageprefixsingle` is used instead.

**Also note that `\setSerefonlypageprefixsingle` is only a shortcut for `\XendbeforepagenumberSerefonly` (see 11.6.3 p. 53). So if you use `\Xendbeforepagenumber` without any optional argument, it will override this setting.**

**Linked to setting of critical endnotes and footnotes** Some commands who set the appearance of line numbers in critical footnotes also set the appearance of line numbers in `\appref` and `\Seref` if you call them *without the optional series argument*.

These commands are the following:

- `\Xlineflag` (for `reledpar`), enabled by default.
- `\Xlinerangeseparator`
- `\Xmorethantwolines`
- `\Xsublinesep`
- `\Xtwolines`
- `\Xtwolinesbutnotmore`
- `\Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage`

If you want to make settings specific to `\appref` or `\Seref`, just call them with an optional argument containing a comma-separated list of command names (for example `appref,Seref`) or with a suffix equal to the command name (for example `appref`).

The same principle is available for `\apprefwithpage`, `\Serefwithpage` and `\Serefonlypage` with the following commands:

- `\Xendafterpagenumber` (not for `\Serefonlypage`)

- `\Xendbeforepagenumber`
- `\Xendlineflag` (for `reledpar`), enabled by default.
- `\Xendlineprefixmore`
- `\Xendlineprefixsingle`
- `\Xendlinerangeseparator`
- `\Xendmoreethantwolines`
- `\Xendsublinesep`
- `\Xendtwolines`
- `\Xendtwolinesbutnotmore`
- `\Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage`

**For one specific command** When calling `\appref` and `\Seref`, you can use as a first optional argument, in brackets (`[]`), any optional argument which can be used for critical footnotes (6.2.2 p. 24).

When calling `\apprefwithpage`, `\Serefwithpage` or `\Serefonlypage` you can use as a first optional argument, in brackets (`[]`), any optional argument which can be used for critical endnotes (6.2.3 p. 24).

## 11.7 Compatibility with `xr` package

The `\externaldocument` command of the `\xr` package allows making cross-references from an external document, with the standard  $\TeX$  commands `\label` and `\ref` (and related).

To use it with the `reledmac` cross-reference commands (i.e. `\edlabel` and related), you must do the following:

1. Load the `xr` package.
2. Load the `reledmac` package.
3. Use the `\externaldocument` document command.

## 12 Side notes

### 12.1 Basics

The `\marginpar` command does not work in numbered text. Instead, the package provides for non-floating sidenotes in either margin.

`\ledinnernote`      `\ledinnernote{<text>}` will put `<text>` into the inner margin level with where the command was issued. Similarly, `\ledouternote{<text>}` puts `<text>` in the outer margin.

`\ledleftnote`      `\ledsidenote{⟨text⟩}` will put `⟨text⟩` into the margin specified by the current setting of `\sidenotemargin{⟨location⟩}`. The permissible value for `⟨location⟩` is one out of the list `left`, `right`, `inner`, or `outer`, for example `\sidenotemargin{outer}`.  
`\ledrightnote`  
`\ledsidenote`  
`\sidenotemargin`      The package's default setting is `\sidenotemargin{right}` to typeset `\ledsidenotes` in the right hand margin. This is the opposite of the default margin for line numbers. The style for a `\ledsidenote` follows that for a `\ledleftnote` or a `\ledrightnote` depending on the margin it is put in.  
 If two note commands for the same side are called in the same line, they will be appended and separated by a comma.

## 12.2 Setting

### 12.2.1 Width

`\ledlsnotewidth`      The left sidenote text is put into a box of width `\ledlsnotewidth` and the right  
`\ledrsnotewidth`      text into a box of width `\ledrsnotewidth`. These are initially set to the value of `\marginparwidth`.

### 12.2.2 Vertical position

`\rightnoteupfalse`      By default, sidenotes are placed to align with the last line of the note to which it refers.  
`\leftnoteupfalse`      If you want they to be placed to align with the first line of the note to which it refers, use `\leftnoteupfalse` (for left note) and/or `\rightnoteupfalse` (for right note).

### 12.2.3 Distance to the main text

`\ledlsnotesep`      The texts are put a distance `\ledlsnotesep` (or `\ledrsnotesep`) into the left (or right)  
`\ledrsnotesep`      margin. These lengths are initially set to the value of `\linenumsep`.  
`\ledlsnotefontsetup`      These macros specify how the sidenote texts are to be typeset. The initial definitions  
`\ledrsnotefontsetup`      are:

```

\newcommand*{\ledlsnotefontsetup}{\raggedleft\footnotesize}% left
\newcommand*{\ledrsnotefontsetup}{\raggedright\footnotesize}% right

```

These can of course be changed to suit.

### 12.2.4 Separator between notes

`\setsidenotesep`      If you have two or more sidenotes for the same line, they are separated by a comma. But if you want to change this separator, you can use `\setsidenotesep{⟨sep⟩}`.

## 13 Indexing

### 13.1 Basics

`\edindex`      L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X provides the `\index{⟨item⟩}` command for specifying that `⟨item⟩` and the current

page number should be added to the raw index (`idx`) file. The `\edindex{<item>}` macro can be used in numbered text to specify that `<item>` and the current page & line number should be added to the raw index file.

Note that the file `.idx` will contain the right reference only after the third run, because of the internal indexing mechanism of `reledmac`. That means you must first run (Xe/Lua) $\LaTeX$  three times, then run `makeindex`, and then finally run (Xe/Lua) $\LaTeX$  again, in order to get an index with the right page numbers.

If the `imakeidx` or `indextools` package is used then the macro takes an optional argument, which is the name of a raw index file. For example `\edindex[line]{item}` will use `line.idx` as the raw file instead of `\jobname.idx`.

The minimal version of `imakeidx` package to be used is the version 1.3a uploaded on CTAN on 2013/07/11.

Be careful with the order of package loading and index declaration. You must use this order:

1. Load `imakeidx` or `indextools`.
2. Load `reledmac`.
3. Declare the index with the macro `\makeindex` of `imakeidx` and `indextools`.

## 13.2 Referring to critical notes

If you want to refer to a word inside an `\edtext{<lemma>}{<app>}` command, `\edindex` should be defined inside the first argument, e.g.,

```
The \edtext{creature\edlabel{elephant} was quite
unafraid}{\Afootnote{Of the mouse, that is.}}
```

If you add `\edindex` inside some `\Xfootnote` command, it will refer to that note, and a suffix *n* will be appended to the reference. You can redefine this suffix by redefining the command `\ledinnotemark`. Its actual definition is:

```
\newcommand{\ledinnotemark}[1]{#1\emph{n}}
```

## 13.3 Separator between page and line numbers

`\pagelinesep`

The page & line number combination is written as `page\pagelinesep line`, where the default definition is `\newcommand{\pagelinesep}{-}` so that an item on page 3, line 5 will be noted as being at 3–5. You can renew `\pagelinesep` to get a different separator.

– is the default separator used by the `MAKEINDEX` program.

Consequently, if you want to use an other `\pagelinesep`, you have to configure your `.ist` index style file. For example if you use `:` as separator<sup>20</sup>.

<sup>20</sup>For further detail, you can read <http://tex.stackexchange.com/a/32783/7712>.



```
page_compositor ":"
delim_r ":"
```

Read the MAKEINDEX program's handbook about the .ist file.

## 13.4 Using xindy

Should you decide to use xindy instead of makeindex to transform your .idx files into .ind files, you must use some specific configuration file (.xdy) so that xindy can understand eledmac reference syntax of which the scheme is:

pagenumber-linenummer

An example of such a file is provided in the “examples” folder. Read the xindy handbook to learn how to use it.<sup>21</sup>

This file also provides, with an explanation, the settings that are needed to put reledmac lines numbers in parenthesis, in order to make a better distinction between line numbers and page ranges.

In any case, you must load reledmac with the xindy option, in order to generate a .xdy file which is specific to your document. This file is needed by the .xdy example file which is in the “examples” folder. Its default name is reledmac-markup-attr.xdy, but you can change it by using your own as an argument of the xindy+hyperref option.

If you chose to use both xindy and the hyperref package, you must do three more things:

1. Use xindy+hyperref option when loading the reledmac package. When you run (Xe/Lua)TeX with this option, a .xdy configuration file will be generated with all the settings needed to allow internal hyperlinking in each index entry which is created by \edindex.
2. Use hyperindex=false option when loading hyperref.
3. Uncomment — by removing the semicolons at the beginning of the relevant lines — some lines in the <code>.xdy</code> file provided in the “examples” folder in order to restore internal links in the index to be used by the standard index command.<sup>22</sup>

## 13.5 Advanced setting

`\edindexlab`

The \edindex process uses a \label and \ref mechanism to get the correct line number. It automatically generates labels of the form \label{\edindexlab N}, where N is a number, and the default definition of \edindexlab is:

```
\newcommand*{\edindexlab}{\&}
```

in the hopes that this will not be used by any other labels (\edindex's labels are like \label{\&27}). You can change \edindexlab to something else if you need to.

<sup>21</sup>Or, for people who read French, read <http://geekographie.maieul.net/174>.

<sup>22</sup>These are the recommended lines to provide the best possible compatibility between hyperref and xindy, even without using reledmac.

## 14 Glossary

reledmac provides mechanism to make glossaries with the `glossaries` package, referring not to the page, but to the page and line.

### 14.1 Preamble setting

The standard compositor between page and line number in `reledmac` is a dash, while `glossaries` use, in standard, a dot. Consequently, you must:

- Or set `.glossaries`:  
`\glsSetCompositor{-}`
- Or set `reledmac`:  
`\renewcommand{\pagelinesep}{-}`  
 In this case, the above will have consequences for your use of `\edindex` and you should set your `.ist` file (13.3 p. 56).

### 14.2 Commands

The `\gls`, `\Gls`, and related commands of `glossaries` packages have a prefixed version with `ed`, which refers to the page line. The argument are the same as for the standard commands. So for example:

`\edgls[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]`

## 15 Tabular material

TeX's normal tabular and array environments cannot be used where line numbering is being done; more precisely, they can be used but with odd results, so don't use them. However, `reledmac` provides some simple tabulation environments that can be line numbered. The environments can also be used in normal unnumbered text.

There are six environments; the `edarray*` environments are for math and `edtabular*` for text entries. The final `l`, `c`, or `r` in the environment names indicate that the entries will be flushleft (`l`), centered (`c`) or flushright (`r`). There is no means of specifying different formats for each column, nor for specifying a fixed width for a column. The environments are centered with respect to the surrounding text.

```

edarrayl      \begin{edtabularc}
edarrayc      1 & 2 & 3 \\
edarrayr      a & bb & ccc \\
edtabularl    AAA & BB & C
edtabularc    \end{edtabularc}
edtabularr

```

1	2	3
a	bb	ccc
AAA	BB	C

Entries in the environments are the same as for the normal `array` and `tabular` environments but there must be no ending `\\` at the end of the last row. *There must be the same number of column designators (the `&`) in each row.* There is no equivalent to any line drawing commands (such as `\hline`). However, unlike the normal environments, the `ed...` environments can cross page breaks.

Macros like `\edtext` can be used as part of an entry.

For example:

```
\beginnumbering
\pstart
\begin{edtabularl}
\textbf{\Large I} & \& wish I was a little bug\edindex{bug} &
\textbf{\Large I} & \& eat my peas with honey\edindex{honey} \\
& \& With whiskers \edtext{round}{\Afootnote{around}} my tummy &
& \& I've done it all my life. \\
& \& I'd climb into a honey\edindex{honey} pot &
& \& It makes the peas taste funny \\
& \& And get my tummy gummy.\edindex{gummy} &
& \& But it keeps them on the knife.
\end{edtabularr}
\pend
\endnumbering
```

produces the following parallel pair of verses.

1	<b>I</b> wish I was a little bug	<b>I</b> eat my peas with honey
2	With whiskers round my tummy	I've done it all my life.
3	I'd climb into a honey pot	It makes the peas taste funny
4	And get my tummy gummy.	But it keeps them on the knife.

`\edtabcolsep` The distance between the columns is controlled by the length `\edtabcolsep`.  
`\spreadmath` `\spreadmath{\langle math \rangle}` typesets `\langle math \rangle` but the `\langle math \rangle` has no effect on the  
`\spreadtext` calculation of column widths. `\spreadtext{\langle text \rangle}` is the analagous command for use  
in `edtabular` environments.

```
\begin{edarrayl}
1 & 2 & \& 3 & \& 4 \\
& \& \spreadmath{F+G+C} & \& \\
a & \& bb & \& ccc & \& dddd
\end{edarrayl}
```

1	2	3	4
<i>a</i>	<i>bb</i>	<i>ccc</i>	<i>dddd</i>

`\edrowfill` The macro `\edrowfill{\langle start \rangle}{\langle end \rangle}{\langle fill \rangle}` fills columns number `\langle start \rangle` to `\langle end \rangle` inclusive with `\langle fill \rangle`. The `\langle fill \rangle` argument can be any horizontal 'fill'. For example `\hrulefill` or `\upbracefill`.

Note that every row must have the same number of columns, even if some would not appear to be necessary.

The `\edrowfill` macro can be used in both `tabular` and `array` environments. The typeset appearance of the following code is shown below.

```
\begin{edtabularr}
1 & & \& 2 & \& 3 & \& 4 & \& 5 \\
Q & & \& & \& fd & \& h & \& qwertziohg \\
v & & \& wptz & \& x & \& y & \& vb \\
g & & \& nnn & \& \edrowfill{3}{5}{\upbracefill} & \& \\
\edrowfill{1}{3}{\downbracefill} & \& & \& pq & \& dgh
```

```

k                                & 1 & co & ghweropjklmnbvcxys \\
1                                & 2 & 3 & \edrowfill{4}{5}{\hrulefill} &
\end{tabularr}

```

1	2	3	4	5
Q		fd	h	qwertziohg
v	wptz	x	y	vb
g	nnn	$\underbrace{\hspace{10em}}$		
k	$\underbrace{\hspace{10em}}$		pq	dgh
1	2	3	co	ghweropjklmnbvcxys
			$\underbrace{\hspace{10em}}$	

You can also define your own ‘fill’. For example:

```

\newcommand*{\upbracketfill}{%
  \vrule height 4pt depth 0pt\hrulefill\vrule height 4pt depth 0pt}

```

is a fill like `\upbracketfill` except it has the appearance of a (horizontal) bracket instead of a brace. It can be used like this:

```

\begin{edarrayc}
1 & 2 & & & 3 & 4 & \\
a & \edrowfill{2}{3}{\upbracketfill} & & d & \\
A & B & & C & D & 
\end{edarrayc}

```

1	2	3	4
<i>a</i>	$\underbrace{\hspace{1em}}$		<i>d</i>
<i>A</i>	<i>B</i>	<i>C</i>	<i>D</i>

`\edatleft`      `\edatleft[ $\langle math \rangle$ ]{ $\langle symbol \rangle$ }{ $\langle halfheight \rangle$ }` typesets the math  $\langle symbol \rangle$  as  $\left\langle symbol \right\rangle$  with the optional  $\langle math \rangle$  centered before it. The  $\langle symbol \rangle$  is twice  $\langle halfheight \rangle$  tall. The `\edatright` macro is similar and it typesets  $\right\langle symbol \right\rangle$  with  $\langle math \rangle$  centered after it.

```

\begin{edarrayc}
& 1 & 2 & 3 & & \\
& 4 & 5 & 6 & & \\
\edatleft[left =]{\{ }{1.5\baselineskip}
& 7 & 8 & 9 & & 
\edatright[= right]{\} }{1.5\baselineskip}
\end{edarrayc}

```

$$left = \left( \begin{array}{ccc} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{array} \right) = right$$

`\edbeforetab`      `\edbeforetab{⟨text⟩}{⟨entry⟩}`, where `⟨entry⟩` is an entry in the leftmost column, typesets `⟨text⟩` left justified before the `⟨entry⟩`. Similarly `\edaftertab{⟨entry⟩}{⟨text⟩}`, where `⟨entry⟩` is an entry in the rightmost column, typesets `⟨text⟩` right justified after the `⟨entry⟩`.

For example:

```
\begin{edarrayl}
      A & 1 & 2 & 3 \\
\edbeforetab{Before}{B} & 1 & 3 & 6 \\
      C & 1 & 4 & \edaftertab{8}{After} \\
      D & 1 & 5 & 0
\end{edarrayl}
```

	$A \quad 1 \quad 2 \quad 3$	
Before	$B \quad 1 \quad 3 \quad 6$	
	$C \quad 1 \quad 4 \quad 8$	After
	$D \quad 1 \quad 5 \quad 0$	

`\edvertline`      The macro `\edvertline{⟨height⟩}` draws a vertical line `⟨height⟩` high (contrast this with `\edatright` where the size argument is half the desired height).

`\edvertdots`

```
\begin{edarrayr}
a & b & C & d & \\
v & w & x & y & \\
m & n & o & p & \\
k & & L & cvb & \edvertline{4pc}
\end{edarrayr}
```

$a$	$b$	$C$	$d$	
$v$	$w$	$x$	$y$	
$m$	$n$	$o$	$p$	
$k$		$L$	$cvb$	

The `\edvertdots` macro is similar to `\edvertline` except that it produces a vertical dotted instead of a solid line.

## 16 Sectioning commands

### 16.1 Sectioning commands without line numbers or critical notes

The standard sectioning commands (`\chapter`, `\section` etc.) can be used inside numbered text. In this case, you must call them as an optional argument of `\pstart` (5.2.3 p. 18):

```
\pstart[\section{section}]
Pstart content.
\pend
```

The line which contains them will not be numbered, and you cannot add critical notes inside.

## 16.2 Sectioning commands with line numbering and critical notes

You have to use the following commands:

- `\eledchapter[⟨text⟩]{⟨critical text⟩}`,
- `\eledchapter*`,
- `\eledsection[⟨text⟩]{⟨critical text⟩}`,
- `\eledsection*`,
- `\eledsubsection[⟨text⟩]{⟨critical text⟩}`,
- `\eledsubsection*`,
- `\eledsubsubsection[⟨text⟩]{⟨critical text⟩}`,
- `\eledsubsubsection*`.

These are equivalent to the  $\LaTeX$  commands. Each individual command must be called alone in a `\pstart ... \pend`:

```
\pstart
\eledsection*{xxxx\ledsidenote{section}}
\pend
\pstart
\eledsubsection*{xxxx\ledsidenote{sub}}
\pend
\pstart
normal text
\pend
```

After the first run, you will see only the text. This is normal. After the second run, you will see the formatting. Finally, with the third run, you will see the table of contents.

For technical reasons, the page break before `\elechapter` cannot be added automatically. You have to insert it manually via `\beforeeledchapter`, which must be called outside of a numbered section.

## 16.3 Optimization

`\noeledsec` If you are not going to have any `\eledxxx` commands, then load `reledmac` with `\noeledsec` option. That will suppress the generation of unneeded `.eledsec` files, save memory, and make `reledmac` run faster.

## 17 Quotation environments

The quotation and quote environments can be used so that the same definition/note appears both inside and outside a numbered section. The typographical consequences will resemble the outside numbered sections, based on the styles of the *book* class. However, if you use a package that redefines these environments, these redefinitions won't be available inside the numbered section. You must open any quotation environments inside a `\pstart ... \pend` block, not outside. A quotation environment **MUST NOT** be opened immediately after a `\pstart` and **MUST NOT** be closed immediately before a `\pend`.

In some cases, you do not want these environments to be redefined in numbered sections. You can load the package with the option `noquotation` to prevent this redefinition.

## 18 Page breaks

### 18.1 Control page breaking

`reledmac` and `reledpar` break pages automatically. However, you may sometimes want to either force page breaks, or prevent them. The packages provide two macros:

`\ledpb`  
`\lednopb`

- `\ledpb` adds a page break.
- `\lednopb` prevents a page break, by adding one line to the current page if needed.

**These commands have effect only at the second run.**

These two commands take effect at the beginning of line in which they are called. For example, if you call `\ledpb` at l. 444, then l. 443 will be at the p.  $n$ , and the l. 444 at the p.  $n + 1$ . However, you can change the behavior and decide they will have effect after the end of the line, adding `\ledpbsetting{after}` at the beginning of your file (better: in your preamble). With the previous example, l. 444 will be on p.  $n$  and l. 445 will be on p.  $n + 1$ .

`\ledpbsetting`

If you are using `reledpar` to typeset parallel pages, you must use `\lednopb` on both sides in the two corresponding lines. This is especially important when you are using stanzas; otherwise, the pages will be out of sync.

### 18.2 Prevent page break in a long verses

`\lednopbinversettrue`

You can also decide to prevent page breaks between two lines of a long verse. To do this, use `nopbinverse` when loading package, or add `\lednopbinversettrue` in the beginning of your file (better: in your preamble).

This feature works only with verse of 2 lines and no more. It works on the third run, or on the fourth run if using `reledpar`. By default, when a long verse runs between two pages, a page break will be placed at the beginning of the verse. However, if you have added `\ledpbsetting{after}`, the page break will be placed at the end of the long verse and the page containing the long verse will have one extra line.

## 19 Miscellaneous

`\extensionchars` When the package assembles the name of the auxiliary file for a section, it prefixes `\extensionchars` to the section number. This is initially defined to be empty, but you can add some characters to help distinguish these files if you like; what you use is likely to be system-dependent. If, for example, you said `\renewcommand{\extensionchars}{!}`, then you would get temporary files called `jobname. !1`, `jobname. !2`, etc.

`\ifledfinal` The package can take options. The option ‘final’, which is the default is for final typesetting; this sets `\ifledfinal` to TRUE. The other option, ‘draft’, may be useful during earlier stages and sets `\ifledfinal` to FALSE.

`\showlemma` The lemma within the text is printed via `\showlemma{lemma}`. Normally, or with the ‘final’ option, the definition of `\showlemma` is:

```
\newcommand*\showlemma[1]{#1}
```

so it just produces its argument. With the ‘draft’ option it is defined as

```
\newcommand*\showlemma[1]{\textit{#1}}
```

so that its argument is typeset in an italic font, which may make it easier to check that all lemmas have been treated.

If you would prefer some other style, you could put something like this in the preamble:

```
\ifledfinal\else
\renewcommand*\showlemma[1]{\textbf{#1}}% or simply ... [1]{#1}
\fi
```

### 19.1 Known and suspected limitations

#### 19.1.1 Non-standard geometry

If you use classes other than `article` or `book`, or if you use the `geometry` package, you should use `maxhnotesX` and/or `\Xmaxhnotes` as explained in 7.13.5 p. 44 in order to prevent footnotes from overlapping the bottom margin.

#### 19.1.2 floatrow package compatibility

The `floatrow` package must be loaded before the `reledmac`.

#### 19.1.3 ‘No room for a new’

Sometimes, especially when using `reledmac` with other packages, you could obtain warning messages such ‘no room for a new count’ or ‘no room for a new write’.

In order to prevent such problems, the first thing is to use the options to optimize `reledmac`. For example, if you need only two series of notes, use the `series={A,B}` option. Read 16.3 p. 62 in order to know which are the available options.

However, if with these options you still have such messages, here are some tricks.

‘no room for a new count’ is often caused by `biblatex` being used at the same time. Load `reledmac` (and `reledpar`) *before* `biblatex`.



**'no room for a new write'** can be caused by multiple indexes. In this case, use `indextools` of `imakeidx` with the `splitindex` option, in order to obtain only one `.idx` file. If that does not solve your problem, you can use `morewrites` package. That should solve the problem, but  $\LaTeX$  will be slower.

If after reading and applying these advices you have still problem, contact us with a minimal working example.

#### 19.1.4 Marginal notes

In general, `reledmac`'s system for adding marginal line numbers breaks anything that makes direct use of the  $\LaTeX$  insert system, which includes `marginpars`, footnotes and floats.

However, you can use both `\footnote` and the familiar footnote series notes in numbered text. A `\marginpar` in numbered text will throw away its contents and send a warning message to the terminal and log file, but will do no harm.

#### 19.1.5 Paragraph shape

`\parshape` cannot be used within numbered text, except in a very restricted way.

`\ballast`  $\LaTeX$  is a three-pass system, but even after a document has been processed three times, there are some tricky situations in which the page breaks decided by  $\TeX$  never settle down. At each successive run, `reledmac` may oscillate between two different sets of page decisions. To stop this happening, should it arise, Wayne Sullivan suggested the inclusion of the quantity `\ballast`. The amount of `\ballast` will be subtracted from the penalties which apply to the page breaks calculated on the *previous* run through  $\TeX$ , thus reinforcing these breaks. So if you find your page breaks oscillating, insert `\setcounter{ballast}{100}` or some such figure, and with any luck the page breaks will settle down. Luckily, this problem does not crop up at all often.

#### 19.1.6 Paragraphed footnotes

The restriction on explicit line-breaking in paragraphed footnotes, mentioned on 7.1 p. 34, and described in more detail on XII.6.3 p. 164, really is a nuisance if that is something you need to do. There are some possible solutions, described by Michael Downes, but this area remains unsatisfactory.

If you use more than one series of paragraphed notes, it may happen, in some particular cases, that only the footnote rule, with no accompanying footnotes, be printed. In this case use `reledmac` package option `nopenalties` which should solve the problem, but also may produce widow or orphan lines. For the time being, we have no solution of this problem.

`\footfudgefiddle` For paragraphed footnotes  $\TeX$  has to estimate the amount of space required. If it underestimates this then the notes may get too long and run off the bottom of the text block. `\footfudgefiddle` can be increased from its default 64 (say, to 68) to increase the estimate. You have to use `\renewcommand` for this, like:

```
\renewcommand{\footfudgefiddle}{68}
```

Note that you must call it *before* `\Xarrangement{paragraph}` or `\arrangementX{paragraph}`.

Any settings to ‘geometry’ must be made before `\Xarrangement / \arrangementX`.

Finally, in many cases you should use `\Xmaxhnotes` and / or `\maxhnotesX` (7.13.5 p. 44), in order to define the maximum height relative to `\textheight` and not to `\vsize`, because the `\vsize` value is not the same inside and outside of the preamble.

### 19.1.7 Use with other packages

Because of `reledmac`’s complexity, it may not play well with other packages. In particular `reledmac` is sensitive to commands in the arguments to the `\edtext` and `\*footnote` macros (this is discussed in more detail in section VI, and in particular the discussion about `\no@expands` and `\morenoexpands`). You will have to see what works or doesn’t work in your particular case.

`\morenoexpands`

You can define the macro `\morenoexpands` to modify macros that you call within `\edtext`. Because of the way `reledmac` numbers the lines the arguments to `\edtext` can be processed more than once and in some cases a macro should only be processed once. One example is the `\colorbox` macro from the `color` package, which you might use like this:

```
... \edtext{\colorbox{mycolor}{lemma}}{\Afootnote{... \colorbox{...}}}
```

If you actually try this<sup>23</sup> you will find  $\LaTeX$  whinging ‘Missing { inserted’, and then things start to fall apart. The trick in this case is to specify either:

```
\newcommand{\morenoexpands}{\let\colorbox=0}
```

or

```
\makeatletter
\newcommand{\morenoexpands}{\let\colorbox\@secondoftwo}
\makeatother
```

(`\@secondoftwo` is an internal  $\LaTeX$  macro that takes two arguments and throws away the first one.) The first incantation lets color show in both the main text and footnotes whereas the second one shows color in the main text but kills it in the lemma and footnotes. On the other hand if you use `\textcolor` instead, like

```
... \edtext{\textcolor{mycolor}{lemma}}{\Afootnote{... \textcolor{...}}}
```

there is no need to fiddle with `\morenoexpands` as the color will naturally be displayed in both the text and footnotes. To kill the color in the lemma and footnotes, though, you can do:

```
\makeatletter
```

---

<sup>23</sup>Reported by Dirk-Jan Dekker in the CTT thread ‘Incompatibility of “color” package’ on 2003/08/28.

```
\newcommand{\morenoexpands}{\let\textcolor\@secondoftwo}
\makeatother
```

It took Peter Wilson a little while to discover all this. If you run into this sort of problem you may have to spend some time experimenting before hitting on a solution.

If you want to use the option *bottom* of the `footmisc` package, you must load this package *before* the `reledmac` package.

### 19.1.8 Parallel typesetting

Peter Wilson has developed the `ledpar` package as an extension to `ledmac` specifically for parallel typesetting of critical texts. This also cooperates with the `babel` / `polyglossia` packages for typesetting in multiple languages. `reledpar` is the successor of the primitive `ledpar` package.

Peter Wilson also developed the `ledarab` package for handling parallel Arabic text in critical editions. However, this package is not maintained by Maïeul Rouquette. You should use the capabilities of a modern TeX processor, like Xe(La)TeX

## I Implementation overview

We present the `reledmac` code in roughly the order in which it is used during a run of  $\text{\TeX}$ . The order is *exactly* that in which it is read when you load The `Eledmac` package, because the same file is used to generate this manual and to generate the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  package file.

Most of what follows consists of macro definitions, but there are some commands that are executed immediately—especially at the start of the code. The documentation generally describes the code from the point of view of what happens when the macros are executed, though. As each macro is introduced, its name is printed in the margin.

After package options, we begin with the commands you use to start and stop line numbering in a section of text (Section II). Next comes the machinery for writing and reading the auxiliary file for each section that helps us count lines, and for creating list macros encoding the information from that file (Section V); this auxiliary file will be read at the start of each section, to create those list macros, and a new version of the file will be started to collect information from the body of the section.

Next are commands for marking sections of the text for footnotes (Section VI), followed by the macros that take each paragraph apart, attach the line numbers and insertions, and send the result to the vertical list (Section VII). The footnote commands (Section XII) and output routine (Section XXII) finish the main part of the processing; cross-referencing (Section XXIII) and endnotes (Section XIX) complete the story.

In what follows, macros with an `@` in their name are more internal to the workings of `reledmac` than those made up just of ordinary letters, just as in `PLAIN \TeX` (see *The TeXbook*, p. 344). You are meant to be able to make free with ordinary macros, but the ‘`@`’ ones should be treated with more respect, and changed only if you are pretty sure of what you are doing.

## II Preliminaries

### II.1 Links with original `edmac`

Generally, these are the modifications to the original. `edmac` code:

- Replace as many `\def`’s by `\newcommand`’s as possible to avoid overwriting  $\text{\LaTeX}$  macros.
- Replace user-level  $\text{\TeX}$  counts by  $\text{\LaTeX}$  counters.
- Use the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  font handling mechanisms.
- Use  $\text{\LaTeX}$  messaging and file facilities.

### II.2 Package declaration

Announce the name and version of the package, which is targetted for `LaTeX2e`.

```

1 %<*code>
2 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}
3 \ProvidesPackage{reledmac}[2016/07/14 v2.14.1a typeset critical editions]%
4 %

```

## II.3 Package options

```

\ifledfinal Use this to remember which option is used, set and execute the options with final as the
\ifnocritical@ default. We use xkeyval in order to manage options with argument.
\if@noeled@sec \RequirePackage{xkeyval}
\ifnoend@ %
\ifnofamiliar@
\ifnoledgroup@ The parledgroup option is for reledpar. However, it has consequence on reledmac
\ifparapparus@ internal command. So we need to define the boolean now.
\ifnoquotation@ \newif\ifparledgroup
\iflednopbinverse %
\ifparledgroup
\ifwidthliketwocolumns And now, the options of reledmac.
\ifxindy@ \DeclareOptionX{series}[A,B,C,D,E]{\xdef\default@series{#1}}
\ifxindyhyperref@ \ExecuteOptionsX{series}%
\ifeledmaccompat@
12 \newif\if@noeled@sec%
13 \DeclareOptionX{noeledsec}{\@noeled@sectrue}
14
15 \newif\ifnocritical@%
16 \DeclareOptionX{nocritical}{\nocritical@true}%
17
18 \newif\ifnofamiliar@%
19 \DeclareOptionX{nofamiliar}{\nofamiliar@true}%
20
21 \newif\ifnoledgroup@%
22 \DeclareOptionX{noledgroup}{\noledgroup@true}%
23
24 \newif\ifnoend@%
25 \DeclareOptionX{noend}{%
26 \let\l@dend@open\@gobble%
27 \let\l@dend@close\relax%
28 \global\let\l@dend@stuff=\relax%
29 \noend@true%
30 }%
31
32 \newif\ifnoquotation@
33 \DeclareOptionX{noquotation}{\noquotation@true}
34
35 \newif\ifledfinal
36 \DeclareOptionX{final}{\ledfinaltrue}
37 \DeclareOptionX{draft}{\ledfinalfalse}
38 \ExecuteOptionsX{final}

```

```

39 \newif\ifparapparatus@
40 \DeclareOptionX{parapparatus}{\parapparatus@true}
41
42
43 \newif\iflednopbinverse
44 \DeclareOptionX{nopbinverse}{\lednopbinversetrue}
45
46 \newif\ifwidthliketwocolumns%
47 \DeclareOptionX{widthliketwocolumns}{\widthliketwocolumnstrue}%
48
49 \newif\ifcontinuousnumberingwithcolumns
50 \DeclareOptionX{continuousnumberingwithcolumns}{\
continuousnumberingwithcolumnstrue}%
51
52 \newif\ifxindy@
53 \DeclareOptionX{xindy}[eledmac-markup-attr.xdy]{%
54   \AtBeginDocument{\immediate\openout\eledmac@xindy@out=#1}%
55   \newwrite\eledmac@xindy@out%
56   \xindy@true%
57   \gdef\eledmacmarkuplocdepth{:depth 1}%
58   \AtEndDocument{\immediate\closeout\eledmac@xindy@out}%
59 }%
60
61 \newif\ifxindyhyperref@
62 \DeclareOptionX{xindy+hyperref}{%
63   \xindyhyperref@true%
64 }%
65
66 \newif\ifeledmaccompat@%
67 \DeclareOptionX{eledmac-compat}{%
68   \eledmaccompat@true%
69 }%
70 \DeclareOptionX{nopenalties}{%
71   \AtBeginDocument{\let\add@penalties\relax}%
72 }
73 \def\l@auxdir{}%
74 \DeclareOptionX{auxdir}{%
75   \xdef\l@auxdir{#1}%
76 }%
77 %

```

We use the starred form of `\ProcessOptionsX` which executes options in the order listed in the source file: class options, then listed package options, so a package option can override a class option with the same name. This was suggested by Dan Luecking in the ctt thread *Class/package option processing*, on 27 February 2004.

```

78 \ProcessOptionsX*\relax
79
80 %

```

## II.4 Loading packages

Loading package xargs to declare commands with optional arguments. Etoolbox is also used to make code clearer - for example, in dynamic command names (which can replace \csname etc.). Use suffix to declare commands with a starred version, xstring to work with strings, ifluatex and ifxetex to test if Lua<sub>TeX</sub> or Xe<sub>TeX</sub> is running, and ragged2e to manage ragged justification for paragraphed notes.

```

81 \RequirePackage{xargs}
82 \RequirePackage{etoolbox}
83 \@ifl@t@r\fmtversion{2015/10/01}
84 {}%
85 {\RequirePackage{etex}}%
86 \csname reserveinserts\endcsname{32}%
87 }
88 \RequirePackage{suffix}
89 \RequirePackage{xstring}
90 \RequirePackage{ifluatex}
91 \RequirePackage{ragged2e}
92 \RequirePackage{ifxetex}%
93 %

```

## II.5 Compatibility with Lua<sub>TeX</sub>

Here, we enable some primitives for Lua<sub>TeX</sub>.

```

94 \ifx\directlua\undefined\else%
95   \directlua{tex.enableprimitives("",{"texdir","pardir","bodydir"})}
96 \fi
97 %

```

## II.6 Boolean flags

`\ifl@dmemoir` Define a flag for if the memoir class has been used.

```

98 \newif\ifl@dmemoir
99 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}{\l@dmemoirtrue}{\l@dmemoirfalse}
100
101 %

```

`\if@ledgroup` Flag set to true inside a ledgroup environment.

```

102 \newif\if@ledgroup%
103 %

```

`\ifl@imakeidx` Define a flag for if the imakeidx package has been used.

```

104 \newif\ifl@imakeidx
105 \@ifpackageloaded{imakeidx}{\l@imakeidxtrue}{}%False is the default value
106 %

```

`\ifl@indextools` Define a flag for if the `indextools` package has been used.

```

107 \newif\ifl@indextools%
108 \@ifpackageloaded{indextools}{%
109   \l@indextoolstrue%
110   \l@imakeidxtrue%
111   \let\imki@wrindexentry\indtl@wrindexentry%
112 }{}%
113 %

```

False is the default value. We consider `indextools` as a variant of `imakeidx`. That is why we set `\ifl@imakeidx` to true. We also let `\imki@wrindexentry` to `\indtl@wrindexentry`.

`\if@RTL` The `\if@RTL` is defined by the `bidi` package, which is sometimes loaded by *polyglossia*. But we define it as well if the `bidi` package is not loaded.

```

114 \ifdef{\if@RTL}{-}{\newif\if@RTL}
115 %

```

`\if@firstlineofpage` `\if@firstlineofpage` is set to TRUE at the first line of every page. `\if@firstlineofpageR` is for the right side.

```

116 \newif\if@firstlineofpage%
117 \newif\if@firstlineofpageR%
118 %

```

## II.7 Messages

All the messages are grouped here as macros. This saves  $\TeX$ 's memory when the same message is repeated and also lets them be edited easily.

`\reledmac@warning` Write a warning message.

```

119 \newcommand{\reledmac@warning}[1]{\PackageWarning{reledmac}{#1}}
120 %

```

`\reledmac@error` Write an error message.

```

121 \newcommand{\reledmac@error}[2]{\PackageError{reledmac}{#1}{#2}}
122 %

```

```

\led@err@NumberingStarted23 \newcommand*{\led@err@NumberingStarted}{%

```

```

\led@err@NumberingNotStarted24 \reledmac@error{Numbering has already been started}{\@ehc}}

```

```

\led@err@NumberingShouldHaveStarted25 \newcommand*{\led@err@NumberingNotStarted}{%

```

```

126 \reledmac@error{Numbering was not started}{\@ehc}}

```

```

127 \newcommand*{\led@err@NumberingShouldHaveStarted}{%

```

```

128 \reledmac@error{Numbering should already have been started}{\@ehc}}

```

```

129 %

```



```

\led@err@edtextoutsidepstart30 \newcommand*{\led@err@edtextoutsidepstart}{%
131 \reledmac@error{\string\edtext\space outside numbered paragraph (\...pstart
\pend)}{\@ehc}}%
132 %

\led@mess@NotesChanged33 \newcommand*{\led@mess@NotesChanged}{%
134 \typeout{\reledmac reminder: }%
135 \typeout{ The number of the footnotes in this section
136 has changed since the last run.}%
137 \typeout{ You will need to run LaTeX two more times
138 before the footnote placement}%
139 \typeout{ and line numbering in this section are
140 correct.}}
141 %

\led@mess@SectionContinued42 \newcommand*{\led@mess@SectionContinued}[1]{%
143 \message{Section #1 (continuing the previous section)}}
144 %

\led@err@LineationInNumbered45 \newcommand*{\led@err@LineationInNumbered}{%
146 \reledmac@error{You can't use \string\lineation\space within
147 a numbered section}{\@ehc}}
148 %

\led@warn@BadLineation49 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadLineation}{%
\led@warn@BadLinenummargin50 \reledmac@warning{Bad \string\lineation\space argument}}
\led@warn@BadLockdisp51 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadLinenummargin}{%
\led@warn@BadSublockdisp52 \reledmac@warning{Bad \string\linenummargin\space argument}}
153 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadLockdisp}{%
154 \reledmac@warning{Bad \string\lockdisp\space argument}}
155 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadSublockdisp}{%
156 \reledmac@warning{Bad \string\sublockdisp\space argument}}
157 %

\led@warn@NoLineFile58 \newcommand*{\led@warn@NoLineFile}[1]{%
159 \reledmac@warning{Can't find line-list file #1}}
160 %

\led@warn@LineFileObsolete61 \newcommand*{\led@warn@Obsolete}[1]{%
162 \reledmac@warning{Line-list file #1 was obsolete. We have not read it.
Please run LaTeX again.}}
163 %

```

```

\led@warn@BadAdvancelineSubline64 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadAdvancelineSubline}{%
\led@warn@BadAdvancelineLine65   \reledmac@warning{\string\advanceline\space produced a sub-line
166                                   number less than zero.}}
167 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadAdvancelineLine}{%
168   \reledmac@warning{\string\advanceline\space produced a line
169                                   number less than zero.}}
170 %

\led@warn@BadSetline71 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadSetline}{%
\led@warn@BadSetlinenum72   \reledmac@warning{Bad \string\setline\space argument}}
173 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadSetlinenum}{%
174   \reledmac@warning{Bad \string\setlinenum\space argument}}
175 %

\led@err@PstartNotNumbered76 \newcommand*{\led@err@PstartNotNumbered}{%
\led@err@PstartInPstart77   \reledmac@error{\string\pstart\space must be used within a
\led@err@PendNotNumbered78   numbered section %
\led@err@PendNoPstart79     (\string\...beginnumbering\string\endnumbering)}{\@ehc}}%
\led@err@AutoparNotNumbered80 \newcommand*{\led@err@PstartInPstart}{%
\led@err@NumberingWithoutPstart81 \reledmac@error{\string\pstart\space encountered while another
182   \string\pstart\space was in effect}{\@ehc}}
183 \newcommand*{\led@err@PendNotNumbered}{%
184   \reledmac@error{\string\pend\space must be used within a
185   numbered section}{\@ehc}}
186 \newcommand*{\led@err@PendNoPstart}{%
187   \reledmac@error{\string\pend\space must follow a \string\pstart}{\@ehc}}
188 \newcommand*{\led@err@AutoparNotNumbered}{%
189   \reledmac@error{\string\autopar\space must be used within a
190   numbered section}{\@ehc}}
191 \newcommand*{\led@err@NumberingWithoutPstart}{%
192   \reledmac@error{\string\beginnumbering...\string\endnumbering\space
without \string\pstart}{\@ehc}}%
193 %

\led@warn@BadAction94 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadAction}{%
195   \reledmac@warning{Bad action code, value \next@action.}}
196 %

\led@warn@DuplicateLabel97 \newcommand*{\led@warn@DuplicateLabel}[1]{%
\led@warn@AppLabelOutSecondArgEdtext98 \reledmac@warning{Duplicate definition of label `#1'\@gobble}%
\led@warn@RefUndefined99   \@latex@warning@no@line{Label `#1' multiply defined}%
\led@warn@RefUndefined100 }%
201 \newcommand*{\led@warn@AppLabelOutSecondArgEdtext}[1]{%
202   \reledmac@warning{\string\applabel\space outside of the second argument
of an \string\edtext\space `#1' on page \the\pageno.}}%

```

```

203 \newcommand*{\led@warn@RefUndefined}[1]{%
204   \G@refundefinedtrue%
205   \reledmac@warning{Reference `#1' on page \the\pageno\space undefined.%
206     Using `000'.}%
207   \@latex@warning{Reference `#1' undefined\on@line}%
208 }%
209 \newcommand*{\led@warn@pairRefUndefined}[1]{%
210   \G@refundefinedtrue%
211   \reledmac@warning{Reference `#1:start' and/or `#1:end' on page \the\
212     pageno\space undefined.
213     Using `??'.}%
214   \@latex@warning{Reference `#1:start' and/or `#1:end' undefined\on@line}%
215 }
216 %

```

```

\led@warn@NoMarginpars16 \newcommand*{\led@warn@NoMarginpars}{%
217   \reledmac@warning{You can't use \string\marginpar\space in numbered text
218   }}
219 %

```

```

\led@warn@BadSidenotemargin19 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadSidenotemargin}{%
220   \reledmac@warning{Bad \string\sidenotemmargin\space argument}}
221 %

```

```

\led@warn@NoIndexFile22 \newcommand*{\led@warn@NoIndexFile}[1]{%
223   \reledmac@warning{Undefined index file #1}}
224 %

```

```

\led@warn@SeriesStillExist25 \newcommand*{\led@warn@SeriesStillExist}[1]{%
226   \reledmac@warning{Series #1 is still existing !}%
227 }%
228 %

```

```

\led@err@ManySidenotes29 \newcommand*{\led@err@ManySidenotes}{%
\led@err@ManyLeftnotes30   \ifledRcol{%
\led@err@ManyRightnotes31     \reledmac@warning{\itemcount@\space sidenotes on line \the\line@numR\
space p. \the\page@numR}%
232   \else%
233     \reledmac@warning{\itemcount@\space sidenotes on line \the\line@num\
space p. \the\page@num}%
234   \fi%
235 }%
236 \newcommand*{\led@err@ManyLeftnotes}{%
237   \ifledRcol{%

```

```

238 \reledmac@warning{\itemcount@\space leftnotes on line \the\line@numR\
space p. \the\page@numR}%
239 \else%
240 \reledmac@warning{\itemcount@\space leftnotes on line \the\line@num\
space p. \the\page@num}%
241 \fi%
242 }%
243 \newcommand{\led@err@ManyRightnotes}{%
244 \ifledRcol%
245 \reledmac@warning{\itemcount@\space rightnotes on line \the\line@numR\
space p. \the\page@numR}%
246 \else%
247 \reledmac@warning{\itemcount@\space rightnotes on line \the\line@num\
space p. \the\page@num}%
248 \fi%
249 }%
250 %

```

```

\led@err@TooManyColumns51 \newcommand*\led@err@TooManyColumns{%
\led@err@UnequalColumns52 \reledmac@error{Too many columns}{\@ehc}}
\led@err@LowStartColumn53 \newcommand*\led@err@UnequalColumns{%
\led@err@HighEndColumn54 \reledmac@error{Number of columns is not equal to the number
\led@err@ReverseColumns55 in the previous row (or \protect\\ \space forgotten?)}{\@ehc}}
256 \newcommand*\led@err@LowStartColumn{%
257 \reledmac@error{Start column is too low}{\@ehc}}
258 \newcommand*\led@err@HighEndColumn{%
259 \reledmac@error{End column is too high}{\@ehc}}
260 \newcommand*\led@err@ReverseColumns{%
261 \reledmac@error{Start column is greater than end column}{\@ehc}}
262 %

```

```

\led@err@toendnotes@outsidenumbering63 \newcommand{\led@err@toendnotes@outsidenumbering}{%
264 \reledmac@error{\string\toendnotes\space and related commands must be
called inside a numbered text (\string\...beginnumbering\string\endnumbering
)}{\@ehc}%
265 }%
266 %

```

```

\led@err@EdtextWithoutFootnote67 \newcommand{\led@err@EdtextWithoutFootnote}{%
268 \reledmac@error{edtext without Xfootnote. Check syntax}{\@ehc}%
269 }%
270 %

```

```

\newcommand{\led@err@FootnoteNotInSecondArgEdtext}[1]{%
  \reledmac@error{#1footnote outside of the second argument of an edtext.
    Check syntax}\@ehc}%
}%
%

\newcommand{\led@error@ImakeidxAfterEledmac}{%
  \reledmac@error{Imakeidx must be loaded before reledmac.}\@ehc}%
}%
%

\newcommand{\led@error@IndextoolsAfterEledmac}{%
  \reledmac@error{Indextools must be loaded before reledmac.}\@ehc}%
}%
%

\newcommand{\led@error@fail@patch@@makecol}{%
  \reledmac@error{Fail to patch \string\@makecol\space command.}\@ehc}%
}%
%

\newcommand{\led@error@fail@patch@@reinserts}{%
  \reledmac@error{Fail to patch \string\@reinserts\space command.}\@ehc}%
}%
%

\newcommand{\led@error@fail@patch@@doclearpage}{%
  \reledmac@error{Fail to patch \string\@doclearpage\space command.}\@ehc}%
}%
%

\newcommand{\led@error@fail@patch@@iiiminipage}{%
  \reledmac@error{Fail to patch \string\@iiiminipage\space command.}\@ehc}%
}%
%

\newcommand{\led@error@fail@patch@endminipage}{%
  \reledmac@error{Fail to patch \string\endminipage\space command.}\@ehc}%
}%
%
```

```

\led@warning@hsizeX@deprecated\newcommand{\led@warning@hsizeX@deprecated}{%
303
304   \reledmac@warning{\string\hsizeX\space command deprecated, use \string\
widthX\space instead.}%
305 }%
306 %

```

```

\led@warning@Xhsize@deprecated\newcommand{\led@warning@Xhsize@deprecated}{%
307
308   \reledmac@warning{\string\Xhsize\space command deprecated, use \string\
Xwidth\space instead.}%
309 }%
310 %

```

```

\led@warning@msdatawithoutstop\newcommand{\led@warning@msdatawithoutstop}{%
311
312   \reledmac@warning{\string\msdata\space without corresponding \string\
stopmsdata}%
313 }%
314 %

```

```

\led@warning@preXnotes@deprecated\newcommand{\led@warning@preXnotes@deprecated}{%
315
316   \reledmac@warning@preXnotes@deprecated%
317 }%
318 %

```

## II.8 Gobbling

Here, we define some commands which gobble their arguments.

```

\@gobblethree\providecommand*\@gobblethree}[3]{%
\@gobblefour\providecommand*\@gobblefour}[4]{%
\@gobblefive\providecommand*\@gobblefive}[5]{%
322 %

```

## II.9 Miscellaneous commands

`\showlemma` `\showlemma{lemma}` typesets the lemma text in the body. It depends on the option.

```

323 \ifledfinal
324   \newcommand*\showlemma[1]{#1}
325 \else
326   \newcommand*\showlemma[1]{\underline{#1}}
327 \fi
328
329 %

```

`\linenumberlist` The code for the `\linenumberlist` mechanism was given to Peter Wilson by Wayne Sullivan on 2004/02/11.

Initialize it as `\empty`.

```
330 \let\linenumberlist=\empty
331
332 %
```

`\@l@tempcnta` In imitation of  $\TeX$ , we create a couple of scratch counters.

`\@l@tempcntb`  $\TeX$  already defines `\@tempcnta` and `\@tempcntb` but Peter Wilson found in the past that it can be dangerous to use these (for example one of the AMS packages did something nasty to the `ccaption` package's use of one of these).

```
333 \newcount\@l@tempcnta \newcount\@l@tempcntb
334 %
```

## II.10 Prepare reledpar

`\ifl@dpairing` In preparation for the `reledpar` package, these are related to the 'right' text of parallel texts (when `\ifl@dpairing` is TRUE). They are explained in the `eledpar` manual.

`\ifl@dpaging`

`\ifl@dprintingpages`

`\ifl@dprintingcolumns`

`\ifpst@rtedL`

`\l@dnumpstartsL`

```
335 \newif\ifl@dpairing
336 \newif\ifl@dpaging%
337 \newif\ifl@dprintingpages%
338 \newif\ifl@dprintingcolumns%
339 \newif\ifpst@rtedL
340 \newcount\l@dnumpstartsL
341 %
```

`\ifledRcol` `\ifledRcol` is set to true in the Rightside environnement. It must be not confused with `\ifledRcol@` which is set to true when a right line is processed, in `\Pages` or `\Columns`.

`\ifledRcol@`

```
342 \newif\ifledRcol
343 \newif\ifledRcol@
344 %
```

`\ifnumberingR` The `\ifnumberingR` flag is set to true if we're within a right text numbered section.

```
345 \newif\ifnumberingR
346 %
```

The `\ifXnote@` macro is set to true when we are typesetting a critical footnote.

```
347 \newif\ifXnote@%
348 %
```

## II.11 Booleans provided by other optional packages which are required in any case

`\ifindtl@innote` The `\ifindtl@innote` and `\ifindtl@notenumber` are required even if `indextools` is not used.

```
349 \providebool{indtl@innote}%
350 \providebool{indtl@notenumber}%
351 %
```

## III Sectioning commands

`\section@num` You use `\beginnumbering` and `\endnumbering` to begin and end a line-numbered section of the text; the pair of commands may be used as many times as you like within one document to start and end multiple, separately line-numbered sections.  $\TeX$  will maintain and display a ‘section number’ as a count named `\section@num` that counts how many `\beginnumbering` and `\resumenumbering` commands have appeared; it need not be related to the logical divisions of your text.

`\extensionchars` Each section will read and write an associated ‘line-list file’, containing information used to do the numbering; the file will be called `\jobname.nn`, where `nn` is the section number. However, you may direct that an extra string be added before the `nn` in that filename, in order to distinguish these temporary files from others: that string is called `\extensionchars`. Initially it’s empty, since different operating systems have greatly varying ideas about what characters are permitted in file names. So `\renewcommand{\extensionchars}{-}` gives temporary files called `jobname.-1`, `jobname.-2`, etc.

```
352 \newcount\section@num
353 \section@num=0
354 \let\extensionchars=\empty
355 %
```

`\ifnumbering` The `\ifnumbering` flag is set to true if we are within a numbered section (that is, between `\beginnumbering` and `\endnumbering`). You can use `\ifnumbering` in your own code to check whether you are in a numbered section, but do not change the flag’s value.

```
356 \newif\ifnumbering
357 %
```

`\beginnumbering` `\initnumbering@reg` `\beginnumbering` begins a section of numbered text. When it is executed we increment the section number, initialize our counters, send a message to your terminal, and call macros to start the lineation machinery and endnote files.

The initializations here are trickier than they look. `\line@list@stuff` will use all of the counters that are zeroed here when it assembles the line-list and other lists of information about the lineation. But it will do all of this locally and within a group, and



when it is done the lists will remain but the counters will return to zero. Those same counters will then be used as we process the text of this section, but the assignments will be made globally. These initializations actually apply to both uses, though in all other respects there should be no direct interaction between the use of these counters and variables in the two processing steps. For parallel processing :

- zero \l@dnumpstartsL — the number of chunks to be processed.
- set \ifpst@rtedL to FALSE.

```

358 \newcommand*{\beginnumbering}{%
359   \ifnumbering
360     \led@err@NumberingStarted
361   \endnumbering
362 \fi
363 \global\numberingtrue
364 \global\advance\section@num \@ne
365 \initnumbering@reg
366 \message{Section \the\section@num }%
367 \line@list@stuff{\jobname.\extensionchars\the\section@num}%
368 \l@dend@stuff
369 \setcounter{pstart}{1}
370 \ifl@dpairing
371   \global\l@dnumpstartsL \z@
372   \global\pst@rtedLfalse
373 %

```

The tools for section's title commands are called:

- Define an empty list of pstart number where sectioning commands are called.
- Input auxiliary file with the description of section titles.
- Open the same auxiliary file to write in.

```

374 \else
375   \begingroup
376   \global\@afterindenttrue%In order to reestablish normal feature if the \
377   \initnumbering@quote
378   \ifwidthliketwocolumns%
379     \csuse{setwidthliketwocolumns@\columns@position}%
380     \csuse{setpositionliketwocolumns@\columns@position}%
381   \fi%
382 \fi
383 \gdef\eled@sections@{}%
384 \if@noeled@sec\else%
385   \makeatletter\inputIfFileExists{\l@auxdir\jobname.eledsec\the\
386   section@num}{\makeatother}%
387   \immediate\openout\eled@sectioning@out=\l@auxdir\jobname.eledsec\the\
388   section@num\relax%

```

```

387 \fi%
388 }
389 \newcommand*{\initnumbering@reg}{%
390 \global\pst@rtedLfalse
391 \global\l@dnumstartsL \z@
392 \global\absline@num \z@
393 \gdef\normal@page@break{}
394 \gdef\l@prev@pb{}
395 \gdef\l@prev@nopb{}
396 \global\line@num \z@
397 \global\subline@num \z@
398 \global\@lock \z@
399 \global\sub@lock \z@
400 \global\sublines@false
401 \global\let\next@page@num=\relax
402 \global\let\sub@change=\relax
403 \resetprevline@
404 \resetprevpage@num
405 \global\stopmsdata@inserted@true%
406 }
407
408 %

```

`\endnumbering` `\endnumbering` must follow the last text for a numbered section. It takes care of notifying you when changes have been noted in the input that require running the file through again to move everything to the right place.

```

409 \def\endnumbering{%
410 \ifnumbering
411 \global\numberingfalse
412 \normal@pars
413 \ifnum\l@dnumstartsL=0%
414 \led@err@NumberingWithoutPstart%
415 \fi%
416 \ifl@dpairing
417 \global\pst@rtedLfalse
418 \else
419 \ifx\insertlines@list\empty\else
420 \global\noteschanged@true
421 \fi
422 \ifx\line@list\empty\else
423 \global\noteschanged@true
424 \fi
425 \fi
426 \ifnoteschanged@
427 \led@mess@NotesChanged
428 \fi
429 \else
430 \led@err@NumberingNotStarted
431 \fi

```

```

432 \autoparfalse
433 \if@noeled@sec\else%
434 \immediate\closeout\eled@sectioning@out%
435 \fi%
436 \ifl@dpairing\else
437 \global\l@dnumstartsL=\z@%
438 \endgroup
439 \fi
440 }
441 %

```

`\pausenumbering` The `\pausenumbering` macro is just the same as `\endnumbering`, but with the `\resumenumbering` `\ifnumbering` flag set to true, to show that numbering continues across the gap.<sup>24</sup>

```

442 \newcommand{\pausenumbering}{%
443 \ifautopar\global\autopar@pausetrue\fi%
444 \endnumbering\global\numberingtrue}
445 %

```

The `\resumenumbering` macro is a bit more involved, but not much. It does most of the same things as `\beginnumbering`, but without resetting the various counters. Note that no check is made by `\resumenumbering` to ensure that `\pausenumbering` was actually invoked.

```

446 \newcommand*{\resumenumbering}{%
447 \ifnumbering
448 \ifautopar@pause\autopar\fi
449 \global\pst@rtedLtrue
450 \global\advance\section@num \@ne
451 \led@mess@SectionContinued{the\section@num}%
452 \line@list@stuff{\jobname.\extensionchars\the\section@num}%
453 \l@dend@stuff
454 \ifl@dpairing\else%
455 \begingroup%
456 \initnumbering@quote%
457 \ifwidthliketwocolumns%
458 \csuse{setwidthliketwocolumns@\columns@position}%
459 \csuse{setpositionliketwocolumns@\columns@position}%
460 \fi%
461 \fi%
462 \ifcontinuousnumberingwithcolumns%
463 \ifdefined\line@numR%
464 \ifnum\line@numR>\line@num%
465 \expandafter\setlinenum\expandafter{\the\line@numR}%
466 \fi%
467 \ifnum\last@page@numR>\last@page@num%
468 \global\last@page@num=\last@page@numR%
469 \fi%
470 \fi%

```

<sup>24</sup>Peter Wilson's thanks to Wayne Sullivan, who suggested the idea behind these macros.

```

471     \fi%
472   \else
473     \led@err@NumberingShouldHaveStarted
474     \endnumbering
475     \beginnumbering
476   \fi}
477
478
479 %

```

## IV List macros

We will make heavy use of lists of information, which will be built up and taken apart by the following macros; they are adapted from *The TeXbook*, pp. 378–379, which discusses their use in more detail.

These macros consume a large amount of the run-time of this code. We intend to replace them in a future version, and in anticipation of doing so have defined their interface in such a way that it is not sensitive to details of the underlying code.

The historical list tools of `ledmac` are kept, because in many cause there are more useful than `etoolbox`'s lists. They allows to get and delete the first element of a list in one operation. They also expands the items add to the list.

However, `etoolbox`'s lists are more useful to loop on them. Consequently, depending of what we need, we use one or either.

It could be nice to unify them to the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  list, however such migration would take quite time with some risk of error, for a gain which will be minor.

**\list@create** The `\list@create` macro creates a new list. This macro does not do anything beyond initializing an empty list macro.

```

480 \newcommand*{\list@create}[1]{%
481   \global\let#1=\empty%
482 }%
483 %

```

**\list@clear** The `\list@clear` macro just initializes a list to the empty list; it is no different from `\list@create` in its effect, but it is in its semantic .

```

484 \newcommand*{\list@clear}[1]{%
485   \global\let#1=\empty%
486 }
487 %

```

**\xright@appenditem** `\xright@appenditem` expands an item and appends it to the right end of a list macro.  
**\led@toksa** We want the expansion because we will often be using this to store the current value of a counter. `\xright@appenditem` creates global control sequences, like `\xdef`, and uses two temporary token-list registers, `\@toksa` and `\@toksb`.

```

488 \newtoks\led@toksa \newtoks\led@toksb
489 \global\led@toksa={\}
490 \long\def\xright@appenditem#1\to#2{%
491   \global\led@toksb=\expandafter{#2}%
492   \xdef#2{\the\led@toksb\the\led@toksa\expandafter{#1}}%
493   \global\led@toksb={}}
494 %

```

**\xleft@appenditem** \xleft@appenditem expands an item and appends it to the left end of a list macro; it is otherwise identical to \xright@appenditem.

```

495 \long\def\xleft@appenditem#1\to#2{%
496   \global\led@toksb=\expandafter{#2}%
497   \xdef#2{\the\led@toksa\expandafter{#1}\the\led@toksb}%
498   \global\led@toksb={}}
499 %

```

**\gl@p** The \gl@p macro removes the leftmost item from a list and places it in a control sequence. You type \gl@p\l\to\z (where \l is the list macro, and \z receives the left item). \l is assumed nonempty: use \ifx\l\empty to test for an empty \l. The control sequences created by \gl@p are all global.

```

500 \def\gl@p#1\to#2{\expandafter\gl@poff#1\gl@poff#1#2}
501 \long\def\gl@poff\l\to#2\gl@poff#3#4{\gdef#4{#1}\gdef#3{#2}}
502
503 %

```

## V Line counting

### V.1 Choosing the system of lineation

Line number can be reset at each section (default) ; at each page ; at each pstart. Here we define internal codes for these systems and the macros.

**\ifbypstart@** The \ifbypage@ and \ifbypstart@ flag specify the current lineation system:

**\bypstart@true**

**\bypstart@false**

**\ifbypage@**

**\bypage@true**

**\bypage@false**

- line-of-page: bypstart@ = false and bypage@ = true.
- line-of-pstart: bypstart@ = true and bypage@ = false.

reledmac will use the line-of-section system unless instructed otherwise.

```

504 \newif\ifbypage@
505 \newif\ifbypstart@
506 %

```

The \ifbypage@R and \ifbypstart@R flag specify the current lineation for right side in case of using reledpar. They are now defined because they are used in some specific code. reledpar will use the line-of-section system unless instructed otherwise.

```

\ifbypage@R07 \newif\ifbypage@R
\ifbypstart@R08 \newif\ifbypstart@R
509 %

```

**\lineation** `\lineation{<word>}` is the macro you use to select the lineation system. Its argument is a string: either page, section or pstart.

```

510 \newcommand*{\lineation}[1]{%
511 %

```

We can't change the lineation system inside numbering section.

```

512 \ifnumbering
513 \led@err@LineationInNumbered
514 \else
515 %

```

If the argument is page.

```

516 \def\@tempa{#1}\def\@tempb{page}%
517 \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
518 \global\bypage@true
519 \global\bypstart@false
520 \unless\ifnocritical@%
521 \Xpstart[] [false]%
522 \fi%
523 %

```

If the argument is pstart.

```

524 \else
525 \def\@tempb{pstart}%
526 \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
527 \global\bypage@false
528 \global\bypstart@true
529 \unless\ifnocritical@%
530 \Xpstart%
531 \fi%
532 %

```

And finally, if the argument is section (default).

```

533 \else
534 \def\@tempb{section}
535 \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
536 \global\bypage@false
537 \global\bypstart@false
538 \unless\ifnocritical@%
539 \Xpstart[] [false]%
540 \fi%
541 %

```

In other case, it is an error.

```

542         \else
543             \led@warn@BadLineation
544         \fi
545     \fi
546 \fi
547 \fi}}
548 %

```

## V.2 Line number margin

`\linenummargin` `\linenummargin{⟨word⟩}` specify which margin line numbers are in; it takes one argument, a string, which value can be left ; right; inner or outer.

`\line@margin` The selection is recorded in the count `\line@margin`: 0 for left, 1 for right, 2 for outer, and 3 for inner.

`\l@dgetline@margin`

```

549 \newcount\line@margin
550
551 \newcommand*{\linenummargin}[1]{%
552     \l@dgetline@margin{#1}%
553     \ifnum\l@dtempcntb>\m@ne
554         \ifledRcol
555             \global\line@marginR=\l@dtempcntb
556             \led@warn@setting@in@rightside{\linenummargin}%
557         \else
558             \global\line@margin=\l@dtempcntb
559         \fi
560     \fi}}
561
562 \newcommand*{\l@dgetline@margin}[1]{%
563     \def\@tempa{#1}\def\@tempb{left}%
564     \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
565         \l@dtempcntb \z@
566     \else
567         \def\@tempb{right}%
568         \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
569             \l@dtempcntb \@ne
570         \else
571             \def\@tempb{outer}%
572             \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
573                 \l@dtempcntb \tw@
574             \else
575                 \def\@tempb{inner}%
576                 \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
577                     \l@dtempcntb \thr@@
578                 \else
579                     \led@warn@BadLinenummargin
580                     \l@dtempcntb \m@ne
581                 \fi
582             \fi

```

```

583 \fi
584 \fi}
585
586 %

```

### V.3 Line number initialization and increment

`\c@firstlinenum`    The following counters tell reledmac which lines should be printed with line numbers. `firstlinenum` is the number of the first line in each section that gets a number; `linenumincrement` is the difference between successive numbered lines. The initial values of these counters produce labels on lines 5, 10, 15, etc. `linenumincrement` must be at least 1.

```

587 \newcounter{firstlinenum}
588 \setcounter{firstlinenum}{5}
589 \newcounter{linenumincrement}
590 \setcounter{linenumincrement}{5}
591 %

```

`\c@firstsublinenum`    The following parameters are just like `firstlinenum` and `linenumincrement`, but for sub-line numbers. `sublinenumincrement` must be at least 1.

```

592 \newcounter{firstsublinenum}
593 \setcounter{firstsublinenum}{5}
594 \newcounter{sublinenumincrement}
595 \setcounter{sublinenumincrement}{5}
596
597 %

```

`\firstlinenum`    These macros can be used to set the corresponding counters.  
`\linenumincrement`  
`\firstsublinenum`  
`\sublinenumincrement`

```

598 \newcommand*{\firstlinenum}[1]{%
599 \ifledRcol%
600 \setcounter{firstlinenumR}{#1}%
601 \led@warn@setting@in@rightside{\firstlinenum}%
602 \else%
603 \setcounter{firstlinenum}{#1}%
604 \fi%
605 }
606 \newcommand*{\linenumincrement}[1]{%
607 \ifledRcol%
608 \setcounter{linenumincrementR}{#1}%
609 \led@warn@setting@in@rightside{\linenumincrement}%
610 \else%
611 \setcounter{linenumincrement}{#1}%
612 \fi%
613 }
614 \newcommand*{\firstsublinenum}[1]{%
615

```



```

616 \ifledRcol%
617 \setcounter{firstsublinenumR}{#1}%
618 \led@warn@setting@in@rightside{\firstsublinenum}%
619 \else%
620 \setcounter{firstsublinenum}{#1}%
621 \fi%
622 }
623 \newcommand*{\sublinenumincrement}[1]{%
624 \ifledRcol%
625 \setcounter{sublinenumincrementR}{#1}%
626 \led@warn@setting@in@rightside{\sublinenumincrement}%
627 \else%
628 \setcounter{sublinenumincrement}{#1}%
629 \fi%
630 }
631
632 %

```

## V.4 Line number locking

`\lockdisp` When line locking is being used, the `\lockdisp{<word>}` macro specifies whether a line number—if one is due to appear—should be printed on the first printed line or on the last, or by all of them. Its argument is a word, either `first`, `last`, or `all`. Initially, it is set to `first`.

`\lock@disp` encodes the selection: 0 for first, 1 for last, 2 for all.

```

633 \newcount\lock@disp
634 \newcommand{\lockdisp}[1]{%
635 \l@dgetlock@disp{#1}%
636 \ifnum\@l@dttempcntb>\m@ne
637 \global\lock@disp=\@l@dttempcntb
638 \else
639 \led@warn@BadLockdisp
640 \fi}}
641 \newcommand*{\l@dgetlock@disp}[1]{
642 \def\@tempa{#1}\def\@tempb{first}%
643 \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
644 \@l@dttempcntb \z@
645 \else
646 \def\@tempb{last}%
647 \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
648 \@l@dttempcntb \@ne
649 \else
650 \def\@tempb{all}%
651 \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
652 \@l@dttempcntb \tw@
653 \else
654 \@l@dttempcntb \m@ne
655 \fi

```

```

656 \fi
657 \fi}
658
659 %

```

`\sublockdisp` The same questions about where to print the line number apply to sub-lines, and these are the analogous macros for dealing with the problem.

```

660 \newcount\sublock@disp
661 \newcommand{\sublockdisp}[1]{\%
662 \l@getlock@disp{#1}%
663 \ifnum\l@dttempcntb>\m@ne
664 \global\sublock@disp=\l@dttempcntb
665 \else
666 \led@warn@BadSublockdisp
667 \fi}}
668
669 %

```

## V.5 Line number style

`\linenumberstyle` We provide a mechanism for using different representations of the line numbers, not just the normal arabic.

`\linenumrep` NOTE: In v0.7 `\linenumrep` and `\sublinenumrep` replaced the internal `\linenumr@p`

`\sublinenumrep@p` and `\sublinenumr@p`.

`\sublinenumberstyle` `\linenumberstyle` and `\sublinenumberstyle` are user level macros for setting the number representation (`\linenumrep` and `\sublinenumrep`) for line and sub-line numbers.

```

670 \newcommand*{\linenumberstyle}[1]{\%
671 \def\linenumrep##1{\@nameuse{#1}{##1}}}
672 \newcommand*{\sublinenumberstyle}[1]{\%
673 \def\sublinenumrep##1{\@nameuse{#1}{##1}}}
674 %

```

Initialise the number styles to arabic.

```

675 \linenumberstyle{arabic}
676 \let\linenumr@p\linenumrep
677 \sublinenumberstyle{arabic}
678 \let\sublinenumr@p\sublinenumrep
679
680 %

```

## V.6 Line number printing

`\leftlinenum` `\leftlinenum` and `\rightlinenum` are the macros that are called to print marginal line numbers on a page, for left- and right-hand margins respectively. They are made easy to access and change, since you may want to change the styling in some way. These

`\linenumsep`

`\numlabfont`

`\ledlinenum`

standard versions illustrate the general sort of thing that will be needed; they are based on the `\leftheadline` macro in *The TeXbook*, p. 416.

Whatever these macros output gets printed in a box that will be put into the appropriate margin without any space between it and the line of text. You will generally want a kern between a line number and the text, and `\linenumsep` is provided as a standard way of storing its size. Line numbers are usually printed in a smaller font, and `\numlabfont` is provided as a standard name for that font. When called, these macros will be executed within a group, so font changes and the like will remain local.

`\ledlinenum` typesets the line (and subtitle) number.

The original `\numlabfont` specification is equivalent to the  $\TeX$  `\scriptsize` for a 10pt document.

```

681 \newlength{\linenumsep}
682 \setlength{\linenumsep}{1pc}
683 \newcommand*{\numlabfont}{\normalfont\scriptsize}
684 \newcommand*{\ledlinenum}{%
685   \bgroup%
686   \ifluatex%
687     \texdir TLT%
688   \fi%
689   \numlabfont\linenumrep{\line@num}%
690   \ifsublines@
691     \ifnum\subline@num>0\relax
692       \unskip%
693       \Xsublinesep@side%
694       \sublinenumrep{\subline@num}%
695     \fi
696     \fi%
697     \egroup%
698 }%
699
700 \newcommand*{\leftlinenum}{%
701   \ledlinenum
702   \kern\linenumsep}
703 \newcommand*{\rightlinenum}{%
704   \kern\linenumsep
705   \ledlinenum}
706
707 %

```

## V.7 Line number counters and lists

Footnote references using line numbers rather than symbols can't be generated in one pass, because we do not know the line numbers till we ship out the pages. It would be possible if footnotes were never keyed to more than one line; but some footnotes gloss passages that may run for several lines, and they must be tied to the first line of the passage glossed. And even one-line passages require two passes if we want line-per-page numbering rather than line-per-section numbering.

So we run  $\text{\LaTeX}$  over the text several times, and each time save information about page and line numbers in a ‘line-list file’ to be used during the next pass. At the start of each section—whenever `\beginnumbering` is executed—the line-list file for that section is read, and the information from it is encoded into a few list macros.

We need first to define the different line numbers that are involved in these macros, and the associated counters.

`\line@num` The count `\line@num` stores the line number that is used in marginal line numbering and in notes: counting either by section, page or pstart, depending on your choice for this section. This may be qualified by `\subline@num`.

```
708 \newcount\line@num
709 %
```

`\subline@num` The count `\subline@num` stores a sub-line number that qualifies `\line@num`. For example, line 10 might have sub-line numbers 1, 2 and 3, which might be printed as lines 10.1, 10.2, 10.3.

```
710 \newcount\subline@num
711 %
```

`\ifsublines@` We maintain an associated flag, `\ifsublines@`, to tell us whether we’re within a sub-line range or not.

`\sublines@true` You may wonder why we do not just use the value of `\subline@num` to determine this—treating anything greater than 0 as an indication that sub-lineation is on. We need a separate flag because sub-lineation can be used together with line-number locking in odd ways: several pieces of a logical line might be interrupted by pieces of sub-lineated text, and those sub-line numbers should not return to zero until the next change in the major line number. This is common in the typesetting of English Renaissance verse drama, in which stage directions are given sub-line numbers: a single line of verse may be interrupted by several stage directions.

`\sublines@false`

```
712 \newif\ifsublines@
713 %
```

`\absline@num` The count `\absline@num` stores the absolute number of lines since the start of the section: that is, the number we have actually printed, no matter what numbers we attached to them. This value is never printed on an output page, though `\line@num` will often be equal to it. It is used internally to keep track of where notes are to appear and where new pages start: using this value rather than `\line@num` is a lot simpler, because it does not depend on the lineation system in use.

```
714 \newcount\absline@num
715 %
```

We will call `\absline@num` numbers “absolute” numbers, and `\line@num` and `\subline@num` numbers “visible” numbers.

## V.8 Line number locking counter

`\@lock`    The counts `\@lock` and `\sub@lock` tell us the state of line-number and sub-line-number locking. 0 means we are not within a locked set of lines; 1 means we are at the first line in the set; 2, at some intermediate line; and 3, at the last line.

```

716 \newcount\@lock
717 \newcount\sub@lock
718 %

```

## V.9 Line number associated to lemma

`\line@list`    Now we can define the list macros that will be created from the line-list file. We will maintain the following lists:

`\insertlines@list`  
`\actionlines@list`  
`\actions@list`

- `\line@list`: the page and line numbers for every lemma marked by `\edtext`. There are seven pieces of information, separated by vertical bars:
  1. the starting page,
  2. line, and
  3. sub-line numbers, followed by the
  4. ending page,
  5. line, and
  6. sub-line numbers, and then the
  7. font specifier for the lemma.

These line numbers are all visible numbers. The font specifier is a set of four codes for font encoding, family, series, and shape, separated by / characters. Thus a lemma that started on page 23, line 35 and went on until page 24, line 3 (with no sub-line numbering), and was typeset in a normal roman font would have a line list entry like this:

```
23|35|0|24|3|0|OT1/cm/r/m/n.
```

There is one item in this list for every lemma marked by `\edtext`, even if there are several notes to that lemma, or no notes at all. `\edtext` reads the data in this list, making it available for use in the text of notes.

- `\insertlines@list`: the line numbers of lines that have footnotes or other insertions. These are the absolute numbers where the corresponding lemmas begin. This list contains one entry for every footnote in the section; one lemma may contribute no footnotes or many footnotes. This list is used by `\add@inserts` within `\do@line`, to tell it where to insert notes.
- `\actionlines@list`: a list of absolute line numbers at which we are to perform special actions; these actions are specified by the `\actions@list` list defined below.
- `\actions@list`: action codes corresponding to the line numbers in `\actionlines@list`. These codes tell `reledmac` what action it is supposed to take at each of these lines. One action, the page-start action, is generated behind the scenes by `reledmac`

itself; the others, for specifying sub-lineation, line-number locking, and line-number alteration, are generated only by explicit commands in your input file. The page-start and line-number-alteration actions require arguments, to specify the new values for the page or line numbers; instead of storing those arguments in another list, we have chosen the action-code values so that they can encode both the action and the argument in these cases. Action codes greater than  $-1000$  are page-start actions, and the code value is the page number; action codes less than  $-5000$  specify line numbers, and the code value is a transformed version of the line number; action codes between these two values specify other actions which require no argument.

Here is the full list of action codes and their meanings:

Any number greater than  $-1000$  is a page-start action: the line number associated with it is the first line on a page, and the action number is the page number. (The cutoff of  $-1000$  is chosen because negative page-number values are used by some macro packages; we assume that page-number values less than  $-1000$  are not common.) Page-start action codes are added to the list by the `\page@action` macro, which is (indirectly) triggered by the workings of the `\page@start` macro; that macro should always be called in the output routine, just before the page contents are assembled. `Eledmac` calls it in `\pagecontents`.

The action code  $-1001$  specifies the start of sub-lineation: meaning that, starting with the next line, we should be advancing `\subline@num` at each start-of-line command, rather than `\line@num`.

The action code  $-1002$  specifies the end of sub-lineation. At the next start-of-line, we should clear the sub-line counter and start advancing the line number. The action codes for starting and ending sub-lineation are added to the list by the `\sub@action` macro, as called to implement the `\startsub` and `\endsub` macros.

The action code  $-1003$  specifies the start of line number locking. After the number for the current line is computed, it will remain at that value through the next line that has an action code to end locking.

The action code  $-1004$  specifies the end of line number locking.

The action code  $-1005$  specifies the start of sub-line number locking. After the number for the current sub-line is computed, it will remain at that value through the next sub-line that has an action code to end locking.

The action code  $-1006$  specifies the end of sub-line number locking.

The four action codes for line and sub-line number locking are added to the list by the `\do@lockon` and `\do@lockoff` macros, as called to implement the `\startlock` and `\endlock` macros.

An action code of  $-5000$  or less sets the current visible line number (either the line number or the sub-line number, whichever is currently being advanced) to a specific positive value. The value of the code is  $-(5000 + n)$ , where  $n$  is the value (always  $\geq 0$ ) assigned to the current line number. Action codes of this type are added to the list by the `\set@line@action` macro, as called to implement

the `\advanceline` and `\setline` macros: this action only occurs when the user has specified some change to the line numbers using those macros. Normally `reledmac` computes the visible line numbers from the absolute line numbers with reference to the other action codes and the settings they invoke; it does not require an entry in the action-code list for every line.

Here are the commands to create these lists:

```

719 \list@create{\line@list}
720 \list@create{\insertlines@list}
721 \list@create{\actionlines@list}
722 \list@create{\actions@list}
723
724 %

```

`\page@num` We will need some counts while we read the line-list, for the page number and the ending page, line, and sub-line numbers. Some of these will be used again later on, when we are acting on the data in our list macros.

`\endpage@num`

`\endline@num`

`\endsubline@num`

```

725 \newcount\page@num
726 \newcount\endpage@num
727 \newcount\endline@num
728 \newcount\endsubline@num
729 %

```

`\ifnoteschanged@` If the number of the footnotes in a section is different from what it was during the last run, or if this is the very first time you've run  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , on this file, the information from the line-list used to place the notes will be wrong, and some notes will probably be misplaced. When this happens, we prefer to give a single error message for the whole section rather than messages at every point where we notice the problem, because we do not really know where in the section notes were added or removed, and the solution in any case is simply to run  $\text{\LaTeX}$  two more times; there is no fix needed to the document. The `\ifnoteschanged@` flag is set if such a change in the number of notes is discovered at any point.

`\noteschanged@true`

`\noteschanged@false`

```

730 \newif\ifnoteschanged@
731 %

```

`\resetprevline@` Inside the apparatus, at each note, the line number is stored in a macro called `\prevlineX`, where `X` is the letter of the current series. This macro is called when using `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline`. This macro must be reset at the same time as the line number. The `\resetprevline@` does this resetting for every series.

```

\resetprevline@%32 \newcommand*{\resetprevline@}{%
733   \def\do##1{\global\csundef{prevline##1}}%
734   \dolistloop{\@series}%
735 }
736 %

```

`\resetprevpage@num`

Inside the apparatus, at each note, the page number is stored in a macro called `\prevpageX@num`, where *X* is the letter of the current series. This macro is called when using `\Xparafootsep` or `\parafootsepX`. This macro must be reset at the beginning of each numbered section. The `\resetprevpage@` command resets this macro for every series.

```

\resetprevpage@%37 \newcommand*{\resetprevpage@num}{%
738   \def\do##1{%
739     \ifcsdef{prevpage##1@num}{%
740       \global\csname prevpage##1@num\endcsname=\z@%
741       \global\csname prevpage##1@numR\endcsname=\z@%
742     }%
743     {}%
744     \ifcsdef{##1prevpage@num}{%
745       \global\csname ##1prevpage@num\endcsname=\z@%
746       \global\csname ##1prevpage@numR\endcsname=\z@%
747     }%
748     {}%
749     }%
750   \dolistloop{\@series}%
751 }
752 %

```

## V.10 Reading the line-list file

`\read@linelist`

`\read@linelist{⟨file⟩}` is the control sequence that is called by `\beginnumbering` (via `\line@list@stuff`) to open and process a line-list file; its argument is the name of the file. . First, it clear all previous line's list.

```

753 \newread\@inputcheck
754 \newcommand*{\read@linelist}[1]{%
755   \ifledRcol%
756     \list@clearing@regR%
757   \else%
758     \list@clearing@reg%
759   \fi%
760 %

```

When using `reledpar`, make sure that the `\maxlinesinpar@list` is empty (otherwise things will be thrown out of kilter if there is any old stuff still hanging in there).

```

761   \list@clear{\maxlinesinpar@list}
762 %

```

Now get the file and interpret it. When the file is there we start a new group and make some special definitions we will need to process it. It is a sequence of  $\TeX$  commands, but they require a few special settings. We make `[` and `]` become grouping characters: they are used that way in the line-list file, because we need to write them out one at a time rather than in balanced pairs, and it is easier to just use something other than real braces. `@` must become a letter, since this is run in the ordinary  $\LaTeX$  context. We



ignore carriage returns, since if we are in horizontal mode they can get interpreted as spaces to be printed.

Our line, page, and line-locking counters were already zeroed by `\line@list@stuff` if this is being called from within `\beginnumbering`; sub-lineation will be turned off as well in that case. On the other hand, if this is being called from `\resumenumbering`, those things should still have the values they had when `\pausenumbering` was executed.

If the file is not there, we print an informative message.

Now, after these preliminaries, we start interpreting the file.

```

763 \get@linelistfile{#1}%
764 \ifcontinuousnumberingwithcolumns
765     \global\page@numR=\page@numR\relax
766     \global\last@page@numR=\last@page@numR\relax
767     \global\page@num=\page@num\relax
768     \global\last@page@num=\last@page@num\relax
769 \fi
770 \@stopmsd%Security if last \endms{} is forgotten
771 \unless\ifledRcol%Get the last line of the last page
772     \csnumgdef{@lastabsline@forpage@the\page@num}{the\absline@num}%
773     \csnumgdef{@lastline@forpage@the\page@num}{the\line@num}%
774 \else%
775     \csnumgdef{@lastabsline@forpageR@the\page@numR}{the\absline@numR}%
776     \csnumgdef{@lastline@forpageR@the\page@numR}{the\line@numR}%
777 \fi%
778 \endgroup
779 %

```

When the reading is done, we are all through with the line-list file. All the information we needed from it will now be encoded in our list macros.

Finally, we initialize the `\next@actionline` and `\next@action` macros, which specify where and what the next action to be taken is.

```

780 \ifledRcol
781     \global\page@numR=\m@ne
782     \ifx\actionlines@listR\empty
783         \gdef\next@actionlineR{1000000}%
784     \else
785         \glp\actionlines@listR\to\next@actionlineR
786         \glp\actions@listR\to\next@actionR
787     \fi
788 \else
789     \global\page@num=\m@ne
790     \ifx\actionlines@list\empty
791         \gdef\next@actionline{1000000}%
792     \else
793         \glp\actionlines@list\to\next@actionline
794         \glp\actions@list\to\next@action
795     \fi
796 \fi

```

```

797 }
798 %

```

`\list@clearing@reg` Clears the lists for `\read@linelist`

```

799 \newcommand*{\list@clearing@reg}{%
800   \list@clear{\line@list}%
801   \list@clear{\insertlines@list}%
802   \list@clear{\actionlines@list}%
803   \list@clear{\actions@list}%
804   \list@clear{\linesinpar@listL}%
805   \list@clear{\linesonpage@listL}%
806 }%
807 %

```

`\get@linelistfile` `reledmac` can take advantage of the  $\TeX$  ‘safe file input’ macros to get the line-list file.

```

808 \newcommand*{\get@linelistfile}[1]{%
809   \InputIfFileExists{\l@auxdir#1}{%
810     \global\noteschanged@false
811     \begingroup
812       \catcode`\[=1 \catcode`\]=2
813       \makeatletter \catcode`\^M=9}{%
814     \led@warn@NoLineFile{\l@auxdir#1}%
815     \global\noteschanged@true
816     \begingroup}%
817 }
818 %
819 %

```

This version of `\read@linelist` creates list macros containing data for the entire section, so they could get rather large. It would be no more difficult to read the line-list file incrementally rather than all at once: we could read, at the start of each paragraph, only the commands relating to that paragraph. But this would require that we have two line-lists open at once, one for reading, one for writing, and on systems without version numbers we would have to do some file renaming outside of  $\TeX$  for that to work. We have retained this slower approach to avoid that sort of hacking about, but have provided the `\pausenumbers` and `\resumenumbers` macros to help you if you run into macro memory limitations (see 5.2.7 p. 18 above).

## V.11 Commands within the line-list file

This section defines the commands that can appear within a line-list file. They all have very short names because we are likely to be writing very large numbers of them out. One macro, `\@nl`, is especially short, since it will be written to the line-list file once for every line of text in a numbered section. (Another of these commands, `\@lab`, will

be introduced in a later section, among the cross-referencing commands it is associated with.)

When these commands modify the various page and line counters, they deliberately do not use `\global`. This is because we want them to affect only the counter values within the current group when nested calls of `\@ref` occur. (The code assumes throughout that the value of `\globaldefs` is zero.)

The macros with action in their names contain all the code that modifies the action-code list: again, this is so that they can be turned off easily for nested calls of `\@ref`.

`\line@list@version` The `\line@list@version` check if the line-list file does not refers to the older commands of `reledmac`. In this case, we stop reading the line-list file. Consequently, `\line@list@version` must be the first line of a line-number file.

```

820 \newcommand{\line@list@version}[1]{%
821   \IfStrEq{#1}{\this@line@list@version}%
822   {%
823     {\ifledRcol%
824       \led@warn@obsolete{\jobname.\extensionchars\the\section@num}%
825       \else%
826       \led@warn@obsolete{\jobname.\extensionchars\the\section@num}%
827       \fi%
828       \endinput%
829     }%
830   }%
831   %

```

`\@nl` `\@nl` does everything related to the start of a new line of numbered text.

`\@nl@reg` In order to get the `\setlinenum` to work Peter Wilson had to slip in some new code at the start of the macro, to get the timing of the actions correct. The problem was that his original naive implementation of `\setlinenum` had a unfortunate tendency to change the number of the last line of the *preceding* paragraph. The new code is sort of based on the page number handling and `\setline`. It seems that a lot of fiddling with the line number internals is required.

In November 2004 in order to accurately determine page numbers Peter Wilson added these to the macro. It is now:

`\@nl{<page counter number>}{<printed page number>}`

We do not (yet) use the printed number (i.e., the `\thepage`) but it may come in handy later. The macro `\fix@page` checks if a new page has started.

Exactly what `\@nl` does depends on whether right text is being processed. That's why many code is defined in `\@nl@reg` or `\nl@regR`.

```

832
833 \newcommand*{\@nl}[2]{%
834   \fix@page{#1}%
835   \ifledRcol%
836   \@nl@regR%
837   \else%
838   \@nl@reg%
839   \fi%

```

```

840 }
841 \newcommand*{\@nl@reg}{%
842   \ifx\l@dchset@num\relax \else
843     \advance\absline@num \@ne
844     \set@line@action
845     \let\l@dchset@num=\relax
846     \advance\absline@num \m@ne
847     \advance\line@num \m@ne
848   \fi
849 %

```

First increment the absolute line-number, and perform deferred actions relating to page starts and sub-lines.

```

850   \advance\absline@num \@ne
851   \ifx\next@page@num\relax \else
852     \page@action
853     \let\next@page@num=\relax
854   \fi
855   \ifx\sub@change\relax \else
856     \ifnum\sub@change>\z@
857       \sublines@true
858     \else
859       \sublines@false
860     \fi
861     \sub@action
862     \let\sub@change=\relax
863   \fi
864 %

```

Fix the lock counters, if necessary. A value of 1 is advanced to 2; 3 advances to 0; other values are unchanged.

```

865   \ifcase\@lock
866   \or
867     \@lock \tw@
868   \or \or
869     \@lock \z@
870   \fi
871   \ifcase\sub@lock
872   \or
873     \sub@lock \tw@
874   \or \or
875     \sub@lock \z@
876   \fi
877 %

```

Now advance the visible line number, unless it has been locked.

```

878   \ifsublines@
879     \ifnum\sub@lock<\tw@
880       \advance\subline@num \@ne

```

```

881         \fi
882     \else
883         \ifnum\@lock<\tw@
884             \advance\line@num \@ne \subline@num \z@
885         \fi
886     \fi}
887
888 %

```

`\last@page@num` `\fix@page` basically replaces `\@page`. It determines whether or not a new page has been started, based on the page values held by `\@n1`.

```

889 \newcount\last@page@num
890 \last@page@num=-10000
891
892 \newcommand*{\fix@page}[1]{%
893     \ifledRcol
894     \ifnum #1=\last@page@numR
895     \else
896         \csnumgdef{\lastabsline@forpageR@the\page@numR}{\the\absline@numR}%
897         \csnumgdef{\lastline@forpageR@the\page@numR}{\the\line@numR}%
898         \ifbypage@R
899             \line@numR \z@ \subline@numR \z@
900         \fi
901         \page@numR=#1\relax
902         \last@page@numR=#1\relax
903         \def\next@page@numR{#1}%
904     \fi
905     \else
906     \ifnum #1=\last@page@num
907     \else
908         \csnumgdef{\lastabsline@forpage@the\page@num}{\the\absline@num}%
909         \csnumgdef{\lastline@forpage@the\page@num}{\the\line@num}%
910         \ifbypage@
911             \line@num \z@ \subline@num \z@
912         \fi
913         \page@num=#1\relax
914         \last@page@num=#1\relax
915         \def\next@page@num{#1}%
916         \listxadd{\normal@page@break}{\the\absline@num}
917     \fi
918 \fi}
919 %

```

`\@pend` These do not do anything at this point, but will have been added to the auxiliary file(s) if the `reledpar` package has been used. They are just here to stop `reledmac` from moaning if the `reledpar` is used for one run and then not for the following one.

```

\@lopL
\@lopR
920 \newcommand*{\@pend}[1]{}
921 \newcommand*{\@pendR}[1]{}

```

```

922 \newcommand*{\@lopL}[1]{}
923 \newcommand*{\@lopR}[1]{}
924
925 %

```

**\sub@on** The `\sub@on` and `\sub@off` macros turn sub-lineation on and off: but not directly, since such changes do not really take effect until the next line of text. Instead they set a flag that notifies `\@nl` of the necessary action.

**\sub@off**

```

926 \newcommand*{\sub@on}{\ifsublines@
927   \let\sub@change=\relax
928   \else
929     \def\sub@change{1}%
930   \fi}
931 \newcommand*{\sub@off}{\ifsublines@
932   \def\sub@change{-1}%
933   \else
934     \let\sub@change=\relax
935   \fi}
936
937 %

```

**\@adv** The `\@adv{<num>}` macro advances the current visible line number by the amount specified as its argument. This is used to implement `\advanceline`.

```

938
939 \newcommand*{\@adv}[1]{%
940   \ifsublines@
941     \ifledRcol
942       \advance\subline@numR by #1\relax
943       \ifnum\subline@numR<\z@
944         \led@warn@BadAdvancelineSubline
945         \subline@numR \z@
946       \fi
947     \else
948       \advance\subline@num by #1\relax
949       \ifnum\subline@num<\z@
950         \led@warn@BadAdvancelineSubline
951         \subline@num \z@
952       \fi
953     \fi
954   \else
955     \ifledRcol
956       \advance\line@numR by #1\relax
957       \ifnum\line@numR<\z@
958         \led@warn@BadAdvancelineLine
959         \line@numR \z@
960       \fi
961     \else
962       \advance\line@num by #1\relax

```

```

963     \ifnum\line@num<\z@
964         \led@warn@BadAdvancelineLine
965         \line@num \z@
966     \fi
967 \fi
968 \fi
969 \set@line@action}
970
971 %

```

**\@set** The `\@set{<num>}` macro sets the current visible line number to the value specified as its argument. This is used to implement `\setline`.

```

972
973 \newcommand*{\@set}[1]{%
974     \ifledRcol
975         \ifsublines@
976             \subline@numR=#1\relax
977         \else
978             \line@numR=#1\relax
979         \fi
980         \set@line@action
981     \else
982         \ifsublines@
983             \subline@num=#1\relax
984         \else
985             \line@num=#1\relax
986         \fi
987         \set@line@action
988     \fi}
989
990 %

```

**\l@d@set** The `\l@d@set{<num>}` macro sets the line number for the next `\pstart` to the value specified as its argument. This is used to implement `\setlinenum`.

**\l@dchset@num** `\l@dchset@num` is a flag to the `\@nl?` macro. If it is not `\relax` then a linenum change is to be done.

```

991
992 \newcommand*{\l@d@set}[1]{%
993     \ifledRcol
994         \line@numR=#1\relax
995         \advance\line@numR \@ne
996         \def\l@dchset@num{#1}
997     \else
998         \line@num=#1\relax
999         \advance\line@num \@ne
1000         \def\l@dchset@num{#1}
1001     \fi}
1002 \let\l@dchset@num\relax

```

```
1003
1004 %
```

**\page@action** \page@action adds an entry to the action-code list to change the page number.

```
1005
1006 \newcommand*{\page@action}{%
1007   \ifledRcol
1008     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@numR}\to\actionlines@listR
1009     \xright@appenditem{\next@page@numR}\to\actions@listR
1010   \else
1011     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list
1012     \xright@appenditem{\next@page@num}\to\actions@list
1013   \fi}
1014 %
```

**\set@line@action** \set@line@action adds an entry to the action-code list to change the visible line number.

```
1015
1016 \newcommand*{\set@line@action}{%
1017   \ifledRcol
1018     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@numR}\to\actionlines@listR
1019     \ifsublines@
1020       \@l@tempcnta=-\subline@numR
1021     \else
1022       \@l@tempcnta=-\line@numR
1023     \fi
1024     \advance\@l@tempcnta by -5000\relax
1025     \xright@appenditem{\the\@l@tempcnta}\to\actions@listR
1026   \else
1027     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list
1028     \ifsublines@
1029       \@l@tempcnta=-\subline@num
1030     \else
1031       \@l@tempcnta=-\line@num
1032     \fi
1033     \advance\@l@tempcnta by -5000\relax
1034     \xright@appenditem{\the\@l@tempcnta}\to\actions@list
1035   \fi}
1036 %
```

**\sub@action** \sub@action adds an entry to the action-code list to turn sub-lineation on or off, according to the current value of the \ifsublines@ flag.

```
1037
1038 \newcommand*{\sub@action}{%
1039   \ifledRcol
1040     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@numR}\to\actionlines@listR
1041   \ifsublines@
```



```

1042 \xright@appenditem{-1001}\to\actions@listR
1043 \else
1044 \xright@appenditem{-1002}\to\actions@listR
1045 \fi
1046 \else
1047 \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list
1048 \ifsublines@
1049 \xright@appenditem{-1001}\to\actions@list
1050 \else
1051 \xright@appenditem{-1002}\to\actions@list
1052 \fi
1053 \fi}
1054 %

```

`\lock@on` `\lock@on` adds an entry to the action-code list to turn line number locking on. The current setting of the sub-lineation flag tells us whether this applies to line numbers or sub-line numbers.

Adding commands to the action list is slow, and it is very often the case that a lock-on command is immediately followed by a lock-off command in the line-list file, and therefore really does nothing. We use a look-ahead scheme here to detect such pairs, and add nothing to the line-list in those cases.

```

1055 \newcommand*{\lock@on}{\futurelet\next\do@lockon}
1056
1057 \newcommand*{\do@lockon}{%
1058 \ifx\next\lock@off
1059 \global\let\lock@off=\skip@lockoff
1060 \else
1061 \ifledRcol
1062 \do@lockonR
1063 \else
1064 \do@lockonL
1065 \fi
1066 \fi}
1067
1068
1069 \newcommand*{\do@lockonL}{%
1070 \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list
1071 \ifsublines@
1072 \xright@appenditem{-1005}\to\actions@list
1073 \ifnum\sub@lock=z@
1074 \sub@lock \@ne
1075 \else
1076 \ifnum\sub@lock=thr@@
1077 \sub@lock \@ne
1078 \fi
1079 \fi
1080 \else
1081 \xright@appenditem{-1003}\to\actions@list

```

```

1082 \ifnum \@lock=\z@
1083 \@lock \@ne
1084 \else
1085 \ifnum \@lock=\thr@@
1086 \@lock \@ne
1087 \fi
1088 \fi
1089 \fi}
1090
1091 %

```

**\lock@off** \lock@off adds an entry to the action-code list to turn line number locking off.

```

\do@lockoff
\do@lockoffL
\skip@lockoff
1092 \newcommand*{\do@lockoffL}{%
1093 \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list
1094 \ifsublines@
1095 \xright@appenditem{-1006}\to\actions@list
1096 \ifnum \sub@lock=\tw@
1097 \sub@lock \thr@@
1098 \else
1099 \sub@lock \z@
1100 \fi
1101 \else
1102 \xright@appenditem{-1004}\to\actions@list
1103 \ifnum \@lock=\tw@
1104 \@lock \thr@@
1105 \else
1106 \@lock \z@
1107 \fi
1108 \fi}
1109
1110 \newcommand*{\do@lockoff}{%
1111 \ifl@Rcol
1112 \do@lockoffR
1113 \else
1114 \do@lockoffL
1115 \fi}
1116 \newcommand*{\skip@lockoff}{\global\let\lock@off=\do@lockoff}
1117 \global\let\lock@off=\do@lockoff
1118
1119 %

```

**\n@num** These macros implement the \skipnumbering command. They use action code 1007.

```

1120 \newcommand*{\n@num}{%
1121 \ifl@Rcol%
1122 \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@numR}\to\actionlines@listR
1123 \xright@appenditem{-1007}\to\actions@listR
1124 \else%

```

`\n@num@stanza` This macro implements the `\skipnumbering` for stanza command. It uses action code 1008.

`\ifl@dhidenumber` \hidenumbering hides number in margin. It uses action code 1009. `\hidenumberingonleftpage` and `\hidenumberingonrightpage` are variants, using action code only conditionally

```

\hidenumberingonleftpage
\hidenumberingonrightpage
1141 \newif\ifl@dhidenumber
1142 \newcommand*{\hidenumbering}{%
1143   \ifl@dhidenumber%
1144     \write\linenum@outR{\string\hide@num}%
1145   \else%
1146     \write\linenum@out{\string\hide@num}%
1147   \fi%
1148 }%
1149 \newcommand*{\hide@num}{%
1150   \ifl@dhidenumber%
1151     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@numR}\to\actionlines@listR%
1152     \xright@appenditem{-1009}\to\actions@listR%
1153   \else%
1154     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list%%
1155     \xright@appenditem{-1009}\to\actions@list%
1156   \fi%
1157 }
1158 \newcommand*{\hidenumberingonleftpage}{%
1159   \ifl@dhidenumber%
1160     \write\linenum@outR{\string\hide@num@left}%
1161   \else%
1162     \write\linenum@out{\string\hide@num@left}%
1163   \fi%
1164 }%
1165

```

```

1166 \newcommand*{\hide@num@left}{%
1167   \iflabeledRcol%
1168     \ifodd\page@numR\else%
1169       \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@numR}\to\actionlines@listR%
1170       \xright@appenditem{-1009}\to\actions@listR%
1171     \fi%
1172   \else%
1173     \ifodd\page@num\else%
1174       \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list%%
1175       \xright@appenditem{-1009}\to\actions@list%
1176     \fi%
1177   \fi%
1178 }%
1179
1180 \newcommand*{\hidenumberingonrightpage}{%
1181   \iflabeledRcol%
1182     \write\linenum@outR{\string\hide@num@right}%
1183   \else%
1184     \write\linenum@out{\string\hide@num@right}%
1185   \fi%
1186 }%
1187
1188 \newcommand*{\hide@num@right}{%
1189   \iflabeledRcol%
1190     \ifodd\page@numR%
1191       \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@numR}\to\actionlines@listR%
1192       \xright@appenditem{-1009}\to\actions@listR%
1193     \fi%
1194   \else%
1195     \ifodd\page@num%
1196       \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list%%
1197       \xright@appenditem{-1009}\to\actions@list%
1198     \fi%
1199   \fi%
1200 }%
1201
1202 %

```

**\@ref**    \@ref marks the start of a passage, for creation of a footnote reference. It takes two arguments:  
**\insert@count**

- #1, the number of entries to add to \insertlines@list for this reference. This value, here and within \edtext, which computes it and writes it to the line-list file, will be stored in the count \insert@count.

```

1203 \newcount\insert@count
1204 %

```

- #2, a sequence of other line-list-file commands, executed to determine the ending line-number. (This may also include other \@ref commands, corresponding to

uses of `\edtext` within the first argument of another instance of `\edtext`.)

**\dummy@ref** When nesting of `\@ref` commands does occur, it is necessary to temporarily redefine `\@ref` within `\@ref`, so that we are only doing one of these at a time.

```
1205 \newcommand*\@dummy@ref}[2]{#2}
1206 %
```

**\@ref@reg** The first thing `\@ref` (i.e. `\@ref@reg`) itself does is to add the specified number of items to the `\insertlines@list` list.

```
1207 \newcommand*\@ref}[2]{%
1208   \ifledRcol%
1209     \@ref@regR{#1}{#2}%
1210   \else%
1211     \@ref@reg{#1}{#2}%
1212   \fi%
1213 }%
1214 \newcommand*\@ref@reg}[2]{%
1215   \global\insert@count=#1\relax
1216   \global\advance\@edtext@level by 1%
1217   \loop\ifnum\insert@count>\z@
1218     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\insertlines@list
1219     \global\advance\insert@count \m@ne
1220   \repeat
1221 %
```

Next, process the second argument to determine the page and line numbers for the end of this lemma. We temporarily equate `\@ref` to a different macro that just executes its argument, so that nested `\@ref` commands are just skipped this time. Some other macros need to be temporarily redefined to suppress their action.

```
1222 \begingroup
1223   \let\@ref=\@dummy@ref
1224   \let\@lopL\@gobble
1225   \let\page@action=\relax
1226   \let\sub@action=\relax
1227   \let\set@line@action=\relax
1228   \let\@lab=\relax
1229   \let\@lemma=\relax%
1230   \let\@sw\@gobblethree%
1231   #2
1232   \global\endpage@num=\page@num
1233   \global\endline@num=\line@num
1234   \global\endsubline@num=\subline@num
1235 \endgroup
1236 %
```

Now store all the information about the location of the lemma's start and end in `\line@list`.

```

1237 \xright@appenditem%
1238   {\the\page@num|\the\line@num|
1239    \ifsublines@ \the\subline@num \else 0\fi}%
1240    \the\endpage@num|\the\endline@num|
1241    \ifsublines@ \the\endsubline@num \else 0\fi}\to\line@list
1242 %

```

And now, call `\@ref@reg@parsearg`, which can be also called by `\@ref@later`

```

1243   \@ref@reg@parse{#2}%
1244 %

```

Decrease edtext level counter.

```

1245   \global\advance\@edtext@level by -1%
1246 }
1247 %

```

**\@ref@reg@parse** The `\@ref@reg@parsearg` command parses the second argument of a `\@ref` or the unique argument of `\@ref@later` written in the auxiliary fill.

First, create a list which stores every second argument of each `\@sw` in this lemma, at this level. Also set the boolean about the use of lemma in this edtext level to false.

```

1248 \newcommand{\@ref@reg@parse}[1]{%
1249   \expandafter\list@create\expandafter{\csname sw@list@edtext@tmp@the\
1250   \@edtext@level\endcsname}%
1251   \providebool{lemmacommand@the\@edtext@level}%
1252   \boolfalse{lemmacommand@the\@edtext@level}%
1253 }
1254 %

```

Execute the second argument of `\@ref` again, to perform for real all the commands within it.

```

1253   #1%
1254 %

```

Now, we store the list of `\@sw` of this current `\edtext` as an element of the global list of list of `\@sw` for a `\edtext` depth.

```

1255   \ifnum\@edtext@level>0%
1256     \def\create@this@edtext@level{\expandafter\list@create\expandafter{\
1257     csname sw@list@edtext@the\@edtext@level\endcsname}}%
1258     \ifcsundef{sw@list@edtext@the\@edtext@level}{\create@this@edtext@level}%
1259     \letcs{\@tmp}{sw@list@edtext@the\@edtext@level}%
1260     \letcs{\@tmpp}{sw@list@edtext@tmp@the\@edtext@level}%
1261     \xright@appenditem{\expandonce\@tmpp}\to\@tmp%
1262     \global\cslet{sw@list@edtext@the\@edtext@level}{\@tmp}%
1263   \fi%
1264 }
1265 %
1266 %

```

`\ref@reg@later` This macro is stored in the auxiliary file when using `\edtextlater`. It is used only to get the correct value for the `\sameword` tools.

```

1267 \newcommand{\@ref@later}[1]{%
1268   \global\advance\@edtext@level by \@ne%
1269   \ifledRcol%
1270     \@ref@reg@parseR{#1}%
1271   \else%
1272     \@ref@reg@parse{#1}%
1273   \fi%
1274   \global\advance\@edtext@level by -\@ne%
1275 }%
1276 %

```

## V.12 Writing to the line-list file

We have now defined all the counters, lists, and commands involved in reading the line-list file at the start of a section. Now we will cover the commands that `reledmac` uses within the text of a section to write commands out to the line-list.

`\linenum@out` The file will be opened on output stream `\linenum@out`.

```

1277 \newwrite\linenum@out
1278 %

```

`\iffirst@linenum@out` Once any file is opened on this stream, we keep it open forever, or else switch to another file that we keep open. The reason is that we want the output routine to write the page number for every page to this file; otherwise we would have to write it at the start of every line. But it is not very easy for the output routine to tell whether an output stream is open or not. There is no way to test the status of a particular output stream directly, and the asynchronous nature of output routines makes the status hard to determine by other means.

We can manage pretty well by means of the `\iffirst@linenum@out` flag; its inelegant name suggests the nature of the problem that made its creation necessary. It is set to be true before any `\linenum@out` file is opened. When such a file is opened for the first time, it is done using `\immediate`, so that it will at once be safe for the output routine to write to it; we then set this flag to false.

```

1279 \newif\iffirst@linenum@out
1280 \iffirst@linenum@out>true
1281 %

```

`\this@line@list@version` The commands allowed in the line-list file and their arguments can change between two versions of `reledmac`. The `\this@line@list@version` command is upgraded when it happens. It is written in the file list. If we process a line-list file which used an older version, that means the commands used inside are deprecated, and we can't use them.

```

1282 \newcommand{\this@line@list@version}{5}%
1283 %

```

**\line@list@stuff** The `\line@list@stuff{<file>}` macro, which is called by `\beginnumbering`, performs all the line-list operations needed at the start of a section. Its argument is the name of the line-list file.

```
1284 \newcommand*{\line@list@stuff}[1]{%
1285 %
```

First, use the commands of the previous section to interpret the line-list file from the last run.

```
1286 \read@linelist{#1}%
1287 %
```

Now close the current output line-list file, if any, and open a new one. The first time we open a line-list file for output, we do it using `\immediate`, and clear the `\iffirst@linenum@out@` flag.

```
1288 \iffirst@linenum@out@
1289 \immediate\closeout\linenum@out%
1290 \global\first@linenum@out@false%
1291 \immediate\openout\linenum@out=\l@auxdir#1\relax%
1292 \immediate\write\linenum@out{\string\line@list@version{\
this@line@list@version}}%
1293 \ifl@dpaging%
1294 \immediate\write\linenum@out{\string\@par@sync@option{\
@par@this@sync@option}}%
1295 \fi%
1296 \else
1297 %
```

If we get here, then this is not the first line-list we have seen, so we do not open or close the files immediately.

```
1298 \if@minipage%
1299 \leavevmode%
1300 \fi%
1301 \closeout\linenum@out%
1302 \openout\linenum@out=\l@auxdir#1\relax%
1303 \write\linenum@out{\string\line@list@version{this@line@list@version}}
1304 %
1305 \ifl@dpaging%
1306 \write\linenum@out{\string\@par@sync@option{@par@this@sync@option}}
1307 %
1308 \fi%
1309 \fi}
```

**\new@line** The `\new@line` macro sends the `\@n1` command to the line-list file, to mark the start of a new text line, and its page number.

```
1310 \newcommand*{\new@line}{%
```



```

1311 \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{after}%
1312   {\xifinlist{the\absline@num}{\l@prev@nopb}%
1313     {\xifinlist{the\absline@num}{\normal@page@break}%
1314       {\numgdef{\next@page}{\c@page+\@ne}%
1315         \write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[\next@page][\next@page]}}%
1316       }%
1317     {\write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[the\c@page][thepage]}}}%
1318   }%
1319   {\write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[the\c@page][thepage]}}}%
1320 }%
1321 \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{before}%
1322   {\numdef{\next@absline}{the\absline@num+\@ne}%
1323   \xifinlist{\next@absline}{\l@prev@nopb}%
1324     {\xifinlist{the\absline@num}{\normal@page@break}%
1325       {\numgdef{\nc@page}{\c@page+\@ne}%
1326         \write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[\nc@page][\nc@page]}}%
1327       }%
1328     {\write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[the\c@page][thepage]}}}%
1329   }%
1330   {\write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[the\c@page][thepage]}}}%
1331   }%
1332   {}%
1333 \IfStrEqCase{\led@pb@setting}{before}{\relax}{after}{\relax}}{\write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[the\c@page][thepage]}}%
1334 }
1335
1336 %

```

**\if@noneed@Footnote** \if@noneed@Footnote is a boolean to check if we have to print a error message when a \edtext is called without any critical notes.

**\flag@start** We enclose a lemma marked by \edtext in \flag@start and \flag@end: these send the \@ref command to the line-list file. \edtext is responsible for setting the value of \insert@count appropriately; it actually gets done by the various footnote macros.

**\flag@end**

```

1337 \newif\if@noneed@Footnote%
1338
1339 \newcommand*{\flag@start}{%
1340   \ifledRcol%
1341     \edef\next{\write\linenum@outR{%
1342       \string\@ref[the\insert@countR] []}}%
1343     \next%
1344     \ifnum\insert@countR<1%
1345       \if@noneed@Footnote\else%
1346         \led@err@EdtextWithoutFootnote%
1347       \fi%
1348     \fi%
1349   \else%
1350     \edef\next{\write\linenum@out{%
1351       \string\@ref[the\insert@count] []}}%

```

```

1352 \next%
1353 \ifnum\insert@count<1%
1354 \if@noneed@Footnote\else%
1355 \led@err@EdtextWithoutFootnote%
1356 \fi%
1357 \fi%
1358 \fi}%
1359
1360 \newcommand*{\flag@end}{%
1361 \ifledRcol%
1362 \write\linenum@outR{}}%
1363 \else%
1364 \write\linenum@out{}}%
1365 \fi}%
1366
1367
1368 %

```

`\flag@start@later` `\flag@end@later` and `\flag@end@later`: these send the `\@ref@later` to the line-list file command to the line-list file

```

1369 \newcommand*{\flag@start@later}{%
1370 \ifledRcol%
1371 \write\linenum@outR{\string\@ref@later{}}%
1372 \else%
1373 \write\linenum@out{\string\@ref@later{}}%
1374 \fi%
1375 }%
1376 \newcommand{\flag@end@later}{%
1377 \ifledRcol%
1378 \write\linenum@outR{}}%
1379 \else%
1380 \write\linenum@out{}}%
1381 \fi%
1382 }
1383 %

```

`\startsub` `\endsub` `\startsub` and `\endsub` turn sub-lineation on and off, by writing appropriate instructions to the line-list file. When sub-lineation is in effect, the line number counter is frozen and the sub-line counter advances instead. If one of these commands appears in the middle of a line, it does not take effect until the next line; in other words, a line is counted as a line or sub-line depending on what it started out as, even if that changes in the middle.

We tinker with `\lastskip` because a command of either sort really needs to be attached to the last word preceding the change, not the first word that follows the change. This is because sub-lineation will often turn on and off in mid-line—stage directions, for example, often are mixed with dialogue in that way—and when a line is mixed we want to label it using the system that was in effect at its start. But when sub-lineation begins at the very start of a line we have a problem, if we don't put in this code.

```

1384
1385
1386 \newcommand*{\startsub}{\dimen0\lastskip
1387 \ifdim\dimen0>0pt \unskip \fi
1388 \ifledRcol \write\linenum@outR{\string\sub@on}%
1389 \else      \write\linenum@out{\string\sub@on}%
1390 \fi
1391 \ifdim\dimen0>0pt \hskip\dimen0 \fi}
1392 \def\endsub{\dimen0\lastskip
1393 \ifdim\dimen0>0pt \unskip \fi
1394 \ifledRcol \write\linenum@outR{\string\sub@off}%
1395 \else      \write\linenum@out{\string\sub@off}%
1396 \fi
1397 \ifdim\dimen0>0pt \hskip\dimen0 \fi}
1398
1399 %

```

**\advanceline** You can use `\advanceline{<num>}` in running text to advance the current visible line-number by a specified value, positive or negative.

```

1400 \newcommand*{\advanceline}[1]{\leavevmode%
1401 \ifledRcol \write\linenum@outR{\string\@adv[#1]}%
1402 \else      \write\linenum@out{\string\@adv[#1]}%
1403 \fi}%
1404 }
1405 %

```

**\setline** You can use `\setline{<num>}` in running text (i.e., within `\pstart...pend`) to set the current visible line-number to a specified positive value.

```

1406
1407 \newcommand*{\setline}[1]{%
1408 \leavevmode%
1409 \ifnum#1<\z@
1410 \led@warn@BadSetline
1411 \else
1412 \ifledRcol \write\linenum@outR{\string\@set[#1]}%
1413 \else      \write\linenum@out{\string\@set[#1]}%
1414 \fi
1415 \fi}
1416
1417 %

```

**\setlinenum** You can use `\setlinenum{<num>}` before a `\pstart` to set the visible line-number to a specified positive value. It writes a `\led@set` command to the line-list file.

```

1418
1419 \newcommand*{\setlinenum}[1]{%
1420 \ifnum#1<\z@
1421 \led@warn@BadSetlinenum

```

```

1422 \else
1423   \ifledRcol \write\linenum@outR{\string\l@d@set[#1]}
1424   \else      \write\linenum@out{\string\l@d@set[#1]} \fi
1425 \fi}
1426
1427 %

```

`\startlock` You can use `\startlock` or `\endlock` in running text to start or end line number locking at the current line. They decide whether line numbers or sub-line numbers are affected, depending on the current state of the sub-lineation flags.

```

1428
1429 \newcommand*{\startlock}{%
1430   \ifledRcol \write\linenum@outR{\string\lock@on}%
1431   \else      \write\linenum@out{\string\lock@on}%
1432   \fi}
1433 \def\endlock{%
1434   \ifledRcol \write\linenum@outR{\string\lock@off}%
1435   \else      \write\linenum@out{\string\lock@off}%
1436   \fi}
1437 %

```

`\ifl@dskipnumber` In numbered text `\skipnumbering` will suspend the numbering for that particular line.

`\ifl@dskipversenumber`

`\l@dskipnumbertrue`

`\l@dskipnumberfalse`

`\skipnumbering`

```

1438 \newif\ifl@dskipnumber
1439 \newif\ifl@dskipversenumber%
1440 \newcommand*{\skipnumbering}{%
1441   \leavevmode%
1442   \ifledRcol%
1443     \ifinstanza%
1444       \write\linenum@outR{\string\n@num@stanza}%
1445     \else%
1446       \write\linenum@outR{\string\n@num}%
1447     \fi%
1448     \advanceline{-1}%
1449   \else%
1450     \ifinstanza%
1451       \write\linenum@out{\string\n@num@stanza}%
1452     \else%
1453       \write\linenum@out{\string\n@num}%
1454     \fi%
1455     \advanceline{-1}%
1456   \fi%
1457 }%
1458
1459 %

```

## VI Marking text for notes

The `\edtext` macro is used to create all footnotes and endnotes, as well as to print the portion of the main text to which a given note or notes is keyed. The idea is to have that lemma appear only once in the `.tex` file: all instances of it in the main text and in the notes are copied from that one appearance.

The `\edtext` macro takes two arguments.

```
\edtext{#1}{#2}
```

- `#1` is the piece of the main text being glossed; it gets added to the main text, and is also used as a lemma for notes to it.
- `#2` is a series of subsidiary macros that generate various kinds of notes.

The `\edtext` macro may be used (somewhat) recursively; that is, `\edtext` may be used within its own first argument. The code would be much simpler without this feature, but nested notes will commonly be necessary: it is quite likely that we will have an explanatory note for a long passage and notes on variants for individual words within that passage. The situation we can't handle is overlapping notes that are not nested: for example, one note covering lines 10–15, and another covering 12–18. You can handle such cases by using the `\lemma` and `\linenum` macros within `#2`: they alter the copy of the lemma and the line numbers that are passed to the notes, and hence allow you to overcome any limitations of this system, albeit with extra effort.

The recursive operation of `\edtext` will fail if you try to use a copy that is called something other than `\edtext`. In order to handle recursion, `\edtext` needs to redefine its own definition temporarily at one point, and that does not work if the macro you are calling is not actually named `\edtext`. There is no problem as long as `\edtext` is not invoked in the first argument. If you want to call `\edtext` something else, it is best to create instead a macro that expands to an invocation of `\edtext`, rather than copying `\edtext` and giving it a new name; otherwise you will need to add an appropriate definition for your new macro to `\morenoexpands`.

Side effects of our line-numbering code make it impossible to use the usual footnote macros directly within a paragraph whose lines are numbered (see comments to `\do@line`, VII.2.1 p. 137). Instead, the appropriate note-generating command is appended to the list macro `\inserts@list`, and when `\pend` completes the paragraph it inserts all the notes at the proper places.

Note that we do not provide previous-note information, although it is often wanted; your own macros must handle that. We can not do it correctly without keeping track of what kind of notes have gone past: it is not just a matter of remembering the line numbers associated with the previous invocation of `\edtext`, because that might have been for a different kind of note. It is preferable for your footnote macros to store and recall this kind of information if they need it.

### VI.1 `\edtext` itself

The various note-generating macros might want to request that commands be executed not at once, but in close connection with the start or end of the lemma. For example,

footnote numbers in the text should be connected to the end of the lemma; or, instead of a single macro to create a note listing variants, you might want to use several macros in series to create individual variants, which would each add information to a private macro or token register, which in turn would be formatted and output when all of #2 for the lemma has been read.

`\end@lemmas` To accomodate this, we provide a list macro to which macros may add commands that should subsequently be executed at the end of the lemma when that lemma is added to the text of the paragraph. A macro should add its contribution to `\end@lemmas` by using `\xleft@appenditem`. (Anything that needs to be done at the *start* of the lemma may be handled using `\aftergroup`, since the commands specified within `\edtext`'s second argument are executed within a group that ends just before the lemma is added to the main text.)

`\end@lemmas` is intended for the few things that need to be associated with the end of the lemma, like footnote numbers. Such numbers are not implemented in the current version, and indeed no use is currently made of `\end@lemmas` or of the `\aftergroup` trick. The general approach would be to define a macro to be used within the second argument of `\edtext` that would add the appropriate command to `\end@lemmas`.

Commands that are added to this list should always take care not to do anything that adds possible line-breaks to the output; otherwise line numbering could be thrown off.

```
1460 \list@create{\end@lemmas}
1461 %
```

`\dummy@edtext` We now need to define a number of macros that allow us to weed out nested instances of `\edtext`, and other problematic macros, from our lemma. This is similar to what we did in reading the line-list file using `\dummy@ref` and various redefinitions—and that is because nested `\edtexts` macros create nested `\@ref` entries in the line-list file.

```
1462 \newcommand{\dummy@edtext}[2]{#1}
1463 %
```

`\dummy@edtext@showlemma` Some time, we want to obtain only the first argument of `\edtext`, while also wrapping it in `\showlemma`. For example, when printing a `\eledsection`.

```
1464 \newcommand{\dummy@edtext@showlemma}[2]{\showlemma{#1}}%
1465 %
```

We are going to need another macro that takes one argument and ignores it entirely. This is supplied by the  $\TeX$  `\@gobble{<arg>}`.

`\no@expands` `\morenoexpands` We need to turn off macro expansion for certain sorts of macros we are likely to see within the lemma and within the notes.

The first class is font-changing macros. We suppress expansion for them by letting them become equal to zero.<sup>25</sup> This is done because we want to pass into our notes the

<sup>25</sup>Since ‘control sequences equivalent to characters are not expandable’—*The TeXbook*, answer to Exercise 20.14.

generic commands to change to roman or whatever, and not their expansions that will ask for a particular style at a specified size. The notes may well be in a smaller font, so the command should be expanded later, when the note's environment is in effect.

A second sort to turn off includes a few of the accent macros. Most are not a problem: an accent that is expanded to an `\accent` command may be harder to read but it works just the same. The ones that cause problems are: those that use alignments— $\TeX$  seems to get confused about the difference between alignment parameters and macro parameters; those that use temporary control sequences; and those that look carefully at what the current font is.

(The `\copyright` macro defined in `PLAIN $\TeX$`  has this sort of problem as well, but is not used enough to bother with. That macro, and any other that causes trouble, will get by all right if you put a `\protect` in front of it in your file.)

We also need to eliminate all `reledmac` macros like `\edlabel` and `\setline` that write things to auxiliary files: that writing should be done only once. And we make `\edtext` itself, if it appears within its own argument, do nothing but copy its first argument.

Finally, we execute `\morenoexpands`. The version of `\morenoexpands` defined here does nothing; but you may define a version of your own when you need to add more expansion suppressions as needed with your macros. That makes it possible to make such additions without needing to copy or modify the standard `reledmac` code. If you define your own `\morenoexpands`, you must be very careful about spaces: if the macro adds any spaces to the text when it runs, extra space will appear in the main text when `\edtext` is used.

The `\new@series` command also adds, for the series  $\langle X \rangle$  `\let\footnote $\langle X \rangle$ \@gobble` to the end of the `\no@expands` macro.

(A related problem, not addressed by these two macros, is that of characters whose category code is changed by any the macros used in the arguments to `\edtext`. Since the category codes are set when the arguments are scanned, macros that depend on changing them will not work. We have most often encountered this with characters that are made 'active' within text in some, but not all, of the languages used within the document. One way around the problem, if it takes this form, is to ensure that those characters are *always* active; within languages that make no special use of them, their associated control sequences should simply return the proper character. A simpler solution is to avoid active character, using `Lua $\TeX$`  or `XY $\TeX$` .)

```

1466 \newcommand*{\no@expands}{%
1467   \let\select@lemmafnt=0%
1468   \let\startsub=\relax \let\endsub=\relax
1469   \let\startlock=\relax \let\endlock=\relax
1470   \let\edlabel=\@gobble
1471   \let\setline=\@gobble \let\advanceline=\@gobble
1472   \let\sameword\sameword@inedtext%
1473   \let\edtext=\dummy@edtext
1474   \l@dtabnoexpands
1475   \morenoexpands}
1476 \let\morenoexpands=\relax
1477
```

```
1478 %
```

**\@tag** Now, we define an empty \@tag command. It will be redefine by \edtext: its value is the first argument. It will be used by the \Xfootnote commands.

```
1479 \newcommand{\@tag}{}
1480 %
```

**\@edtext@level** This counter is increased by 1 at each level of \edtext.

```
1481 \newcount\@edtext@level%
1482 \@edtext@level=0%
1483 %
```

**\if@edtext@secondarg@** This boolean is set to TRUE before reading the second argument of a \edtext. It is tested on some macro which must be executed only inside a second argument.

```
1484 \newif\if@edtext@secondarg@%
1485 %
```

**\theedtext** The edtext counter is increased at each \edtext command. It is used to add to insert hyperlinks between a notes and the lemma.

```
1486 \newcounter{edtext}
1487 \renewcommand{\theedtext}{edtxt@arabic{edtext}}%
1488 %
```

**\edtext** When executed, \edtext first ensures that we are in horizontal mode.

```
1489 \newcommand{\edtext}[2]{\leavevmode%
1490 %
```

Then, check if we are in a numbered paragraph (\pstart...\pend)..

```
1491 \ifnumberedpar@%
1492 %
```

we increment the \@edtext@level TeX counter to know in which level of \edtext we are.

```
1493 \global\advance\@edtext@level by 1%
1494 %
```

We also increase the edtext L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X counter to insert hypertarget if the hyperref package is loaded.

```
1495 \stepcounter{edtext}%
1496 %
```

By default, we do not use \lemma

```
1497 \global\@lemmacommand@false%
1498 %
```



```

1499 \begingroup%
1500 %

```

We get the next series of samewords data in the list of samewords data for the current `edtext` level. We push them inside `\sw@inthisedtext`.

```

1501 \ifledRcol%
1502 \ifcsvoid{sw@list@edtextR@the\@edtext@level}%
1503 {\global\let\sw@inthisedtext\empty}%
1504 {\expandafter\gl@p\csname sw@list@edtextR@the\@edtext@level\
endcsname\to\sw@inthisedtext}%
1505 \else%
1506 \ifcsvoid{sw@list@edtext@the\@edtext@level}%
1507 {\global\let\sw@inthisedtext\empty}%
1508 {\expandafter\gl@p\csname sw@list@edtext@the\@edtext@level\
endcsname\to\sw@inthisedtext}%
1509 \fi%
1510 %

```

`\@tag` Our normal lemma is just argument #1; but that argument could have further invocations of `\edtext` within it. We get a copy of the lemma without any `\edtext` macros within it by temporarily redefining `\edtext` to just copy its first argument and ignore the other, and then expand #1 into `\@tag`, our lemma.

This is done within a group that starts here, in order to get the original `\edtext` restored; within this group we have also turned off the expansion of those control sequences commonly found within text that can cause trouble for us.

```

1511 \global\renewcommand{\@tag}{%
1512 \no@expands #1%
1513 }%
1514 %

```

`\l@d@nums` Prepare more data for the benefit of note-generating macros: the line references and font specifier for this lemma go to `\l@d@nums`.

```

1515 \set@line%
1516 %

```

`\insert@count` will be altered by the note-generating macros: it counts the number of deferred footnotes or other insertions generated by this instance of `\edtext`. If we are in a right column (`reledpar`), we use `\insert@countR` instead of `\insert@count`.

```

1517 \ifledRcol \global\insert@countR \z@%
1518 \else \global\insert@count \z@ \fi%
1519 %

```

Now process the note-generating macros in argument #2 (i.e., `\Afootnote`, `\lemma`, etc.). `\ignorespaces` is here to skip over any spaces that might appear at the start of #2; otherwise they wind up in the main text. Footnote and other macros that are used within #2 should all end with `\ignorespaces` as well, to skip any spaces between macros when several are used in series.

```

1520 \edtext@secondarg@true%
1521 \ignorespaces #2\relax%
1522 \edtext@secondarg@false%
1523 %

```

With polyglossia, you must track whether the language reads left to right (English) or right to left (Arabic).

```

1524 \ifundefined{xpg@main@language}{%if not polyglossia
1525 \flag@start}%
1526 {\ifRTL\flag@end\else\flag@start\fi%
1527 }%
1528 %

```

We write in the numbered file whether the current `\edtext` has a `\lemma` in the the second argument.

```

1529 \if@lemmacommand@%
1530 \ifledRcol%
1531 \write\linenum@outR{\string\@lemma}%
1532 \else%
1533 \write\linenum@out{\string\@lemma}%
1534 \fi%
1535 \fi%
1536 %

```

Finally, we are ready to admit the first argument into the current paragraph.

It is important that we generate and output all the notes for this chunk of text *before* putting the text into the paragraph: notes that are referenced by line number should generally be tied to the start of the passage they gloss, not the end. That should all be done within the expansion of #2 above, or in `\aftergroup` commands within that expansion.

```

1537 \endgroup%
1538 \ifdef{\hypertarget}%
1539 {%
1540 \csedef{thisedtext@the\@edtext@level}{\theedtext}%We need one
macro by level, as #1 can contain new \edtext
1541 \Hy@raisedlink@left{\hypertarget{\csuse{thisedtext@the\
@edtext@level}:start}{}}%
1542 \showlemma{#1}%
1543 \Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{\csuse{thisedtext@the\@edtext@level}:
end}{}}%
1544 }%
1545 {%
1546 \showlemma{#1}%
1547 }%
1548 %

```

Finally, we add any insertions that are associated with the *end* of the lemma. Footnotes that are identified by symbols rather than by where the lemma begins in the main text need to be done here, and not above.

```

1549 \ifx\end@lemmas\empty \else%
1550 \gl@p\end@lemmas\to\x@lemma%
1551 \x@lemma%
1552 \global\let\x@lemma=\relax%
1553 \fi%
1554 \@ifundefined{xpg@main@language}{%if not polyglossia
1555 \flag@end}%
1556 {\if@RTL\flag@start\else\flag@end\fi% With polyglossia, you must
track whether the language reads left to right (English) or right to left
(Arabic).
1557 }%
1558 %

```

We switch some flags to false.

- The one that checks having footnotes inside a `\edtext`.
- The one that says we are inside a `\edtext`. In fact, it is not a flag, but a counter which is increased to 1 in each level of `\edtext`.
- The one that says we are inside a `\@lemma`.

```

1559 \global\@noneed@Footnotefalse%
1560 \global\advance\@edtext@level by -1%
1561 \global\@lemmacommand@false%
1562 %

```

We also reset `\@beforeinsertofthisedtext`

```

1563 \global\let\@beforeinsertofthisedtext\relax%
1564 %

```

If we are outside of a numbered paragraph, we send an error message and print the first argument.

```

1565 \else%
1566 \showlemma{#1} (\textbf{\textsc{Edtext outside numbered paragraph}})\
led@err@edtextoutsidestart%
1567 \fi%
1568 }%
1569
1570
1571 %

```

`\@beforeinsertofthisedtext` `\@beforeinsertofthisedtext` is an internal macro. `reledmac` or `reledpar` can add in this macro any content required to be executed before doing any `\insert` related to a `\edtext`. Its content is `\let` equal to `\relax` at the end of every `\edtext`.

```

1572 \let\@beforeinsertofthisedtext\relax
1573 %

```

`\ifnumberline` The `\ifnumberline` option can be set to `FALSE` to disable line numbering.

```

1574 \newif\ifnumberline
1575 \numberlinetrue
1576 %

```

**\set@line** The `\set@line` macro is called by `\edtext` to put the line-reference field and font specifier for the current block of text into `\l@d@nums`.

One instance of `\edtext` may generate several notes, or it may generate none — it is legitimate for argument #2 to `\edtext` to be empty. But `\flag@start` and `\flag@end` induce the generation of a single entry in `\line@list` during the next run, and it is vital to also remove one and only one `\line@list` entry here.

If no more lines are listed in `\line@list`, something is wrong — probably just some change in the input. We set all the numbers to zeros, following an old publishing convention for numerical references that have not yet been resolved.

```

1577 \newcommand*{\set@line}{%
1578   \ifl@edRcol
1579     \ifx\line@listR\empty
1580       \global\noteschanged@true
1581       \xdef\l@d@nums{000|000|000|000|000|000|000|\edfont@info}%
1582     \else
1583       \gl@p\line@listR\to\@tempb
1584       \xdef\l@d@nums{\@tempb|\edfont@info}%
1585       \global\let\@tempb=\undefined
1586     \fi
1587   \else
1588     \ifx\line@list\empty
1589       \global\noteschanged@true
1590       \xdef\l@d@nums{000|000|000|000|000|000|000|\edfont@info}%
1591     \else
1592       \gl@p\line@list\to\@tempb
1593       \xdef\l@d@nums{\@tempb|\edfont@info}%
1594       \global\let\@tempb=\undefined
1595     \fi
1596   \fi}
1597
1598 %

```

**\edfont@info** The macro `\edfont@info` returns coded information about the current font.

```

1599 \newcommand*{\edfont@info}{\f@encoding/\f@family/\f@series/\f@shape}
1600
1601 %

```

## VI.2 Substitute lemma

**\lemma** The `\lemma{<text>}` macro allows you to change the lemma that is passed on to the notes. Read about `\@tag` in normal `\edtext` macro for more details about `\sw@list@inedtext` and `\no@expands` (VI.1 p. 121).

```

1602 \newcommand*{\lemma}[1]{%
1603   \global\@lemmacommand@true%
1604   \global\renewcommand{\@tag}{%
1605     \no@expands #1%
1606   }%
1607   \ignorespaces%
1608 }%
1609 %

```

**\@lemma** The \@lemma is written in the numbered file to set which \edtext has an \lemma as second argument.

```

1610 \newcommand{\@lemma}{%
1611   \booltrue{lemmacommand@the\@edtext@level}%
1612 }%
1613 %

```

**\if@lemmacommand@** This boolean is set to TRUE inside a \edtext (or \critext) when a \lemma command is called. That is useful for some commands which can have a different behavior if the lemma in the note is different from the lemma in the main text.

```

1614 \newif\if@lemmacommand@%
1615 %

```

### VI.3 Substitute line numbers

**\linenum** The \linenum macro can change any or all of the page and line numbers that are passed on to the notes.

As argument \linenum takes a set of seven parameters separated by vertical bars, in the format used internally for \l@d@nums (see V.9 p. 93): the starting page, line, and sub-line numbers, followed by the ending page, line, and sub-line numbers, and then the font specifier for the lemma. However, you can omit any parameters you do not want to change, and you can omit a string of vertical bars at the end of the argument. Hence \linenum{18|4|0|18|7|1|0} is an invocation that changes all the parameters, but \linenum{|3} only changes the starting line number, and leaves the rest unaltered.

We use \\ as an internal separator for the macro parameters.

```

1616 \newcommand*{\linenum}[1]{%
1617   \xdef\@tempa{#1|||||\\noexpand\\l@d@nums}%
1618   \global\let\l@d@nums=\empty
1619   \expandafter\line@set\@tempa|\\ignorespaces}
1620 %

```

**\line@set** \linenum calls \line@set to do the actual work; it looks at the first number in the argument to \linenum, sets the corresponding value in \l@d@nums, and then calls itself to process the next number in the \linenum argument, if there are more numbers in \l@d@nums to process.

```

1621 \def\line@set#1|#2\\#3|#4\\{%
1622   \gdef\@tempb{#1}%
1623   \ifx\@tempb\empty
1624     \l@d@add{#3}%
1625   \else
1626     \l@d@add{#1}%
1627   \fi
1628   \gdef\@tempb{#4}%
1629   \ifx\@tempb\empty\else
1630     \l@d@add{|}\line@set#2\\#4\\%
1631   \fi}
1632 %

```

`\l@d@add` `\line@set` uses `\l@d@add` to tack numbers or vertical bars onto the right hand end of `\l@d@nums`.

```

1633 \newcommand{\l@d@add}[1]{\xdef\l@d@nums{\l@d@nums#1}}
1634
1635 %

```

## VI.4 Lemma disambiguation

The mechanism which counts the occurrence of a same word in a same line is quite complex, because, when  $\text{\LaTeX}$  reads a command between a `\pstart` and a `\pend`, it does not know yet which are the line numbers.

The general mechanism is the following:

- **At the first run**, each `\sameword` command increments an `etoolbox` counter the name of which contains the argument of the `\sameword` commands.
- Then this counter, associated with the argument of `\sameword` is stored with the `\@sw` command in the auxiliary file of the current `reledmac` section (the `.1`, `.2...` file).
- **When this auxiliary file is read at the second run**, different operations are achieved:
  1. Get the rank of each `\sameword` in a line (relative rank) from the rank of each `\sameword` in all the numbered section (absolute rank):
    - For each paired `\sameword` argument and absolute line number, a counter is defined. Its value corresponds to the number of times `\sameword{⟨argument⟩}` is called from the beginning of the lineation to the end of the current line. We also store the same data for the preceding absolute line number, if it does not have `\sameword{⟨argument⟩}`.
    - For each `\sameword` having the same argument, we subtract from its absolute rank the number stored for the paired `\sameword` argument and previous absolute line number. Consequently, we obtain the relative rank.

- See the following example which explain how for same `\sameword` absolute ranks are transformed to relative rank.

```
At line 1:
absolute rank 1 becomes relative rank 1-0 = 1
1 is stored for this \sameword and line 1
At line 2:
absolute rank 2 becomes relative rank 2-1 = 1
absolute rank 3 becomes relative rank 3-1 = 2
3 is stored for this \sameword and line 2
At line 3:
no \sameword for this line.
3 is stored for this \sameword and line 3
At line 4:
absolute rank 4 becomes relative rank 4-3 = 1
4 is stored for this \sameword and line 4
```

2. Create lists of lists of `\sameword` by depth of `\edtext`. That is: create a list for `\edtexts` of level 1, a list for `\edtexts` of level 2, a list for `\edtexts` of level 3 etc. For each `\edtext` in these lists, we store all the relative rank of `\saweword` which are called as lemma information, that is 1) or called in the first argument of `\sameword` 2) or called in the `\lemma` macro of the second argument of `\sameword` AND marked by the optional argument of `\saweword` in first argument of `\edtext`.

For example, suppose a line with nested `\edtexts` which contains some word marked by `\sameword` and having the following relative rank:

bar<sup>1</sup> foo<sup>1</sup> foo<sup>2</sup> bar<sup>2</sup> foo<sup>3</sup> (A)(B) foo<sup>4</sup> bar<sup>3</sup> (C) foo<sup>5</sup> (D) bar<sup>4</sup> (E)

In this example, all lemma information for `\edtext` is framed. The text in parenthesis is the content of critical notes associated to the preceding frame. As you can see, we have two level of `\edtext`.

The list for `\edtexts` of level 1 is  $\{\{1, 2, 2, 3, 4, 3\}, \{5, 4\}\}$ .

The list for `\edtexts` of level 2 is  $\{\{1, 2, 2, 3\}, \{5\}\}$ .

As you can see, the mandatory argument of `\sameword` does not matter: we store the rank informations for every word potentially ambiguous.

- At the second run, when a critical notes is called, we associate it to the next item of the list associated to its `\edtext` level. So, in the previous example:
  - Critical notes (A) and (B) are associated with  $\{1, 2, 2, 3\}$ .
  - Critical note (C) is associated with  $\{1, 2, 2, 3, 4, 3\}$ .
  - Critical note (D) is associated with  $\{5\}$ .
  - Critical note (E) is associated with  $\{5, 4\}$ .
- At the second run, when a critical note is printed:
  - The `\sameword` command is let `\sameword@inedtext`.

- At each call of this `\sameword@inedtext`, we step to the next element of the list associated to the note. Let it be  $r$ .
- For the word marked by `\sameword`, we calculate how many time it is called in its line. To do it:
  - \* We get the absolute line number of the current `\sameword`. This absolute line number was stored with list of relative rank for the current `\edtext`. That means, in the previous example, that, if the absolute line number of `\edtext` was 1, that critical notes (A) and (B) were not associated with  $\{1, 2, 2, 3\}$  but with  $\{(1, 1), (2, 1), (2, 1), (3, 1)\}$ . Such method to know the absolute line number associated to a `\sameword` is required because a `\edtext` can overlap many lines, but `\sameword` can't get it.
  - \* We get the value associated, when reading the auxiliary file, to the pair composed by the current marked word and the current absolute line number. To this value, we subtract the value associated to the pair composed by the current marked word and the previous absolute line number. Let the result be  $n$ .
- If  $n > 1$ , that means the current word appears more than once time in its line. In this case, we call `\showwordrank` with the word as first argument and  $r$  as second argument. If the word is called only once, we just print it.

After theory, implementation.

`\get@sw@txt` As the argument of `\sameword` can contain active character if we use `inputenc` with `utf8` option instead of native UTF-8 engine, we store its detokenized content in a macro in order to allow dynamic name of macro with `\csname`.<sup>26</sup>

Because there is a bug with `\detokenize` and  $\text{\LaTeX}$  when using non BMP characters<sup>27</sup>, we detokenize only for not  $\text{\LaTeX}$  engines. In any case, in  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , a `\csname` construction can contain UTF-8 characters without a problem, as UTF-8 characters are not managed with category code, but instead read directly as UTF-8 characters.

```

1636 \newcommand{\get@sw@txt}[1]{%
1637   \ifxetex%
1638     \xdef\sw@txt{#1}%
1639   \else%
1640     \expandafter\xdef\expandafter\sw@txt\expandafter{\detokenize{#1}}%
1641   \fi%
1642 }%
1643 %

```

`\sameword` The high level macro `\sameword`, used by the editor.

```

1644 \newcommand{\sameword}[2][1,usedefault]{%
1645   \leavevmode%
1646   \get@sw@txt{#2}%
1647 %

```

<sup>26</sup>See <http://tex.stackexchange.com/q/244538/7712>.

<sup>27</sup><http://sourceforge.net/p/xetex/bugs/108/>



Now, the real code. First, increment the counter corresponding to the argument.

```
1648 \unless\ifledRcol%
1649 \csnumgdef{sw@sw@txt}{\csuse{sw@sw@txt}+\@ne}%
1650 %
```

Then, write its value to the numbered file.

```
1651 \protected@write\linenum@out{}{\string\@sw{sw@txt}{\csuse{sw@sw@txt}
}}{#1}}%
1652 %
```

Do the same thing if we are in the right column.

```
1653 \else%
1654 \csnumgdef{sw@sw@txt}{\csuse{sw@sw@txt}+\@ne}%
1655 \protected@write\linenum@outR{}{\string\@sw{sw@txt}{\csuse{sw@sw@txt}
}}{#1}}%
1656 \fi%
1657 %
```

And print the word.

```
1658 #2%
1659 }%
1660 %
```

A flag set to true if a \@sw relative rank must be added to the list of ranks for a specific \edtext.

```
\if@addsw61 \newif\if@addsw%
1662 %
```

**\@sw** The command printed in the auxiliary files.

```
1663 \newcommand{\@sw}[3]{%
1664 \get@sw@txt{#1}%
1665 \unless\ifledRcol%
1666 %
```

First, define a counter which store the second argument as value for a each paired absolute line number/first argument

```
1667 \csxdef{sw@sw@txt @\the\absline@num @\the\section@num}{#2}%
1668 %
```

If such argument was not defined for the preceding line, define it.

```
1669 \numdef{\prev@line}{\the\absline@num-1}%
1670 \ifcsundef{sw@sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@num}{%
1671 \csnumgdef{sw@sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@num}{#2-1}%
1672 }{}%
1673 %
```

Then, calculate the position of the word in the line.

```
1674 \numdef{\the@sw}{#2-\csuse{sw@sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@num}}%
1675 %
```

And do the same thing for the right side.

```
1676 \else%
1677 \csxdef{sw@sw@txt @\the\absline@numR @\the\section@numR @R}{#2}%
1678 \numdef{\prev@line}{\the\absline@numR-1}%
1679 \ifcsundef{sw@sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@numR @R}{%
1680 \csnumgdef{sw@sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@numR @R}{#2-1}%
1681 }}%
1682 \numdef{\the@sw}{#2-\csuse{sw@sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@numR @R
1683 }}%
1684 \fi%
1685 %
```

And now, add it to the list of \@sw for the current edtext, in all depth.

```
1685 \@tempcnta=\@edtext@level
1686 \@whilenum{\@tempcnta>0}\do{%
1687 \ifcsdef{sw@list@edtext@tmp@\the\@tempcnta}%
1688 {%
1689 \addswfalse%
1690 \notbool{lemmacommand@\the\@tempcnta}%
1691 {\addswtrue}%
1692 {\IfStrEq{#3}{inlemma}%
1693 {\addswtrue}%
1694 {%
1695 \def\do##1{%
1696 \ifnumequal{##1}{\the\@tempcnta}%
1697 {\addswtrue\listbreak}%
1698 }%
1699 }%
1700 \docsvlist{#3}%
1701 }%
1702 }%
1703 \if@addsw%
1704 \letcs{\@tmp}{sw@list@edtext@tmp@\the\@tempcnta}%
1705 \ifledRcol%
1706 \xright@appenditem{\the@sw}{\the\absline@numR}\to\@tmp%
1707 \else%
1708 \xright@appenditem{\the@sw}{\the\absline@num}\to\@tmp%
1709 \fi%
1710 \cslet{sw@list@edtext@tmp@\the\@tempcnta}{\@tmp}%
1711 \fi%
1712 }%
1713 }%
1714 \advance\@tempcnta by -1%
1715 }%
1716 }%
```

```
1717 %
```

`\sameword@inedtext` The command called when `\sameword` is called in a `\edtext`.

```
1718 \newcommandx{\sameword@inedtext}[2][1,usedefault]{%
1719   \get@sw@txt{#2}%
1720   \unless\ifledRcol@%
1721 %
```

Just a precaution.

```
1722   \ifx\sw@list@inedtext\empty%
1723     \def\the@sw{999}%
1724     \def\this@absline{-99}%
1725   \else%
1726 %
```

But in many cases, at this step, we should have some content in the list `\sw@list@inedtext`, which contains the reference for `\edtext`.

```
1727   \gl@p\sw@list@inedtext\to\@tmp%
1728   \edef\the@sw{\expandafter\@firstoftwo\@tmp}%
1729   \edef\this@absline{\expandafter\@secondoftwo\@tmp}%
1730   \fi%
1731 %
```

First, calculate the number of occurrences of the word in the current line

```
1732   \ifcsdef{sw@\sw@txt @\this@absline @\the\section@num}{%
1733     \numdef{\prev@line}{\this@absline-1}%
1734     \numdef{\sw@atthisline}{\csuse{sw@\sw@txt @\this@absline @\the\
section@num}-\csuse{sw@\sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@num}}%
1735   }%
1736   {\numdef{\sw@atthisline}{0}}%
1737 %
```

Finally, print the rank, but only if there is more than one occurrence of the word in the current line.

```
1738   \ifnumgreater{\sw@atthisline}{1}%
1739     {\showwordrank{#2}{\the@sw}}%
1740     {#2}%
1741 %
```

And the same for right side.

```
1742 \else%
1743   \ifx\sw@list@inedtext\empty%
1744     \def\the@sw{999}%
1745     \def\this@absline{-99}%
1746   \else%
1747     \gl@p\sw@list@inedtext\to\@tmp%
1748     \edef\the@sw{\expandafter\@firstoftwo\@tmp}%
1749     \edef\this@absline{\expandafter\@secondoftwo\@tmp}%

```

```

1750 \fi%
1751 \ifcsdef{sw@sw@txt @\this@absline @\the\section@numR @R}{%
1752 \numdef{\prev@line}{\this@absline-1}%
1753 \numdef{\sw@atthisline}{\csuse{sw@sw@txt @\this@absline @\the\
section@numR @R}-\csuse{sw@sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@numR @R}}%
1754 }%
1755 {\numdef{\sw@atthisline}{0}}%
1756 \ifnumgreater{\sw@atthisline}{1}%
1757 {\showwordrank{#2}{\the@sw}}%
1758 {#2}%
1759 \fi%
1760 }%
1761 %

```

`\showwordrank` Finally, the way the rank will be printed.

```

1762 \newcommand{\showwordrank}[2]{%
1763 #1\textsuperscript{#2}%
1764 }%
1765 %

```

## VII Paragraph decomposition and reassembly

In order to be able to count the lines of text and affix line numbers, we add an extra stage of processing for each paragraph. We send the paragraph into a box register, rather than straight onto the vertical list, and when the paragraph ends we slice the paragraph into its component lines; to each line we add any notes or line numbers, add a command to write to the line-list, and then at last send the line to the vertical list. This section contains all the code for this processing.

### VII.1 Boxes, counters, `\pstart` and `\pend`

`\raw@text` Here are numbers and flags that are used internally in the course of the paragraph decomposition.

`\ifnumberedpar@` When we first form the paragraph, it goes into a box register, `\raw@text`, instead of onto the current vertical list. The `\ifnumberedpar@` flag will be true while a paragraph is being processed in that way. `\num@lines` will store the number of lines in the paragraph when it is complete. When we chop it up into lines, each line in turn goes into the `\one@line` register, and `\par@line` will be the number of that line within the paragraph.

```

1766 \newbox\raw@text
1767 \newif\ifnumberedpar@
1768 \newcount\num@lines
1769 \newbox\one@line
1770 \newcount\par@line
1771 %

```

`\pstart` \pstart starts the paragraph by clearing the `\inserts@list` list and other relevant variables, and then arranges for the subsequent text to go into the `\raw@text` box.  
`\AtEveryPstart` \pstart needs to appear at the start of every paragraph that is to be numbered; the  
`\numberpstarttrue` \autopar command below may be used to insert these commands automatically.  
`\numberpstartfalse` Beware: everything that occurs between `\pstart` and `\pend` is happening within  
`\labelpstarttrue` a group; definitions must be global if you want them to survive past the end of the  
`\labelpstartfalse` paragraph.  
`\thepstart`

```

1772 \newcommand{\AtEveryPstart}[1]{%
1773   \ifstrempy{#1}%
1774     {\xdef\at@every@pstart{}}%
1775     {\gdef\at@every@pstart{\noindent#1}}%
1776 }%
1777 \xdef\at@every@pstart{}%
1778
1779
1780 \newcounter{pstart}
1781 \renewcommand{\thepstart}{\bfseries\@arabic\c@pstart}. }
1782 \newif\ifnumberpstart
1783 \numberpstartfalse
1784 \newif\iflabelpstart
1785 \labelpstartfalse
1786 \newcommandx*\pstart[1][1]{%
1787   \normal@pars%
1788   \ifstrempy{#1}{\at@every@pstart}{\noindent#1}%
1789   \ifluatex%
1790     \edef\l@luatexttextdir@L{\the\textdir}%
1791   \fi%
1792   \@nobraektrue%
1793   \ifnumbering \else%
1794     \led@err@PstartNotNumbered%
1795     \beginnumbering%
1796   \fi%
1797   \ifnumberedpar@%
1798     \led@err@PstartInPstart%
1799   \pend%
1800   \fi%
1801   \list@clear{\inserts@list}%
1802   \global\let\next@insert=\empty%
1803   \begingroup%
1804   \global\advance \l@dnumpstartsL@one
1805   \global\setbox\raw@text=\vbox\bgroup%
1806   \ifautopar\else%
1807     \ifnumberpstart%
1808       \ifinstanza\else%
1809         \ifsidepstartnum\else%
1810           \thepstart%
1811         \fi%
1812       \fi%
1813     \fi%

```

```

1814 \fi%
1815 \numberedpar@true%
1816 \iflabelpstart\protected@edef\@currentlabel%
1817     {\p@pstart\thepstart}
1818 \fi%
1819 \l@dzzeropenalties%
1820 \ignorespaces%because not automatically ignored if an optional argument
      is used (classical TeX behavior for space after commands)
1821 }
1822 %

```

**\pend** \pend must be used to end a numbered paragraph.

```

1823 \newcommand*{\pend}[1][1]{\ifnumbering \else%
1824     \led@err@PendNotNumbered%
1825 \fi%
1826 \global\l@dskipversenumberfalse%
1827 \ifnumberedpar@ \else%
1828     \led@err@PendNoPstart%
1829 \fi%
1830 %

```

We set all the usual interline penalties to zero and then immediately call `\endgraf` to end the paragraph; this ensures that there will be no large interline penalties to prevent us from slicing the paragraph into pieces. These penalties revert to the values that you set when the group for the `\vbox` ends. Then we call `\do@line` to slice a line off the top of the paragraph, add a line number and footnotes, and restore it to the page; we keep doing this until there are not any more lines left.

```

1831 \l@dzzeropenalties%
1832 \endgraf\global\num@lines=\prevgraf\egroup%
1833 \global\par@line=0%
1834 %

```

We check if lineation is by `pstart`: in this case, we reset line number, but only in the second line of the `pstart`. We can't reset line number at the beginning of `\pstart`, as `\setline` is parsed at the end of previous `\pend`, and so, we must do it at the end of first line of `pstart`.

```

1835 \csnumdef{pstartline}{0}%
1836 \loop\ifvbox\raw@text%
1837     \csnumdef{pstartline}{\pstartline+\@ne}%
1838     \do@line%
1839     \ifbypstart@%
1840         \ifnumequal{\pstartline}{1}{%
1841             \bgroup%
1842             \let\leavevmode\relax%
1843             \setline{1}%
1844             \egroup%
1845             \resetprevline@}{}%
1846         \fi%

```

```

1847 \repeat%
1848 %

```

Deal with any leftover notes, and then end the group that was begun in the \pstart.

```

1849 \flush@notes%
1850 \endgroup%
1851 \ignorespaces%
1852 %

```

Increase pstart counter.

```

1853 \ifnumberpstart%
1854   \pstartnumtrue%
1855 \fi%
1856 \addtocounter{pstart}{1}%
1857 %

```

Print the optional argument of \pend or the content printed after every \pend

```

1858 \normal@pars%
1859 \ifstrempy{#1}{\at@every@pend}{\noindent#1}%
1860 %

```

Restore standard nobreak setting and autopar setting. Normally, \if@nobreak is equal to true only immediately after a sectioning command (read latex.ltx file). As a \pstart...\pend structure can't contain any sectioning command, we set \if@nobreak to false.

```

1861 \@nobreakfalse%
1862 \ifautopar%
1863   \autopar%
1864 \fi%
1865 }
1866 %
1867 %

```

Here, two macros to insert content after every \pend, between numbered line. \AtEveryPend is the user macro, \at@every@pend is macro set by it.

```

\AtEveryPend68
\at@every@pend69 \newcommand{\AtEveryPend}[1]{%
1870   \ifstrempy{#1}%
1871     {\xdef\at@every@pend{}}%
1872     {\gdef\at@every@pend{\noindent#1}}%
1873 }%
1874 \xdef\at@every@pend{}%
1875 %
1876 %

```

**\l@dzero penalties** A macro to zero penalties for \pend or \pstart.

```

1877 \newcommand*{\l@dzzeropenalties}{%
1878   \brokenpenalty \z@ \clubpenalty \z@
1879   \displaywidowpenalty \z@ \interlinepenalty \z@ \predisplaypenalty \z@
1880   \postdisplaypenalty \z@ \widowpenalty \z@}
1881
1882 %

```

`\autopar` In most cases it is only an annoyance to have to label the paragraphs to be numbered with `\pstart` and `\pend`. `\autopar` will do that automatically, allowing you to start a paragraph with its first word and no other preliminaries, and to end it with a blank line or a `\par` command. The command should be issued within a group, after `\beginnumbering` has been used to start the numbering; all paragraphs within the group will be affected.

A few situations can cause problems. One is a paragraph that begins with a begin-group character or command: `\pstart` will not get invoked until after such a group beginning is processed; as a result the character that ends the group will be mistaken for the end of the `\vbox` that `\pstart` creates, and the rest of the paragraph will not be numbered. Such paragraphs need to be started explicitly using `\indent`, `\noindent`, or `\leavevmode` — or `\pstart`, since you can still include your own `\pstart` and `\pend` commands even with `\autopar` on.

Prematurely ending the group within which `\autopar` is in effect will cause a similar problem. You must either leave a blank line or use `\par` to end the last paragraph before you end the group.

The functioning of this macro is more tricky than the usual `\everypar`: we do not want anything to go onto the vertical list at all, so we have to end the paragraph, erase any evidence that it ever existed, and start it again using `\pstart`. We remove the paragraph-indentation box using `\lastbox` and save the width, and then skip backwards over the `\parskip` that has been added for this paragraph. Then we start again with `\pstart`, restoring the indentation that we saved, and locally change `\par` so that it will do our `\pend` for us.

```

1883 \newif\ifautopar
1884 \autoparfalse
1885 \newcommand*{\autopar}{
1886   \ifledRcol
1887     \ifnumberingR \else
1888       \led@err@AutoparNotNumbered
1889       \beginnumberingR
1890       \fi
1891     \else
1892       \ifnumbering \else
1893         \led@err@AutoparNotNumbered
1894         \beginnumbering
1895         \fi
1896       \fi
1897       \autopartrue
1898       \everypar{\setbox0=\lastbox
1899         \endgraf \vskip-\parskip

```



```

1900 \pstart \noindent \kern\wd0 \ifnumberpstart\ifinstanza\else\thepstart\
fi\fi
1901 \let\par=\pend}%
1902 \ignorespaces}
1903 %

```

**\normal@pars** We also define a macro which we can rely on to turn off the \autopar definitions at various important places, if they are in force. We will want to do this within a footnotes, for example.

```

1904 \newcommand*{\normal@pars}{\ifautopar\everypar{}\fi\let\par\endgraf}
1905
1906 %

```

**\ifautopar@pause** We define a boolean test switched to true at the beginning of the \pausenumbering command if the autopar is enabled. This boolean will be tested at the beginning of \resumenumbering to continue the autopar if needed.

```

1907 \newif\ifautopar@pause
1908 %

```

## VII.2 Processing one line

### VII.2.1 General process

**\do@line** The \do@line macro is called by \pend to do all the processing for a single line of text.  
**\l@dunhbox@line**

```

1909 \newcommand*{\l@dunhbox@line}[1]{\unhbox #1}
1910 \newcommand*{\do@line}{%
1911 {\vbadness=10000
1912 \splittopskip=\z@
1913 \do@linehook
1914 \l@demtyd@ta
1915 \global\setbox\one@line=\vsplit\raw@text to\baselineskip}%
1916 \unvbox\one@line \global\setbox\one@line=\lastbox
1917 \getline@num
1918 \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{before}{\led@check@pb\led@check@nopb}{\}
1919 \ifnum\@lock>\@one
1920 \inserthangingsymboltrue
1921 \else
1922 \inserthangingsymbolfalse
1923 \fi
1924 \check@pb@in@verse
1925 \ifl@dhidenumber%
1926 \global\l@dhidenumberfalse%
1927 \f@x@l@cks%
1928 \else%
1929 \affixline@num%
1930 \fi%
1931 %

```

Depending whether a sectioning command is called at this pstart or not we print sectioning command or normal line,

```

1932 \xifinlist{\the\l@dumpstartsL}{\eled@sections@@}%
1933     {\print@eledsection}%
1934     {\print@line}%
1935 \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{after}{\led@check@pb\led@check@nopb}{\}
1936 }%
1937 %

```

### VII.2.2 Process for “normal” line

`\print@line` `\print@line` is for normal line, i. e. line without sectioning command.

```

1938 \def\print@line{
1939 %

```

Insert the pstart number in side, if we are in the first line of a pstart.

```

1940 \affixpstart@num%
1941 %

```

The line will be boxed, to have the good width.

```

1942 \hb@xt@ \linewidth{%
1943 %

```

User hook.

```

1944 \do@insidelinehook%
1945 %

```

Left line number

```

1946 \l@dld@ta%
1947 %

```

Prepare text to be inserted before notes.

```

1948 \if@firstlineofpage%
1949 \set@Xtxtbeforenotes%
1950 \global\@firstlineofpagefalse%
1951 \fi%
1952 %

```

Insert footnotes made of manuscripts data.

```

1953 \insert@msdata%
1954 %

```

Restore marginal and footnotes.

```

1955 \add@inserts\affixside@note%
1956 %

```

Print left notes.

```

1957 \l@dlsn@te
1958 %

```

Boxes the line, writes information about new line in the numbered file.

```

1959 {\ledllfill\hb@xt@ \wd\one@line{\new@line%
1960 %

```

If we use Lua $\TeX$  then restore the direction.

```

1961 \ifluatex%
1962 \textdir\l@luatextextdir@L%
1963 \fi%
1964 %

```

Insert, if needed, the hanging symbol.

```

1965 \inserthangingsymbol%
1966 %

```

And so, print the line.

```

1967 \l@dunhbox@line{\one@line}}%
1968 %

```

Right line number

```

1969 \ledrlfill\l@drd@ta%
1970 %

```

Print right notes.

```

1971 \l@drsn@te
1972 }}%
1973 %

```

And reinsert penalties (for page breaking)...

```

1974 \add@penalties%
1975 }
1976 %

```

### VII.2.3 Process for line containing \eledsection command

**\print@eledsection** \print@eledsection to print sectioning command with line number. It sets the correct spacing, depending whether a sectioning command was called at previous \pstart, calls the sectioning command, prints the normal line outside of the paper, to be able to have critical footnotes. Because of how this prints, a vertical spacing correction is added.

```

1977 \def\print@eledsection{%
1978 \if@firstlineofpage%
1979 \set@Xtxtbeforenotes%
1980 \global\@firstlineofpagefalse%
1981 \fi%
1982 \insert@msdata%

```

```

1983 \add@inserts\affixside@note%
1984 \numdef{\temp@}{\l@dnumpstartsL-1}%
1985 \xifinlist{\temp@}{\eled@sections@@}{\@nbreaktrue}{\@nbreakfalse}%
1986 \@eled@sectioningtrue%
1987 \csuse{eled@sectioning@\the\l@dnumpstartsL}%
1988 \@eled@sectioningfalse%
1989 \global\csundef{eled@sectioning@\the\l@dnumpstartsL}%
1990 \if@RTL%
1991 \hspace{-3\paperwidth}%
1992 {\hbox{\l@dunhbox@line{\one@line}} \new@line}%
1993 \else%
1994 \hspace{3\paperwidth}%
1995 {\new@line \hbox{\l@dunhbox@line{\one@line}}}%
1996 \fi%
1997 \vskip-\baselineskip%
1998 }
1999 %

```

#### VII.2.4 Hooks

`\do@linehook` Two hooks into `\do@line`. The first is called at the beginning of `\do@line`, the second `\do@insidelinehook` is called in the line box. The second can, for example, have a `\markboth` command inside, the first can not.

```

2000 \newcommand*\do@linehook{}
2001 \newcommand*\do@insidelinehook{}
2002 %

```

`\dolinehook` These high level commands just redefine the low level commands. They have to be used `\doinsidelinehook` be user, without `\makeatletter`.

```

2003 \newcommand*\dolinehook[1]{\gdef\do@linehook{#1}}%
2004 \newcommand*\doinsidelinehook[1]{\gdef\do@insidelinehook{#1}}%
2005
2006 %

```

#### VII.2.5 Sidenotes and marginal line number initialization

`\l@demptyd@ta` Nulls the `\l@demptyd@ta`, which may later hold line numbers. Similarly for `\l@dcsnotetext`, `\l@dld@ta` `\l@dcsnotetext@l`, `\l@dcsnotetext@r` for the texts of the sidenotes, left and right notes.

```

\l@dcsnotetext
2007 \l@dcsnotetext@l
2008 \l@dcsnotetext@r
2009
2010 \newcommand*\l@demptyd@ta{}%
2011 \gdef\l@dld@ta{}%
2012 \gdef\l@dld@ta{}%
2013 \gdef\l@dcsnotetext@l{}%
2014 \gdef\l@dcsnotetext@r{}%
2015 \gdef\l@dcsnotetext{}%
2016 %

```

`\ldlsn@te` Zero width boxes of the left and right side notes, together with their kerns.

```

\ldrsn@te
2015 \newcommand{\ldlsn@te}{%
2016   \hb@xt@ \z@{\hss\box\ldlp@rbox\kern\ledlsnotesep}}
2017 \newcommand{\ldrsn@te}{%
2018   \hb@xt@ \z@{\kern\ledrsnotesep\box\ldrp@rbox\hss}}
2019
2020 %

```

`\ledllfill` These macros are called at the left (`\ledllfill`) and the right (`\ledllfill`) of each  
`\ledrlfill` numbered line. The initial definitions correspond to the original code for `\do@line`.

```

2021 \newcommand*{\ledllfill}{\hfil}
2022 \newcommand*{\ledrlfill}{\hfil}
2023
2024 %

```

## VIII Line and page number computation

`\getline@num` The `\getline@num` macro determines the page and line numbers for the line we are about to send to the vertical list.

```

2025 \newcommand*{\getline@num}{%
2026   \global\advance\absline@num \@ne%
2027   \do@actions
2028   \do@ballast
2029   \ifnumberline
2030     \ifsublines@
2031       \ifnum\sub@lock<\tw@
2032         \global\advance\subline@num \@ne
2033       \fi
2034     \else
2035       \ifnum\@lock<\tw@
2036         \global\advance\line@num \@ne
2037         \global\subline@num \z@
2038       \fi
2039     \fi
2040   \fi
2041 }
2042 %

```

`\do@ballast` The real work in the macro above is done in `\do@actions`, but before we plunge into that, let's get `\do@ballast` out of the way. This macro looks to see if there is an action to be performed on the *next* line, and if it is going to be a page break action, `\do@ballast` decreases the count `\ballast@count` counter by the amount of ballast. This means, in practice, that when `\add@penalties` assigns penalties at this point,  $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$  will be given extra encouragement to break the page here (see XI.2 p. 151).

`\ballast@count` First we set up the required counters; they are initially set to zero, and will remain so  
`\c@ballast` unless you type `\setcounter{ballast}{\langle some figure \rangle}` in your document.

```
2043 \newcount\ballast@count
2044 \newcounter{ballast}
2045 \setcounter{ballast}{0}
2046 %
```

And here is `\do@ballast` itself. It advances `\absline@num` within the protection of a group to make its check for what happens on the next line.

```
2047 \newcommand*{\do@ballast}{\global\ballast@count \z@
2048 \begingroup
2049 \advance\absline@num \@ne
2050 \ifnum\next@actionline=\absline@num
2051 \ifnum\next@action>-1001\relax
2052 \global\advance\ballast@count by -\c@ballast
2053 \fi
2054 \fi
2055 \endgroup}
2056 %
```

`\do@actions` The `\do@actions` macro looks at the list of actions to take at particular absolute line  
`\do@actions@next` numbers, and does everything that is specified for the current line.

It may call itself recursively, and to do this efficiently (using TeX's optimization for tail recursion), we define a control-sequence called `\do@actions@next` that is always the last thing that `\do@actions` does. If there could be more actions to process for this line, `\do@actions@next` is set equal to `\do@actions`; otherwise it is just `\relax`.

```
2057 \newcommand*{\do@actions}{%
2058 \global\let\do@actions@next=\relax
2059 \ifnum\absline@num<\next@actionline\else
2060 %
```

First, page number changes, which will generally be the most common actions. If we are restarting lineation on each page, this is where it happens.

```
2061 \ifnum\next@action>-1001
2062 \global\page@num=\next@action
2063 \global\@firstlineofpagetrue%
2064 \ifbypage@
2065 \global\line@num=\z@ \global\subline@num=\z@
2066 \resetprevline@
2067 \fi
2068 \add@msdata@firstlineofpage%
2069 %
```

Next, we handle commands that change the line-number values. (We subtract 5001 rather than 5000 here because the line number is going to be incremented automatically in `\getline@num`.)

```

2070 \else
2071 \ifnum\next@action<-4999
2072 \@l@tempcnta=-\next@action
2073 \advance\@l@tempcnta by -5001
2074 \ifsublines@
2075 \global\subline@num=\@l@tempcnta
2076 \else
2077 \global\line@num=\@l@tempcnta
2078 \fi
2079 %

```

We rescale the value in \@l@tempcnta so that we can use a case statement.

```

2080 \else
2081 \@l@tempcnta=-\next@action
2082 \advance\@l@tempcnta by -1000
2083 \do@actions@fixedcode
2084 \fi
2085 \fi
2086 %

```

Now we get information about the next action off the list, and then set \do@actions@next so that we will call ourselves recursively: the next action might also be for this line.

There is no warning if we find \actionlines@list empty, since that will always happen near the end of the section.

```

2087 \ifx\actionlines@list\empty
2088 \gdef\next@actionline{1000000}%
2089 \else
2090 \gl@p\actionlines@list\to\next@actionline
2091 \gl@p\actions@list\to\next@action
2092 \global\let\do@actions@next=\do@actions
2093 \fi
2094 \fi
2095 %

```

Make the recursive call, if necessary.

```

2096 \do@actions@next}
2097
2098 %

```

**\do@actions@fixedcode** This macro handles the fixed codes for \do@actions. It is one big case statement.

```

2099 \newcommand*{\do@actions@fixedcode}{%
2100 \ifcase\@l@tempcnta
2101 \or% % 1001 = starting sublineation
2102 \global\sublines@true
2103 \or% % 1002 = ending sublineation
2104 \global\sublines@false
2105 \or% % 1003 = starting locking number
2106 \global\@lock=\@ne

```

```

2107 \or% % 1004 = ending locking number
2108 \ifnum\@lock=\tw@
2109 \global\@lock=\thr@@
2110 \else
2111 \global\@lock=\z@
2112 \fi
2113 \or% % 1005 = starting locking subnumber
2114 \global\sub@lock=\@ne
2115 \or% % 1006 = ending locking subnumber
2116 \ifnum\sub@lock=\tw@
2117 \global\sub@lock=\thr@@
2118 \else
2119 \global\sub@lock=\z@
2120 \fi
2121 \or% % 1007 = skipping numbering
2122 \l@dskipnumbertrue
2123 \or% % 1008 = skipping numbering in stanza
2124 \l@dskipversenumbertrue%
2125 \or% % 1009 = hiding number
2126 \l@dhiddenumbertrue
2127 \or% % 1010 = inserting msdata
2128 \add@msdata%
2129 \else
2130 \led@warn@BadAction
2131 \fi}
2132
2133
2134 %

```

## IX Line number printing

`\affixline@num` `\affixline@num` just puts a left line number into `\l@dld@ta` or a right line number into `\l@drd@ta` if required.

To determine whether we need to affix a line number to this line, we compute the following:

$$\begin{aligned}
 n &= \text{int}((\text{linenum} - \text{firstlinenum}) / \text{linenumincrement}) \\
 m &= \text{firstlinenum} + (n \times \text{linenumincrement})
 \end{aligned}$$

(where *int* truncates a real number to an integer). *m* will be equal to *linenum* only if we are to paste a number on here. However, the formula breaks down for the first line to number (and any before that), so we check that case separately: if `\line@num ≤ \firstlinenum`, we compare the two directly instead of making these calculations.

We compute, in the scratch counter `\l@dttempcnta`, the number of the next line that should be printed with a number (*m* in the above discussion), and move the current line number into the counter `\l@dttempcntb` for comparison.

First, the case when we are within a sub-line range.



```

2135 \newcommand*{\affixline@num}{%
2136 %

```

No number is attached if `\ifl@dskipnumber` is TRUE (and then it is set to its normal FALSE value). No number is attached if `\ifnumberline` is FALSE (the normal value is TRUE).

```

2137 \ifledgroupnotesL\else
2138 \ifnumberline
2139 \ifl@dskipnumber
2140 \global\l@dskipnumberfalse
2141 \else
2142 \ifsublines@
2143 \l@dttempcntb=\subline@num
2144 \ifnum\subline@num>\c@firstsublinenum
2145 \l@dttempcnta=\subline@num
2146 \advance\l@dttempcnta by-\c@firstsublinenum
2147 \divide\l@dttempcnta by\c@sublinenumincrement
2148 \multiply\l@dttempcnta by\c@sublinenumincrement
2149 \advance\l@dttempcnta by\c@firstsublinenum
2150 \else
2151 \l@dttempcnta=\c@firstsublinenum
2152 \fi
2153 %

```

That takes care of computing the values for comparison, but if line number locking is in effect we have to make a further check. If this check fails, then we disable the line-number display by setting the counters to arbitrary but unequal values.

```

2154 \ch@cksub@l@ck
2155 %

```

Now the line number case, which works the same way.

```

2156 \else
2157 \l@dttempcntb=\line@num
2158 %

```

Check on the `\linenumberlist` If it is `\empty` use the standard algorithm.

```

2159 \ifx\linenumberlist\empty
2160 \ifnum\line@num>\c@firstlinenum
2161 \l@dttempcnta=\line@num
2162 \advance\l@dttempcnta by-\c@firstlinenum
2163 \divide\l@dttempcnta by\c@linenumincrement
2164 \multiply\l@dttempcnta by\c@linenumincrement
2165 \advance\l@dttempcnta by\c@firstlinenum
2166 \else
2167 \l@dttempcnta=\c@firstlinenum
2168 \fi
2169 \else
2170 %

```

The `\linenumberlist` was not `\empty`, so here is Wayne’s numbering mechanism. This takes place in  $\TeX$ ’s mouth.

```

2171      \l@ldtempcnta=\line@num
2172      \edef\rem@inder{\,\linenumberlist,\number\line@num,}%
2173      \edef\sc@n@list{\def\noexpand\sc@n@list
2174      #####1,\number\l@ldtempcnta,#####2|\def\noexpand\rem@inder
2175      {#####2}}}%
2176      \sc@n@list\expandafter\sc@n@list\rem@inder|}%
2177      \ifx\rem@inder\empty%
2178      \advance\l@ldtempcnta\@ne
2179      \fi
2180      %

```

A locking check for lines, just like the version for sub-line numbers above.

```

2181      \ch@ck@l@ck
2182      \fi
2183      %

```

The following tests are true if we need to print a line number.

```

2184      \ifnum\l@ldtempcnta=\l@ldtempcntb
2185      \ifl@dskipversenumber\else
2186      %

```

If we got here, we are going to print a line number; so now we need to calculate a number that will tell us which side of the page will get the line number. We start from `\line@margin`, which asks for one side always if it is less than 2; and then if the side does depend on the page number, we simply add the page number to this side code—because the values of `\line@margin` have been devised so that this produces a number that is even for left-margin numbers and odd for right-margin numbers.

For  $\mathbb{E}\mathbb{T}\mathbb{X}$  we have to consider two column documents as well. In this case Peter Wilson thought we need to put the numbers at the outside of the column — the left of the first column and the right of the second. Do the `twocolumn` stuff before going on with the original code.

`\l@ld@ta` A left line number is stored in `\l@ld@ta` and a right one in `\l@drd@ta`.

```

2187      \l@drd@ta
2188      \if@twocolumn
2189      \if@firstcolumn
2190      \gdef\l@ld@ta{\llap{\leftlinenum}}}%
2191      \else
2192      \gdef\l@drd@ta{\rlap{\rightlinenum}}}%
2193      \fi
2194      \else
2195      \l@ldtempcntb=\line@margin
2196      \ifnum\l@ldtempcntb>\@ne
2197      \advance\l@ldtempcntb \page@num
2198      \fi
2199      \ifodd\l@ldtempcntb

```

```

2199         \gdef\l@drd@ta{\rlap{{\rightlinenum}}}%
2200         \else
2201         \gdef\l@dld@ta{\llap{{\leftlinenum}}}%
2202     \fi
2203 \fi
2204 \fi
2205 \fi
2206 %

```

Now fix the lock counters, if necessary. A value of 1 is advanced to 2; 3 advances to 0; other values are unchanged.

```

2207     \f@x@l@cks
2208 \fi
2209 \fi
2210 \fi
2211 }
2212 %
2213 %

```

`\ch@cksub@l@ck` These macros handle line number locking for `\affixline@num`. `\ch@cksub@l@ck` checks subline locking. If it fails, then we disable the line-number display by setting the counters to arbitrary but unequal values.

```

2214 \newcommand*{\ch@cksub@l@ck}{%
2215     \ifcase\sub@lock
2216     \or
2217     \ifnum\sublock@disp=\@ne
2218     \l@tempcntb=\z@ \l@tempcnta=\@ne
2219     \fi
2220     \or
2221     \ifnum\sublock@disp=\tw@ \else
2222     \l@tempcntb=\z@ \l@tempcnta=\@ne
2223     \fi
2224     \or
2225     \ifnum\sublock@disp=\z@
2226     \l@tempcntb=\z@ \l@tempcnta=\@ne
2227     \fi
2228 \fi}
2229 %

```

Similarly for line numbers.

```

2230 \newcommand*{\ch@ck@l@ck}{%
2231     \ifcase\l@lock
2232     \or
2233     \ifnum\lock@disp=\@ne
2234     \l@tempcntb=\z@ \l@tempcnta=\@ne
2235     \fi
2236     \or
2237     \ifnum\lock@disp=\tw@ \else

```

```

2238         \l@dttempcntb=\z@ \l@dttempcnta=\@ne
2239         \fi
2240         \or
2241         \ifnum\lock@disp=\z@
2242             \l@dttempcntb=\z@ \l@dttempcnta=\@ne
2243         \fi
2244     \fi}
2245 %

```

Fix the lock counters. A value of 1 is advanced to 2; 3 advances to 0; other values are unchanged.

```

2246 \newcommand*{\f@x@l@cks}{%
2247     \ifcase\@lock
2248     \or
2249         \global\@lock=\tw@
2250     \or \or
2251         \global\@lock=\z@
2252     \fi
2253     \ifcase\sub@lock
2254     \or
2255         \global\sub@lock=\tw@
2256     \or \or
2257         \global\sub@lock=\z@
2258     \fi}
2259 %
2260 %

```

## X Pstart number printing in side

In side, the printing of pstart number is running like the printing of line number. There is only some differences:

`\affixpstart@num`  
`\pstartnum`

- The pstarts counter is upgrade in the `\pend` command. Consequently, the `\affixpstart@num` command has not to upgrade it, unlike the `\affixline@num` which upgrades the lines counter.
- To print the pstart number only at the beginning of a pstart, and not in every line, a boolean test is made. The `\pstartnum` boolean is set to TRUE at every `\pend`. It is tried in the `\leftpstartnum` and `\rightpstartnum` commands. After the try, it is set to FALSE.

```

\leftpstartnum61
\rightpstartnum62
\ifsidepstartnum63 \newif\ifsidepstartnum
2264     \ifsidepstartnum
2265         \if@twocolumn
2266             \if@firstcolumn
2267                 \gdef\l@dld@ta{\llap{{\leftpstartnum}}}%

```

```

2268         \else
2269             \gdef\l@drd@ta{\rlap{{\rightpstartnum}}}%
2270         \fi
2271     \else
2272         \@l@dttempcntb=\line@margin
2273         \ifnum\@l@dttempcntb>\@ne
2274             \advance\@l@dttempcntb \page@num
2275         \fi
2276         \ifodd\@l@dttempcntb
2277             \gdef\l@drd@ta{\rlap{{\rightpstartnum}}}%
2278         \else
2279             \gdef\l@dld@ta{\llap{{\leftpstartnum}}}%
2280         \fi
2281     \fi
2282 \fi
2283
2284 }
2285 %
2286
2287 \newif\ifpstartnum
2288 \pstartnumtrue
2289 \newcommand*{\leftpstartnum}{
2290     \ifpstartnum\thepstart
2291     \kern\linenumsep\fi
2292     \global\pstartnumfalse
2293 }
2294 \newcommand*{\rightpstartnum}{
2295     \ifpstartnum
2296     \kern\linenumsep
2297     \thepstart
2298     \fi
2299     \global\pstartnumfalse
2300 }
2301 %

```

## XI Restoring footnotes and penalties

Because of the paragraph decomposition process in order to number line, `reledmac` must hack the standard way  $\TeX$  works in order to manage insertion of footnotes, both critical and familiar.

We need to call the `\insert` commands not when the content of `\pstart...\pend` is read by  $\TeX$  but when each individual line is typeset.

Consequently, when reading the content of `\pstart...\pend`, we store the insertion (footnotes) in an specific `reledmac`'s list, and we restore them to the vertical list when printing each individual line.

## XI.1 Add insertions to the vertical list

`\inserts@list` `\inserts@list` is the list macro that contains the inserts that we save up for one paragraph.

```
2302 \list@create{\inserts@list}
2303 %
```

`\add@inserts` `\add@inserts` is the penultimate macro used by `\do@line`; it takes insertions saved in a list macro and sends them onto the vertical list.

It may call itself recursively, and to do this efficiently (using TeX's optimization for tail recursion), we define a control-sequence called `\add@inserts@next` that is always the last thing that `\add@inserts` does. If there could be more inserts to process for this line, `\add@inserts@next` is set equal to `\add@inserts`; otherwise it is just `\relax`.

```
2304 \newcommand*{\add@inserts}{%
2305   \global\let\add@inserts@next=\relax
2306   %
```

If `\inserts@list` is empty, there are not any more notes or insertions for this paragraph, and we need not waste our time.

```
2307   \ifx\inserts@list\empty \else
2308   %
```

The `\next@insert` macro records the number of the line that receives the next footnote or other insert; it is empty when we start out, and just after we have affixed a note or insert.

```
2309   \ifx\next@insert\empty
2310     \ifx\insertlines@list\empty
2311       \global\noteschanged@true
2312       \gdef\next@insert{100000}%
2313     \else
2314       \gl@p\insertlines@list\to\next@insert
2315     \fi
2316   \fi
2317   %
```

If the next insert's for this line, tack it on (and then erase the contents of the insert macro, as it could be quite large). In that case, we also set `\add@inserts@next` so that we will call ourselves recursively: there might be another insert for this same line.

```
2318   \ifnum\next@insert=\absline@num
2319     \gl@p\inserts@list\to\@insert
2320     \@insert
2321     \global\let\@insert=\undefined
2322     \global\let\next@insert=\empty
2323     \global\let\add@inserts@next=\add@inserts
2324   \fi
2325 \fi
2326 %
```

Make the recursive call, if necessary.

```
2327 \add@inserts@next}
2328
2329 %
```

## XI.2 Penalties

**\add@penalties** `\add@penalties` is the last macro used by `\do@line`. It adds up the club, widow, and interline penalties, and puts a single penalty of the appropriate size back into the paragraph; these penalties get removed by the `\vsplit` operation. `\displaywidowpenalty` and `\brokenpenalty` are not restored, since we have no easy way to find out where we should insert them.

In this code, `\num@lines` is the number of lines in the whole paragraph, and `\par@line` is the line we are working on at the moment. The count `\@l@tempcnta` is used to calculate and accumulate the penalty; it is initially set to the value of `\ballast@count`, which has been worked out in `\do@ballast` above (VIII p. 141). Finally, the penalty is checked to see that it does not go below  $-10000$ .

```
2330 \newcommand*{\add@penalties}{\@l@tempcnta=\ballast@count
2331 \ifnum\num@lines>\@ne
2332 \global\advance\par@line \@ne
2333 \ifnum\par@line=\@ne
2334 \advance\@l@tempcnta \clubpenalty
2335 \fi
2336 \@l@tempcntb=\par@line \advance\@l@tempcntb \@ne
2337 \ifnum\@l@tempcntb=\num@lines
2338 \advance\@l@tempcnta \widowpenalty
2339 \fi
2340 \ifnum\par@line<\num@lines
2341 \advance\@l@tempcnta \interlinepenalty
2342 \fi
2343 \fi
2344 \ifnum\@l@tempcnta=z@
2345 \relax
2346 \else
2347 \ifnum\@l@tempcnta>-10000
2348 \penalty\@l@tempcnta
2349 \else
2350 \penalty -10000
2351 \fi
2352 \fi}
2353
2354 %
```

## XI.3 Printing leftover notes

**\flush@notes** The `\flush@notes` macro is called after the entire paragraph has been sliced up and sent on to the vertical list. If the number of notes to this paragraph has increased since

the previous run of  $\text{\TeX}$ , then there can be leftover notes that have not yet been printed. An appropriate error message will be printed elsewhere; but it is best to go ahead and print these notes somewhere, even if it is not in quite the right place. What we do is dump them all out here, so that they should be printed on the same page as the last line of the paragraph. We can hope that is not too far from the proper location, to which they will move on the next run.

```

2355 \newcommand*{\flush@notes}{%
2356   \@xloop
2357   \ifx\inserts@list\empty \else
2358     \gl@p\inserts@list\to\@insert
2359     \@insert
2360     \global\let\@insert=\undefined
2361   \repeat}
2362
2363 %

```

**\@xloop**  $\text{\@xloop}$  is a variant of the PLAIN  $\text{\TeX}$   $\text{\loop}$  macro, useful when it's hard to construct a positive test using the  $\text{\TeX}$   $\text{\if}$  commands—as in  $\text{\flush@notes}$  above. One types  $\text{\@xloop} \dots \text{\if} \dots \text{\else} \dots \text{\repeat}$ , and the action following  $\text{\else}$  is repeated as long as the  $\text{\if}$  test fails. (This macro will work wherever the PLAIN  $\text{\TeX}$   $\text{\loop}$  is used, too, so we could just call it  $\text{\loop}$ ; but it seems preferable not to change the definitions of any of the standard macros.)

This variant of  $\text{\loop}$  was introduced by Alois Kabelschacht in *TUGboat* 8 (1987), pp. 184–5.

```

2364 \def\@xloop#1\repeat{%
2365   \def\body{#1\expandafter\body\fi}%
2366   \body}
2367
2368 %

```

## XI.4 Text before notes

**\set@Xtxtbeforenotes** The  $\text{\set@Xtxtbeforenotes}$  macro resets the  $\text{Xtxtbeforenotes@}\langle series \rangle\text{@typeset}$  boolean to false. Just before the first note of the  $\langle series \rangle$  in a page, the  $\text{Xtextbeforenotes}$  will be inserted.

```

2369 \newcommand{\set@Xtxtbeforenotes}{%
2370   \unless\ifnocritical@%
2371     \def\do##1{%
2372       \global\togglefalse{Xtxtbeforenotes@##1@typeset}%
2373     }%
2374     \dolistloop{\@series}%
2375   \fi%
2376 }%
2377 %

```



`\insert@Xtxtbeforenotes` `\insert@Xtxtbeforenotes{⟨series⟩}`, called when inserting a note, will insert the text before the note if it is not already inserted. For paragraphed footnotes, it will insert it as a component of the first footnote. For other types of footnotes, it will insert it as a regular footnote.

```

2378 \newcommand{\insert@Xtxtbeforenotes}[1]{%
2379   \nottoggle{Xtxtbeforenotes@#1@typeset}{%
2380     \global\toggletrue{Xtxtbeforenotes@#1@typeset}%
2381     \ifcvoid{Xtxtbeforenotes@#1}{}%
2382     \ifcsstring{series@display#1}{paragraph}%
2383     {\noindent\csuse{Xtxtbeforenotes@#1}}%
2384     {\expandafter\insert\csname#1footins\endcsname%
2385       \bgroup%
2386         \noindent\strut\csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}\csuse{Xtxtbeforenotes@
#1}%
2387       \egroup%
2388     }%
2389   }%
2390 }%
2391 {}%
2392 }%
2393 %

```

## XII Critical footnotes

The footnote macros are adapted from those in PLAIN T<sub>E</sub>X, but they differ in these respects: the outer-level commands must add other commands to a list macro rather than doing insertions immediately; there are many separate levels of the footnotes, not just one; and there are options to reformat footnotes into paragraphs or into multiple columns.

### XII.1 Fonts

Before getting into the details of formatting the notes, we set up some font macros. It is the notes that present the greatest challenge for our font-handling mechanism, because we need to be able to take fragments of our main text and print them in different forms: it is common to reduce the size, for example, without otherwise changing the fonts used.

`\select@lemmafont` `\select@lemmafont` is provided to set the right font for the lemma in a note. This macro extracts the font specifier from the line and page number cluster, and issues the associated font-changing command, so that the lemma is printed in its original font.

```

2394 \def\select@lemmafont#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7|{\select@lemmafont#7|}
2395 \def\select@lemmafont#1/#2/#3/#4|%
2396   {\fontencoding{#1}\fontfamily{#2}\fontseries{#3}\fontshape{#4}%
2397   \selectfont}
2398
2399 %

```

## XII.2 Individual note options

`\footnoteoptions@` The `\footnoteoption@[<side>]{<options>}{<value>}` changes the value of on options of Xfootnote, to switch between true and false.

```

2400 \newcommand*{\footnoteoptions@}[3]{%
2401   \def\do##1{%
2402     \ifstrequal{#1}{L}{% In Leftside
2403       \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\setkeys[mac]{#3footnoteoption}{\
2404         unexpanded{##1}}}{\to\inserts@list%
2405         \global\advance\insert@count \@ne% Increment the left insert
2406         counter.
2407       }%
2408       {%
2409         \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\setkeys[mac]{#3footnoteoption}{\
2410         unexpanded{##1}}}{\to\inserts@listR%
2411         \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne% Increment the right insert
2412         counter insert.
2413       }%
2414     }%
2415     \notblank{#2}{\docsvlist{#2}}{}}% Parsing all options
2416   }
2417   %

```

## XII.3 Notes language

`\footnotelang@lua` `\footnotelang@lua` is called to remember the information about the direction of a lemma when Lua<sub>TeX</sub> is used.

```

2414 \newcommand*{\footnotelang@lua}[1][1=L,usedefault]{%
2415   \ifstrequal{#1}{L}{%
2416     \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@luatextextdir}{\the\textdir}}}{\to\
2417     inserts@list%Know the dir of lemma
2418     \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
2419     \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@luatexpardir}{\the\pardir}}}{\to\
2420     inserts@list%Know the dir of lemma
2421     \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
2422     }%
2423     {%
2424       \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@luatextextdir}{\the\textdir}}}{\to\
2425       inserts@listR%Know the dir of lemma
2426       \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
2427       }%
2428     }%

```

`\footnotelang@poly` `\footnotelang@poly` is called to remember the information about the language of a lemma when polyglossia is used.

```

2429 \newcommand*{\footnotelang@poly}[1][1=L,usedefault]{%
2430   \ifstrequal{#1}{L}{%
2431     \if@RTL%
2432       \xright@appenditem{\csxdef{footnote@dir}{@RTLtrue}}{\to\
inserts@list%Know the language used in the lemma
2433       \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
2434     }%
2435     \else
2436       \xright@appenditem{\csxdef{footnote@dir}{@RTLfalse}}{\to\
inserts@list%Know the language of lemma
2437       \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
2438     }%
2439     \xright@appenditem{\csxdef{footnote@lang}{\expandonce\language\language}}{\to\
inserts@list%Know the language of lemma
2440     \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
2441   }%
2442   \if@RTL
2443     \xright@appenditem{\csxdef{footnote@dir}{@RTLtrue}}{\to\
inserts@listR%Know the language of lemma
2444     \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
2445   }%
2446   \else
2447     \xright@appenditem{\csxdef{footnote@dir}{@RTLfalse}}{\to\
inserts@listR%Know the language of lemma
2448     \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
2449   }%
2450   \xright@appenditem{\csxdef{footnote@lang}{\expandonce\language\language}}{\to\
inserts@listR%Know the language of lemma
2451   \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
2452 }%
2453 %

```

## XII.4 General survey of the way we manage notes

The processing of each note is done by four principal macros: the `\vfootnote` macro takes the text of the footnote and does the `\insert`; it calls on the `\footfmt` macro to select the right fonts, print the line number and lemma, and do any other formatting needed for that individual note. Within the output routine, the two other macros, `\footstart` and `\footgroup`, are called; the first prints extra vertical space and a footnote rule, if desired; the second does any reformatting of the whole set of the footnotes in this series for this page—such as paragraphing or division into columns—and then sends them to the page.

These four macros, and the other macros and parameters shown here, are distinguished by the ‘series letter’ that indicates which set of the footnotes we are dealing with—A, B, C, D, or E. The series letter always precedes the string `foot` in macro and

parameter names. Hence, for the A series, the four macros are called `\vAfootnote`, `\Afootfmt`, `\Afootstart`, and `\Afootgroup`.

These macros are changed depending of the footnotes arrangement: “normal”, “paragraphed”, “two columns” or “three columns”.

## XII.5 General setup

`\footsplitskips` Some setup code that is common for a variety of the footnotes. The setup is for:

- `\interlinepenalty`.
- `\splittopskip` (skip before last part of notes that flow from one page to another).
- `\splitmaxdepth`.
- `\floatingpenalty`, that is penalty values being added when a long note flows from one page to another. Here, we let it to 0 when we are processing parallel pages in `eledpar`, in order to allow notes to flow from left to right pages and *vice-versa*. Otherwise, we let it to `\@MM`, which is the standard  $\TeX$  `\floatingpenalty`.

```

2454 \newcommand*{\footsplitskips}{%
2455   \interlinepenalty=\interfootnotelinepenalty
2456   \unless\ifl@dprintingpages%
2457     \floatingpenalty=\@MM%
2458   \fi%
2459   \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox \splitmaxdepth=\dp\strutbox
2460   \leftskip=\z@skip \rightskip=\z@skip}
2461
2462 %
```

`\normalfootnoterule` `\normalfootnoterule` is a standard footnote-rule macro, for use by a `footstart` macro: just the same as the PLAIN  $\TeX$  footnote rule.

```

2463 \let\normalfootnoterule=\footnoterule
2464 %
```

## XII.6 Footnotes arrangement

### XII.6.1 User level macro

`\Xarrangement` `\Xarrangement[⟨s⟩]{⟨arrangement⟩}` The command calls, for each series, a specific command which set many counters and commands in order to define specific arrangement.

```

2465 \newcommandx{\Xarrangement}[2][1,usedefault]{%
2466   \def\do##1{%
2467     \csname Xarrangement@#2\endcsname{##1}%
2468   }%
```

```

2469 \ifstrempy{#1}%
2470   {%
2471     \dolistloop{\@series}%
2472   }%
2473   {
2474     \docsvlist{#1}%
2475   }%
2476 }%
2477 %

```

### XII.6.2 Normal footnote

`\Xarrangement@normal` We can now define all the parameters for the series of footnotes; initially they use the “normal” footnote formatting.

What we want to do here is to insert something like the following for each footnote series. (This is an example, not part of the actual `reledmac` code.)

```

\skip\Afootins=12pt plus5pt minus5pt
\count\Afootins=1000
\dimen\Afootins=0.8\vsiz
\let\Afootnote=\normalvfootnote \let\Afootfmt=\normalfootfmt
\let\Afootstart=\normalfootstart \let\Afootgroup=\normalfootgroup
\let\Afootnoterule=\normalfootnoterule

```

(Read *The TeXbook* in order to understand what are the counter, skip and dimen associated to an insertion.)

Instead of repeating ourselves, we define a `\Xarrangement@normal` macro that makes all these assignments for us, for any given series letter. This command is called when people use `\Xarrangement[⟨series⟩]{normal}`

Now we set up the `\Xarrangement@normal` macro itself. It takes one argument: the footnote series letter.

```

2478 \newcommand*{\Xarrangement@normal}[1]{%
2479   \csgdef{series@display#1}{normal}
2480   \expandafter\let\csname #1footstart\endcsname=\normalfootstart
2481   \expandafter\let\csname #1footnote\endcsname=\normalvfootnote
2482   \expandafter\let\csname #1footfmt\endcsname=\normalfootfmt
2483   \expandafter\let\csname #1footgroup\endcsname=\normalfootgroup
2484   \expandafter\let\csname #1footnoterule\endcsname=%
2485                                     \normalfootnoterule
2486   \count\csname #1footins\endcsname=1000
2487   \dimen\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xmaxhnotes@#1}
2488   \skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%
2489   \advance\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
2490   %

```

The `reledpar` provides tools in order to confine notes to one side. The mechanism is explained in the `reledpar`’s handbook. For now, just retain we need to store default value of the counter associated to the notes  $\text{\TeX}$ ’s inserts.

```

2491 \csxdef{default@#1footins}{1000}%Use this to confine the notes to one
side only
2492 %

```

Now do the setup for minipage footnotes. We use as much as possible of the normal setup as we can (so the notes will have a similar layout).

```

2493 \ifnoledgroup@else%
2494 \expandafter\let\csname mpv#1footnote\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnote
2495 \expandafter\let\csname mp#1footgroup\endcsname=\mpnormalfootgroup
2496 \count\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=1000
2497 \dimen\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xmaxhnotes@#1}
2498 \skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%
2499 \advance\skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
2500 \fi
2501 }
2502
2503 %

```

**\normalvfootnote** We now begin a series of commands that do ‘normal’ footnote formatting: a format much like that implemented in PLAIN T<sub>E</sub>X, in which each footnote is a separate paragraph.

`\normalvfootnote` takes the series letter as #1, and the entire text of the footnote is #2. It does the `\insert` for this note, calling on the `\footfmt` macro for this note series to format the text of the note.

```

2504 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\normalvfootnote}[2]{%
2505 \insert@Xtxtbeforenotes{#1}%
2506 \csuse{Xbeforeinserting@#1}%
2507 \insert\csname #1footins\endcsname\bgroup
2508 \hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{Xwidth@#1}\relax%
2509 \noindent\csuse{Xbhooknote@#1}%
2510 \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}%
2511 \footsplitskips
2512 \ifl@dpairing\ifl@dpaging\else%
2513 \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2514 \fi\fi%
2515 \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2516 \spaceskip=\z@skip \xspaceskip=\z@skip
2517 \csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2{#1}\egroup}
2518 %

```

**\mpnormalvfootnote** And a somewhat different version for minipages.

```

2519 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\mpnormalvfootnote}[2]{%
2520 \global\setbox\@nameuse{mp#1footins}\vbox{%
2521 \insert@Xtxtbeforenotes{#1}%
2522 \unvbox\@nameuse{mp#1footins}
2523 \noindent\csuse{Xbhooknote@#1}%
2524 \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}%
2525 \hsize\columnwidth

```

```

2526 \parboxrestore
2527 \color@begingroup
2528 \csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2{#1}\color@endgroup}}
2529
2530 %

```

**\normalfootfmt** \normalfootfmt is a ‘normal’ macro to take the footnote line and page number information (see V.9 p. 93), and the desired text, and output what’s to be printed. Argument #1 contains the line and page number information and lemma font specifier; #2 is the lemma; #3 is the note’s text. This version is very rudimentary—it uses \printlines to print just the range of line numbers, followed by a square bracket, the lemma, and the note text.

```

2531
2532
2533 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\normalfootfmt}[4]{%
2534 \Xledsetnormalparstuff{#4}%
2535 \hangindent=\csuse{Xhangindent@#4}%
2536 \everypar{\hangindent=\csuse{Xhangindent@#4}}%
2537 \rule{z@}{splittopskip}%
2538 {\printlinefootnote{#1}{#4}}%
2539 \print@lemma{#1}{#2}{#4}%
2540 \csuse{Xwrapcontent@#4}{#3}%
2541 \strut\par}
2542 %

```

**\normalfootstart** \normalfootstart is a standard footnote-starting macro, called in the output routine whenever there are footnotes of this series to be printed: it skips a bit and then draws a rule.

Any \footstart macro must put onto the page something that takes up space exactly equal to the \skipXfootins value for the associated series of notes.  $\TeX$  makes page computations based on that \skip value, and the output pages will suffer from spacing problems if what you add takes up a different amount of space.

But if the skip \Xprenotes@ is greater than 0 pt, it is used instead of \skip\footins for the first printed series in one page.

The \leftskip and \rightskip values are both zeroed here. Similarly, these skips are cancelled in the \vfootnote macros for the various types of notes. Strictly speaking, this is necessary only if you are using paragraphed footnotes, but we have put it here and in the other \vfootnote macros too so that the behavior of reledmac in this respect is general across all footnote types. What this means is that any \leftskip and \rightskip you specify applies to the main text, but not the footnotes. The footnotes continue to be of width \hsize.

```

2543 \newcommand*{\normalfootstart}[1]{%
2544 %

```

The first series of notes printed in a page can have a specific skip before it. In order to insert this specific skip without overlap the bottom margin of the page, Maïeul Rouquette

have defined an algorithm explained in XVIII p. 207. Here is part of this algorithm, when the block of notes are ready to be printed.

```

2545 \ifdimequal{0pt}{\Xprenotes@}{}%
2546   {%
2547     \iftoggle{Xprenotes@}{%
2548       \togglefalse{Xprenotes@}%
2549       \skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=%
2550       \glueexpr\csuse{Xprenotes@}+\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}\relax%
2551     }%
2552   }%
2553 }%
2554 \vskip\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname%
2555 %

```

And now, the problem of left and right skip for notes. Especially when using one feature of `reledpar` which allows to have the footnotes horizontal size as the size of columns printed by `\Columns`. Read XV p. 205 for the general description of the problem.

```

2556 \leftskip0pt \rightskip0pt
2557 \ifl@dpairing\else%
2558   \hsize=\old@hsize%
2559   \fi%
2560   \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2561   \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2562 %

```

And now, print the footnote's rule to finish the footnote's introduction.

```

2563 \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
2564 }%
2565 %

```

**`\normalfootgroup`** `\normalfootgroup` is a standard footnote-grouping macro: it sends the contents of the footnote-insert box to the output page without alteration.

```

2566 \newcommand*{\normalfootgroup}[1]{%
2567   \csuse{Xbhookgroup@#1}%
2568   \unvbox\csname #1footins\endcsname%
2569   \hsize=\old@hsize%
2570   }%
2571
2572 %

```

**`\mpnormalfootgroup`** A somewhat different version for minipages. Note that, in this case, we do not make distinctions between the `\Xfootgroup` and `\Xfootstarts` macros.

```

2573 \unless\ifnoledgroup@
2574 \newcommand*{\mpnormalfootgroup}[1]{%
2575   \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mp#1footins}
2576   \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
2577     \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%

```



```

2578 \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
2579 \marks\parledgroup@type{Xfootnote}%
2580 \fi\fi\normalcolor%
2581 \ifparledgroup%
2582 \ifl@dpairing%
2583 \else%
2584 \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2585 \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2586 \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%%
2587 \fi%
2588 \else%
2589 \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2590 \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2591 \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%%
2592 \fi%
2593 \setlength{\parindent}{0pt}
2594 \csuse{Xbhookgroup@#1}%
2595 \unvbox\csname mp#1footins\endcsname}}
2596 \fi
2597 %

```

### XII.6.3 Paraphed footnotes

The paraphed-footnote option reformats all the footnotes of one series for a page into a single paragraph; this is especially appropriate when the notes are numerous and brief. The code is based on *The TeXbook*, pp. 398–400, with alterations for our environment. This algorithm uses a considerable amount of save-stack space: a  $\TeX$  of ordinary size may not be able to handle more than about 100 notes of this kind on a page.

**\Xarrangement@paragraph** The `\Xarrangement@paragraph` macro sets up everything for one series of the footnotes so that they will be paraphed; it takes the series letter as argument. We include the setting of `\count\footins` to 1000 for the footnote series just in case user is switching to paraphed footnotes after having columnar ones, since they change this value (see below).

The argument of `\Xarrangement@footparagraph` is the letter denoting the series of notes to be paraphed.

```

2598 \newcommand*{\Xarrangement@paragraph}[1]{%
2599 \csgdef{series@display#1}{paragraph}
2600 \expandafter\let\csname #1footstart\endcsname=\parafootstart
2601 \expandafter\let\csname v#1footnote\endcsname=\paravfootnote
2602 \expandafter\let\csname #1footfmt\endcsname=\parafootfmt
2603 \expandafter\let\csname #1footgroup\endcsname=\parafootgroup
2604 \count\csname #1footins\endcsname=1000
2605 \csxdef{default@#1footins}{1000}%Use this to confine the notes to one
side only
2606 \dimen\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xmaxhnotes@#1}
2607 \skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%
2608 \advance\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%

```

```
2609 \para@footsetup{#1}
2610 %
```

And the extra setup for minipages.

```
2611 \ifnoledgroup@else
2612 \expandafter\let\csname mpv#1footnote\endcsname=\mpparavfootnote
2613 \expandafter\let\csname mp#1footgroup\endcsname=\mpparafootgroup
2614 \count\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=1000
2615 \dimen\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xmaxhnotes@#1}
2616 \skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%
2617 \advance\skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
2618 \fi
2619 }
2620 %
```

**\footfudgefiddle** For paragraphed footnotes  $\TeX$  has to estimate the amount of space required. If it underestimates this then the notes may get too long and run off the bottom of the text block. `\footfudgefiddle` can be increased from its default 64 (say, to 70) to increase the estimate.

```
2621 \providecommand{\footfudgefiddle}{64}
2622 %
```

**\para@footsetup** `\footparagraph` calls the `\para@footsetup` macro to calculate a special fudge factor, which is the ratio of the `\baselineskip` to the `\hsize`. We assume that the proper value of `\baselineskip` for the footnotes (normally 9pt) has been set already. The argument of the macro is again the note series letter.

Peter Wilson thinks that `\columnwidth` should be used here for  $\LaTeX$  not `\hsize`. Peter Wilson have also included `\footfudgefiddle`.

```
2623 \newcommand*{\para@footsetup}[1]{\csuse{Xhookgroup@#1}\csuse{
2624   Xnotefontsize@#1}
2625   \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2626   \ifcsemt{Xwidth@#1}%
2627     {\columnwidth=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{Xwidth@#1}\relax}%
2628   \dimen0=\baselineskip
2629   \multiply\dimen0 by 1024
2630   \divide \dimen0 by \columnwidth \multiply\dimen0 by \footfudgefiddle\
2631   relax
2632   \csxdef{#1footfudgefactor}{%
2633     \expandafter\strip@pt\dimen0 }}
2634 %
```

`\strip@pt` strip the characters pt from a dimen value.

**\parafootstart** `\parafootstart` is the same as `\normalfootstart`, but we give it again to ensure that `\rightskip` and `\leftskip` are zeroed (this needs to be done before

\para@footgroup in the output routine). The size of paragraphed notes is calculated using a fudge factor which in turn is based on \hsize. So the paragraph of notes needs to be that wide.

The argument of the macro is again the note series letter.

```

2635 \newcommand*{\parafootstart}[1]{%
2636   \rightskip=0pt \leftskip=0pt%
2637   \nottoggle{Xparindent@#1}{\parindent=\z@}{}%
2638   \ifdimequal{0pt}{\Xprenotes@}{}%
2639   {%
2640     \iftoggle{Xprenotes@}{%
2641       \togglefalse{Xprenotes@}%
2642       \skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=%
2643       \glueexpr\csuse{Xprenotes@}+\csuse{Xaftererrule@#1}\relax%
2644     }%
2645   }%
2646 }%
2647 \vskip\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname%
2648 \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2649 \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2650 \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
2651 \let\bidirTL@everypar\@empty%
2652 \noindent\leavevmode}
2653 %

```

**\paravfootnote** \paravfootnote is a version of the \vfootnote command that is used for paragraphed notes. It gets appended to the \inserts@list list by an outer-level footnote command like \Afootnote. The first argument is the note series letter; the second is the full text of the printed note itself, including line numbers, lemmata, and footnote text.

The initial model for this insertion is, of course, the \insert\footins definition in *The TeXbook*, p. 398. There, the footnotes are first collected up in hboxes, and these hboxes are later unpacked and stuck together into a paragraph.

However, Michael Downes has pointed out that because text in hboxes gets typeset in restricted horizontal mode, there are some undesirable side-effects if you later want to break such text across lines. In restricted horizontal mode, where T<sub>E</sub>X does not expect to have to break lines, it does not insert certain items like \discretionarys. If you later unbox these hboxes and stick them together, as the *TeXbook* macros do to make these footnotes, you lose the ability to hyphenate after an explicit hyphen. This can lead to overfull \hboxes when you would not expect to find them, and to the uninitiated it might be very hard to see why the problem had arisen.<sup>28</sup>

Wayne Sullivan pointed out to us another subtle problem that arises from the same cause: T<sub>E</sub>X also leaves the \language whatsit nodes out of the horizontal list.<sup>29</sup> So changes from one language to another will not invoke the proper hyphenation rules in such footnotes. Since critical editions often do deal with several languages, especially in a footnotes, we really ought to get this bit of code right.

<sup>28</sup>Michael Downes, ‘Line Breaking in \unhboxed Text’, *TUGboat* **11** (1990), pp. 605–612.

<sup>29</sup>See *The TeXbook*, p. 455 (editions after January 1990).

To get around these problems, Wayne suggested emendations to the *TeXbook* versions of these macros which are broadly the same as those described by Michael: the central idea (also suggested by Donald Knuth in a letter to Michael) is to avoid collecting the text in an `\hbox` in the first place, but instead to collect it in a `\vbox` whose width is (virtually) infinite. The text is therefore typeset in unrestricted horizontal mode, as a paragraph consisting of a single long line. Later, there is an extra level of unboxing to be done: we have to unpack the `\vbox`, as well as the `\hboxes` inside it, but that is not too hard. For details, we refer you to Michael's article, where the issues are clearly explained.<sup>30</sup> Michael's unboxing macro is called `\Xunvxh`: unvbox, extract the last line, and unhbox it.

Doing things this way has an important consequence: as Michael pointed out, you really can't put an explicit line-break into a note built in a `\vbox` the way we are doing.<sup>31</sup> In other words, be very careful not to use `\break`, or `\penalty-10000`, or any equivalent inside your para-footnote. If you do, most of the note will probably disappear. You *are* allowed to make strong suggestions; in fact `\penalty-9999` will be quite okay. Just do not make the break mandatory. We have not applied any of Michael's solutions here, since we feel that the problem is exiguous, and `reledmac` is quite baroque enough already. If you think you are having this problem, look up Michael's solutions.

One more thing; we set `\leftskip` and `\rightskip` to zero. This has the effect of neutralizing any such skips which may apply to the main text (cf. XII.6.2 p. 159 above). We need to do this, since `\footfudgefactor` is calculated on the assumption that the notes are `\hsize` wide.

So, finally, here is the modified foot-paragraph code, which sets the footnote in vertical mode so that language and discretionary nodes are included.

```

2654 \newcommand*{\paravfootnote}[2]{%
2655   \csuse{Xbeforeinserting@#1}%
2656   \insert\csname #1footins\endcsname
2657   \bgroup
2658     \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}
2659     \footplitskips
2660     \setbox0=\vbox{\hsize=\maxdimen%
2661       \let\bid@RTL@everypar\@empty%
2662       \insert@Xtxtbeforenotes{#1}%
2663       \noindent\csuse{Xhooknote@#1}%
2664       \csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2{#1}}%
2665     \setbox0=\hbox{\Xunvxh{0}{#1}}%
2666     \dp0=0pt
2667     \ht0=\csname #1footfudgefactor\endcsname\wd0
2668   %

```

Here we produce the contents of the footnote from box 0, and add a penalty of 0 between boxes in this insert.

```

2669   \if@RTL\noindent \leavevmode\fi\box0%
2670   \penalty0

```

<sup>30</sup>Wayne supplied his own macros to do this, but since they were almost identical to Michael's, Peter Wilson have used the latter's `\Xunvxh` macro since it is publicly documented.

<sup>31</sup>'Line Breaking', p. 610.

```

2671 \egroup}
2672
2673 %

```

The final penalty of 0 was added here at Wayne's suggestion to avoid a weird page-breaking problem, which occurs on those occasions when  $\TeX$  attempts to split foot paragraphs. After trying out such a split (see *The TeXbook*, p. 124),  $\TeX$  inserts a penalty of  $-10000$  here, which nearly always forces the break at the end of the whole footnote paragraph (since individual notes can't be split) even when this leads to an overfull vbox. The change above results in a penalty of 0 instead which allows, but does not force, such breaks. This penalty of 0 is later removed, after page breaks have been decided, by the `\unpenalty` macro in `\makehboxofhboxes`. So it does not affect how the footnote paragraphs are typeset (the notes still have a penalty of  $-10$  between them, which is added by `\parafootfmt`).

`\mpparavfootnote` This version is for minipages.

```

2674 \newcommand*{\mpparavfootnote}[2]{%
2675   \global\setbox\@nameuse{mp#1footins}\vbox{%
2676     \unvbox\@nameuse{mp#1footins}%
2677     \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}
2678     \footsplitskips
2679     \setbox0=\vbox{\hsize=\maxdimen%
2680       \let\bidir@RTL@everypar\@empty%
2681       \insert@Xtxtbeforenotes{#1}%
2682       \noindent\color@begingroup%
2683       \csuse{Xbhooknote@#1}%
2684       \csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2{#1}\color@endgroup}%
2685     \setbox0=\hbox{\Xunvxh{0}{#1}}%
2686     \dp0=\z@
2687     \ht0=\csname #1footfudgefactor\endcsname\wd0
2688     \box0
2689     \penalty0
2690   }}
2691
2692 %

```

`\Xunvxh` Here is (modified) Michael's definition of `\unvxh`, used above. Michael's macro also takes care to remove some unwanted penalties and glue that  $\TeX$  automatically attaches to the end of paragraphs. When  $\TeX$  finishes a paragraph, it throws away any remaining glue, and then tacks on the following items: a `\penalty` of 10000, a `\parfillskip` and a `\rightskip` (*The TeXbook*, pp. 99–100). `\unvxh` cancels these unwanted paragraph-final items using `\unskip` and `\unpenalty`.

```

2693 \newcommand*{\Xunvxh}[2]{%
2694   \setbox0=\vbox{\unvbox#1%
2695     \global\setbox1=\lastbox}%
2696   \unhbox1
2697   \unskip           % remove \rightskip,
2698   \unskip           % remove \parfillskip,

```

```

2699 \unpenalty          % remove \penalty of 10000,
2700 \hskip\csuse{Xafternote@#2}\relax}% but add the glue to go between the
notes
2701
2702 %

```

**\parafootfmt** \parafootfmt is \normalfootfmt adapted to do the special stuff needed for paragraphed notes — leaving out the \endgraf at the end, sticking in special penalties and kern and leaving out the \footstrut. The first argument is the line and page number information, the second is the lemma, the third is the text of the footnote, and the fourth is the series (optional, for backward compatibility).

```

2703 \newcommand*{\parafootfmt}[4]{%
2704   \Xinsertparafootsep{#4}%
2705   \ledsetnormalparstuff@common%
2706   \printlinefootnote{#1}{#4}%
2707   \print@lemma{#1}{#2}{#4}%
2708   \csuse{Xwrapcontent@#4}{#3}%
2709   \penalty-10 }
2710 %

```

Note that in the above definition, the penalty of  $-10$  encourages a line break between notes, so that notes have a slight tendency to begin on new lines. The \Xinsertparafootsep command is used to insert the \Xparafootsep@series between each note in the *same* page.

**\parafootgroup** This footgroup code is modelled on the macros in *The TeXbook*, p. 399. The only difference is the \unpenalty in \makehboxofhboxes, which is there to remove the penalty of 0 which was added to the end of each footnote by \paravfootnote.

The call to \Xnotefontsize@<s> is to ensure that the correct \baselineskip for the footnotes is used. The argument is the note series letter.

```

2711 \newcommand*{\parafootgroup}[1]{%
2712   \hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{Xwidth@#1}\relax%
2713   \unvbox\csname #1footins\endcsname
2714   \ifcsstring{Xragged@#1}{L}{\RaggedLeft}{}%
2715   \ifcsstring{Xragged@#1}{R}{\RaggedRight}{}%
2716   \makehboxofhboxes
2717   \setbox0=\hbox{\unhbox0 \removehboxes}%
2718   \csuse{Xhookgroup@#1}%
2719   \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}%
2720   \unhbox0\par%
2721   \global\hsize=\old@hsize%
2722   }%
2723
2724 %

```

**\mpparafootgroup** The minipage version.

```

2725 \newcommand*{\mpparafootgroup}[1]{%
2726   \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2727   \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mp#1footins}
2728   \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
2729     \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
2730     \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
2731     \marks\parledgroup@type{Xfootnote}%
2732   \fi\fi\normalcolor
2733   \ifparledgroup%
2734     \ifl@dpairing%
2735     \else%
2736       \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2737       \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2738       \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%%
2739     \fi%
2740   \else%
2741     \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2742     \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2743     \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
2744   \fi%
2745   \unvbox\csname mp#1footins\endcsname
2746   \ifcsstring{Xragged@#1}{L}{\RaggedLeft}{}%
2747   \ifcsstring{Xragged@#1}{R}{\RaggedRight}{}%
2748   \makehboxofhboxes
2749   \setbox0=\hbox{\unhbox0 \removehboxes}%
2750   \csuse{Xbhookgroup@#1}%
2751   \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}%
2752   \nottoggle{Xparindent@#1}{\parindent=\z@}{}%
2753   \unhbox0\par}}
2754
2755 %

```

And finally, the two macros which are required to transform the long horizontal box stored in the insert' box to a printable text.

```

\makehboxofhboxes56 \newcommand*{\makehboxofhboxes}{\setbox0=\hbox{}}%
\removehboxes57   \loop
2758     \unpenalty
2759     \setbox2=\lastbox
2760     \ifhbox2
2761       \setbox0=\hbox{\box2\unhbox0}%
2762     \repeat}
2763
2764 \newcommand*{\removehboxes}{\setbox0=\lastbox
2765   \ifhbox0{\removehboxes}\unhbox0 \fi}
2766
2767 %

```

**Insertion of the footnotes separator** The command `\Xinsertparafootsep{<series>}` must be called at the beginning of `\parafootftm`.

```

\prevpage@num 2770 \newcommand{\Xinsertparafootsep}[1]{%
\Xinsertparafootsep 2771 \ifledRcol{%
2772 \ifnumequal{\csuse{#1prevpage@numR}}{\page@numR}%
2773 {\ifcsdef{prevline#1}% Be sur \prevline#1 exists.
2774 {\ifnumequal{\csuse{prevline#1}}{\line@numR}%
2775 {\ifcsempy{Xsymlinenum@#1}{\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}{}}%
2776 {\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}%
2777 }%
2778 {\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}%
2779 }%
2780 {\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}%
2781 }%
2782 }%
2783 \global\csname #1prevpage@numR\endcsname=\page@numR%
2784 \else%
2785 \ifnumequal{\csuse{#1prevpage@num}}{\page@num}%
2786 {\ifcsdef{prevline#1}% Be sur \prevline#1 exists.
2787 {\ifnumequal{\csuse{prevline#1}}{\line@num}%
2788 {\ifcsempy{Xsymlinenum@#1}{\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}{}}%
2789 {\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}%
2790 }%
2791 {\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}%
2792 }%
2793 }%
\global\csname #1prevpage@num\endcsname=\page@num%
\fi%
}
%
```

## XII.6.4 Columnar footnotes

### Common tools

`\rigidbalance` We will now define macros for three-column notes and two-column notes. Both sets of macros will use `\rigidbalance`, which splits a box (#1) into into a number (#2) of columns, each with a space (#3) between the top baseline and the top of the `\vbox`. The `\Xrigidbalance` macro is taken from *The TeXbook*, p. 397, with a slight change to the syntax of the arguments so that they do not depend on white space. Note also the extra unboxing in `\splitoff`, which allows the new `\vbox` to have its natural height as it goes into the alignment.

The  $\text{\TeX}$  `\line` macro has no relationship to the  $\text{\TeX}$  `\line`. The  $\text{\TeX}$  equivalent is `\@@line`.

We do not call directly `\rigidbalance`, but we call `\Xrigidbalance` for critical notes and `\rigidbalanceX` for familiar notes. Both of them call `\rigidbalance`.

```

2794 \newcount\@k \newdimen\@h
2795 \newcommand*\Xrigidbalance[3]{%
2796 \hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{Xwidth@}\currentseries\relax%
```



```

2797 \rigidbalance{#1}{#2}{#3}%
2798 }%
2799
2800 \newcommand*{\rigidbalanceX}[3]{%
2801   \hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{widthX@\@currentseries}\relax%
2802   \rigidbalance{#1}{#2}{#3}%
2803 }%
2804
2805 \newcommand*{\rigidbalance}[3]{%
2806   \setbox0=\box#1 \@k=#2 \@h=#3%
2807   \@@line{\splittopskip=\@h \vbadness=\@M \hfilneg
2808   \valign{##\vfil\cr\dosplits}}}}
2809
2810 \newcommand*{\dosplits}{\ifnum\@k>0 \noalign{\hfil}\splitoff
2811   \global\advance\@k-1\cr\dosplits\fi}
2812
2813 \newcommand*{\splitoff}{\dimen0=\ht0
2814   \divide\dimen0 by\@k \advance\dimen0 by\@h
2815   \setbox2 \vsplit0 to \dimen0
2816   \unvbox2 }
2817
2818 %

```

### Three columns

```

\Xarrangement@threecol 19 \newcommand*{\Xarrangement@threecol}[1]{%
2820   \csgdef{series@display#1}{threecol}
2821   \expandafter\let\csname v#1footnote\endcsname=\threecolvfootnote
2822   \expandafter\let\csname #1footfmt\endcsname=\threecolfootfmt
2823   \expandafter\let\csname #1footgroup\endcsname=\threecolfootgroup
2824   \dimen\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xmaxhnotes@#1}%
2825   \skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%
2826   \advance\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
2827   \threecolfootsetup{#1}
2828 %

```

The additional setup for minipages.

```

2829 \ifnoledgroup@else
2830   \expandafter\let\csname mpv#1footnote\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnote
2831   \expandafter\let\csname mp#1footgroup\endcsname=\mpthreecolfootgroup
2832   \skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%
2833   \advance\skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
2834   \mpthreecolfootsetup{#1}
2835 \fi
2836 }
2837
2838 %

```

The `\footstart` and `\footnoterule` macros for these notes assume the normal values (XII.6.2 p. 159 above).

`\threecolfootsetup` The `\threecolfootsetup` macro calculates and sets some numbers for three-column footnotes.

We set the `\count` of the foot insert to 333. Each footnote can be thought of as contributing only one third of its height to the page, since the footnote insertion has been made as a long narrow column, which then gets trisected by the `\rigidbalance` routine (inside `\threecolfootgroup`). These new, shorter columns are saved in a box, and then that box is *put back* into the footnote insert, replacing the original collection of the footnotes. This new box is, therefore, only about a third of the height of the original one.

The `\dimen` value for this note series has to change in the inverse way: it needs to be three times the actual limit on the amount of space these notes are allowed to fill on the page, because when  $\TeX$  is accumulating material for the page and checking that limit, it does not apply the `\count` scaling.

```
2839 \newcommand*{\threecolfootsetup}[1]{%
2840   \count\csname #1footins\endcsname 333
2841   \csxdef{default@#1footins}{333}%Use this to confine the notes to one
side only
2842   \multiply\dimen\csname #1footins\endcsname \thr@@}
2843   %
```

`\mpthreecolfootsetup` The setup for minipages.

```
2844 \newcommand*{\mpthreecolfootsetup}[1]{%
2845   \count\csname mp#1footins\endcsname 333
2846   \multiply\dimen\csname mp#1footins\endcsname \thr@@}
2847   %
2848   %
```

`\threecolvfootnote` `\threecolvfootnote` is the `\vfootnote` command for three-column notes. The call to `\Xnotefontsize@{s}` ensures that the `\splittopskip` and `\splitmaxdepth` take their values from the right `\strutbox`: the one used in a footnotes. Note especially the importance of temporarily reducing the `\hsize` to 0.3 of its normal value. This determines the widths of the individual columns. So if the normal `\hsize` is, say, 10 cm, then each column will be  $0.3 \times 10 = 3$  cm wide, leaving a gap of 1 cm spread equally between columns (i.e., .5 cm between each).

The arguments are `#1` the note series letter and `#1` the full text of the note (including numbers, lemma and text).

```
2849 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand*}{\threecolvfootnote}[2]{%
2850   \csuse{Xbeforeinserting@#1}%
2851   \insert\csname #1footins\endcsname\bgroup%
2852   \hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{Xwidth@#1}\relax%
2853   \noindent\csuse{Xbhooknote@#1}%
2854   \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}%
2855   \footplitskips%
```

```

2856 \csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2{#1}\egroup}
2857 %

```

**\threecolfootfmt** \threecolfootfmt is the command that formats one note. The arguments are #1 the line numbers, #2 the lemma and #4 the text of the -footnote command #4 optional (for backward compatibility): the series.

```

2858 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\threecolfootfmt}[4]{%
2859 \normal@pars%
2860 \hsize \csuse{Xhsizethreecol@#4}%
2861 \nottoggle{Xparindent@#4}{\parindent=\z@}{}%
2862 \tolerance=5000%
2863 \hangindent=\csuse{Xhangindent@#4}%
2864 \everypar{\hangindent=\csuse{Xhangindent@#4}}%
2865 \@tempdima=\parindent%
2866 \csuse{Xcolalign@#4}%
2867 \parindent=\@tempdima%
2868 \strut{%
2869 \hspace{\parindent}%
2870 \printlinefootnote{#1}{#4}%
2871 }%
2872 \print@lemma{#1}{#2}{#4}%
2873 \csuse{Xwrapcontent@#4}{#3}%
2874 \strut\par\allowbreak}
2875 %

```

**\threecolfootgroup** And here is the footgroup macro that is called within the output routine to regroup the notes into three columns. Once again, the call to \Xnotefontsize@⟨s⟩ is there to ensure that it is the right \splittopskip—the one used in footnotes—which is used to provide the third argument for \rigidbalance. This third argument (\@h) is the topskip for the box containing the text of the footnotes, and does the job of making sure the top lines of the columns line up horizontally. In *The TeXbook*, p. 398, Donald Knuth suggests retrieving the output of \rigidbalance, putting it back into the insertion box, and then printing the box. Here, we just print the \line which comes out of \rigidbalance directly, without any re-boxing.

```

2876 \newcommand*{\threecolfootgroup}[1]{%
2877 \csuse{Xbhookgroup@#1}\par%
2878 \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
2879 \expandafter
2880 \Xrigidbalance\csname #1footins\endcsname \thr@@ \splittopskip}
2881 %

```

**\mpthreecolfootgroup** The setup for minipages.

```

2882 \newcommand*{\mpthreecolfootgroup}[1]{%
2883 \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mp#1footins}
2884 \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
2885 \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%

```

```

2886 \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
2887 \marks\parledgroup@type{Xfootnote}%
2888 \fi\fi\normalcolor
2889 \ifparledgroup%
2890 \ifl@dpairing%
2891 \else%
2892 \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2893 \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2894 \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
2895 \fi%
2896 \else%
2897 \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2898 \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2899 \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
2900 \fi%
2901 \csuse{Xbhookgroup@#1}\par%
2902 \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
2903 \expandafter
2904 \Xrigidbalance\csname mp#1footins\endcsname \thr@@ \splittopskip}}
2905
2906 %

```

## Two columns

```

\Xarrangement@twocol 2907 \newcommand*{\Xarrangement@twocol}[1]{%
2908 \csgdef{series@display#1}{twocol}
2909 \expandafter\let\csname v#1footnote\endcsname=\twocolvfootnote
2910 \expandafter\let\csname #1footfmt\endcsname=\twocolfootfmt
2911 \expandafter\let\csname #1footgroup\endcsname=\twocolfootgroup
2912 \dimen\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xmaxhnotes@#1}%
2913 \skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%
2914 \advance\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
2915 \twocolfootsetup{#1}
2916 %

```

The additional setup for minipages.

```

2917 \ifnoledgroup@else
2918 \expandafter\let\csname mpv#1footnote\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnote
2919 \expandafter\let\csname mp#1footgroup\endcsname=\mptwocolfootgroup
2920 \skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%
2921 \advance\skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
2922 \mptwocolfootsetup{#1}
2923 \fi
2924 }
2925
2926 %

```

`\twocolfootsetup` Here is a series of macros which are very similar to their three-column counterparts. In this case, each note is assumed to contribute only a half a line of text. And the notes are set in columns giving a gap between them of one tenth of the `\hsiz`e.

```

\twocolfootnote
\twocolfootfmt
\twocolfootgroup
2927 \newcommand*{\twocolfootsetup}[1]{%
2928   \count\csname #1footins\endcsname 500
2929   \csxdef{default@#1footins}{500}%
2930   \multiply\dimen\csname #1footins\endcsname \tw@}
2931   %

2932 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*{\newcommand}{\twocolvfootnote}[2]{%
2933   \csuse{Xbeforeinserting@#1}%
2934   \insert\csname #1footins\endcsname\bgroup%
2935   \hsiz=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{Xwidth@#1}\relax%
2936   \noindent\csuse{Xbhooknote@#1}%
2937   \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}%
2938   \footplitskips%
2939   \csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2{#1}\egroup}
2940   %

2941 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*{\newcommand}{\twocolfootfmt}[4]{% 4th
arg is optional, for backward compatibility
2942   \normal@pars%
2943   \hsiz \csuse{Xhsizetwocol@#4}%
2944   \nottoggle{Xparindent@#4}{\parindent=\z@}{}%
2945   \tolerance=5000%
2946   \hangindent=\csuse{Xhangindent@#4}%
2947   \everypar{\hangindent=\csuse{Xhangindent@#4}}%
2948   \@tempdima=\parindent%
2949   \csuse{Xcolalign@#4}%
2950   \parindent=\@tempdima%
2951   \strut{%
2952   \hspace{\parindent}%
2953   \printlinefootnote{#1}{#4}%
2954   }%
2955   \print@lemma{#1}{#2}{#4}%
2956   \csuse{Xwrapcontent@#4}{#3}%
2957   \strut\par\allowbreak}
2958   %

2959 \newcommand*{\twocolfootgroup}[1]{%
2960   \csuse{Xbhookgroup@#1}\par%
2961   \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
2962   \expandafter
2963   \Xrigidbalance\csname #1footins\endcsname \tw@ \splittopskip}
2964
2965   %

```

`\mptwocolfootsetup` The versions for minipages.  
`\mptwocolfootgroup`

```

2966 \newcommand*\mptwocolfootsetup}[1]{%
2967   \count\csname mp#1footins\endcsname 500
2968   \multiply\dimen\csname mp#1footins\endcsname \tw@}
2969 %

2970 \newcommand*\mptwocolfootgroup}[1]{%
2971   \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mp#1footins}
2972   \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
2973     \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
2974     \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
2975     \marks\parledgroup@type{Xfootnote}%
2976   \fi\fi\normalcolor
2977   \ifparledgroup%
2978     \ifl@dpairing%
2979     \else%
2980       \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2981       \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2982       \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
2983     \fi%
2984   \else%
2985     \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2986     \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
2987     \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
2988   \fi%
2989   \csuse{Xbhookgroup@#1}\par%
2990   \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
2991   \expandafter
2992   \Xrigidbalance\csname mp#1footins\endcsname \tw@ \splittopskip}}
2993
2994 %

```

## XII.7 Critical notes presentation

Here, we define some commons macro which are used in order to print a critical notes, that is a note with 1) line number 2) lemma 3) lemma separator 4) text associated to the lemma.

### XII.7.1 Font tools

`\endashchar` The fonts that are used for printing notes might not have the character mapping we expect: for example, the Computer Modern font that contains old-style numerals does not contain an en-dash or square brackets, and its period and comma are in odd locations. To allow use of the standard footnote macros with such fonts, we use the following macros for certain characters.

The `\endashchar` macro is simply an en-dash from the normal font and is immune to changes in the surrounding font. The same goes for the full stop. These two are used in `\printlines`. The right bracket macro is the same again; it crops up in

`\normalfootfmt` and the other footnote macros for controlling the format of the footnotes.

With `polyglossia`, each critical note has a `\footnote@lang` which shows the language of the lemma, and which can be used to switch the bracket from right to left.

```

2995 \def\endashchar{\textnormal{--}}
2996
2997 \newcommand*\fullstop{\textnormal{.}}
2998 \def\Xsublinesep@side{\fullstop}
2999
3000 \newcommand*\rbracket{\textnormal{%
3001   \csuse{text}\csuse{footnote@lang}}{%
3002     \ifluatex%
3003       \ifdefstring{\footnote@luatextextdir}{TRT}{\thinspace[]{\thinspace
3004         \else%
3005         \thinspace}%
3006         \fi}%
3007   }}%
3008 }
3009
3010 %

```

### XII.7.2 Pstart number in footnote

`\printpstart` The `\printpstart` macro prints the pstart number for a note.

```

3011 \newcommand{\printpstart}[0]{%
3012   \ifboolexpr{bool{l@dpairing} or bool{l@dprintingpages} or bool{
3013     l@dprintingcolumns}}{%
3014     \ifledRcol%
3015       \thepstartR%
3016     \else%
3017       \thepstartL%
3018     \fi%
3019   }{%
3020     \thepstart%
3021   }%
3022 }

```

### XII.7.3 Lemma printing

`\print@lemma` `\print@lemma` is called inside critical footnotes to print the lemma and the lemma separator (#1: line number and font information, #2: lemma, #3: series).

```

3023 %
3024 \newcommand{\print@lemma}[3]{%
3025   \bgroup%
3026   \nottoggle{Xlemmadisablefontselection@#3}%

```

```

3027     {\select@lemmafont#1|}%
3028     }%
3029     \bgroup%
3030     \csuse{Xlemmafont@#3}%Deprecated
3031     \csuse{Xwraplemma@#3}{#2}%
3032     \egroup%
3033     \egroup%
3034     \iftoggle{nosep@}{%
3035     \hskip\csuse{Xinplaceoflemmaseparator@#3}%
3036     \relax%
3037     }%
3038     {\ifcempty{Xlemmaseparator@#3}%
3039     {%
3040     \hskip\csuse{Xinplaceoflemmaseparator@#3}%
3041     \relax%
3042     }%
3043     {%
3044     \nobreak%
3045     \hskip\csuse{Xbeforelemmaseparator@#3}%
3046     \csuse{Xlemmaseparator@#3}%
3047     \hskip\csuse{Xafterlemmaseparator@#3}%
3048     \relax%
3049     }%
3050     }%
3051     }%
3052     %

```

#### XII.7.4 Line number printing

**\printlinefootnote** The `\printlinefootnote` macro is called in each `\<type>footfmt` command. It controls whether the line number is printed or not, according to the series options. Its first argument is the information about lines; its second is the series of the footnote. The printing of the line number is shared in `\printlinefootnotenumbers`.

```

3053 \newcommand{\printlinefootnote}[2]{%
3054     \l@dp@rsefootspec#1|%
3055     \iftoggle{Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines@#2}{%
3056         \edef\lineinfo@{\l@dparsedstartline - \l@dparsedstartsub - \
3057         \l@dparsedendline - \l@dparsedendsub}%
3058         {%
3059         \edef\lineinfo@{\l@dparsedstartline - \l@dparsedstartsub}%
3060         }%
3061         \iftoggle{nonum@}{%Try if the line number must printed for this specific
3062         not (by default, yes)
3063         \hspace{\csuse{Xinplaceofnumber@#2}}%
3064         }%
3065         {%

```



```

3066 \iftoggle{Xnonumber@#2}%Try if the line number must printed (by
default, yes)
3067 {%
3068 \hspace{\csuse{Xinplaceofnumber@#2}}%
3069 }%
3070 {%
3071 {\iftoggle{Xnumberonlyfirstinline@#2}% If for this series the
line number must be printed only in the first time.
3072 {%
3073 \ifcsdef{prevline#2}%
3074 {%Be sure the \prevline exists.
3075 \ifcsequal{prevline#2}{\lineinfo@}%Try it
3076 {%
3077 \ifcsequal{Xsymlinenum@#2}%
3078 {%
3079 \hspace{\csuse{Xinplaceofnumber@#2}}%
3080 }%
3081 {\printsymlinefootnotearea{#2}}%
3082 }%
3083 {%
3084 \printlinefootnotearea{#1}{#2}%
3085 }%
3086 }%
3087 {%
3088 \printlinefootnotearea{#1}{#2}%
3089 }%
3090 }%
3091 {%
3092 \printlinefootnotearea{#1}{#2}%
3093 }%
3094 \csxdef{prevline#2}{\lineinfo@}%
3095 }%
3096 }%
3097 }%
3098 }%
3099 }
3100 %

```

**\printsymlinefootnotearea** This macro prints the space before the line symbol, changes the font, when prints the line symbol and the space after it.

```

3101 \newcommand{\printsymlinefootnotearea}[1]{%
3102 \hspace{\csuse{Xbeforesymlinenum@#1}}%
3103 \csuse{Xnotenumfont@#1}%
3104 \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xboxsymlinenum@#1}}{\z@}%
3105 {\csuse{Xsymlinenum@#1}}%
3106 {\hbox to \csuse{Xboxsymlinenum@#1}%
3107 {\csuse{Xsymlinenum@#1}\hfill}%
3108 }%
3109 \hspace{\csuse{Xaftersymlinenum@#1}}%

```

```

3110 }%
3111 %

```

**\printlinefootnotearea** This macro prints the space before the line number, changes the font, then prints the line number and the space after it. It is called by `\printlinefootnote` depending of the options about repeating line numbers. The first argument is line information, the second is the notes series (A, B, C, etc.)

```

3112 \newcommand{\printlinefootnotearea}[2]{%
3113   \printXbeforenumber{#2}%
3114   \csuse{Xnotenumfont@#2}%
3115   \boxfootnotenumbers{#1}{#2}%
3116   \printXafternumber{#2}%
3117 }%
3118 %

```

**\boxfootnotenumbers** Depending on the user settings, this macro will box line numbers (or not). The first argument is line information, the second is the notes series (A, B, C, etc.) The previous `\printlinefootnotearea` calls it.

```

3119 \newcommand{\boxfootnotenumbers}[2]{%
3120   \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xboxlinenum@#2}}{0pt}{%
3121     \printlinefootnotenumbers{#1}{#2}%
3122   }%
3123   {%
3124     \hbox to \csuse{Xboxlinenum@#2}%
3125     {%
3126       \IfSubStr{RC}{\csuse{Xboxlinenumalign@#2}}{\hfill}{}%
3127       \printlinefootnotenumbers{#1}{#2}%
3128       \IfSubStr{LC}{\csuse{Xboxlinenumalign@#2}}{\hfill}{}%
3129     }%
3130   }%
3131 }%
3132 %

```

**\printlinefootnotenumbers** This macro prints, if needed, the pstart number and the line number. The first argument is line information, the second is the notes series (A, B, C, etc.) The previous `\boxlinefootnote` calls it.

```

3133 \newcommand{\printlinefootnotenumbers}[2]{%
3134   \xdef\@currentseries{#2}%
3135   \ifboolexpr{%
3136     (togl{Xpstart@#2} and bool{numberpstart})%
3137     or togl{Xpstarteverytime@#2}}%
3138   {\printpstart}{}%
3139   \iftoggle{Xstanza@#2}{%
3140     \ifnumberstanza%
3141       \printstanza%
3142       \csuse{Xstanzaseparator@#2}%

```

```

3143 \fi%
3144 }{}%
3145 \iftoggle{Xonlypstart@#2}{-}{%
3146 \csuse{Xtxtbeforenumber@#2}%
3147 \printlines#1|\ifledRcol@{\Rlineflag\fi}}%
3148 }%
3149 %

```

**\printXbeforenumber** This macro prints a space (before the line number) in footnote. It is called by `\printlinefootnotearea`. Its only argument is the note series (A, B, C, etc.)

```

3150 \newcommand{\printXbeforenumber}[1]{%
3151 \hspace{\csuse{Xbeforenumber@#1}}%
3152 }%
3153 %

```

**\printXafternumber** This macro prints the space, adding eventually a `\nobreak`, after the line number, in footnote. It is called by `\printlinefootnotearea`. Its only argument is the series

```

3154 \newcommand{\printXafternumber}[1]{%
3155 \iftoggle{Xnonbreakableafternumber@#1}{\nobreak}{-}%
3156 \hspace{\csuse{Xafternumber@#1}}%
3157 }%
3158 %

```

If we have decided to print the line number in a specific notes, the `\printlines` macro prints the line numbers for a note—which, in the general case, is a rather complicated task. The seven parameters of the argument are the line numbers as stored in `\l@d@nums`, in the form described on V.9 p. 93: the starting page, line, and sub-line numbers, followed by the ending page, line, and sub-line numbers, and then the font specifier for the lemma.

edmac’ creator have defined six boolean in order to know which component of line number description we have to print:

- `\ifl@d@pnum` for page numbers;
- `\ifl@d@ssub` for starting sub-line;
- `\ifl@d@elin` for ending line;
- `\ifl@d@esl` for ending sub-line; and
- `\ifl@d@dash` for the dash between the starting and ending groups.

There is no boolean for the line number because it is always printed.

Maieul Rouquette has added `\ifl@d@Xtwolines` and `\ifl@d@Xmorethantwolines` to print a symbol which stands for “and subsequent” when there are two, three or more lines.

```

\ifl@d@pnum59 \newif\ifl@d@pnum
\ifl@d@ssub60 \newif\ifl@d@ssub
\ifl@d@elin61 \newif\ifl@d@elin
\ifl@d@esl62 \newif\ifl@d@esl
\ifl@d@dash63 \newif\ifl@d@dash
\ifl@d@Xtwolines2164 \newif\ifl@d@Xtwolines%
\ifl@d@Xmorethantwolines3165 \newif\ifl@d@Xmorethantwolines%
3166 %

```

```

\l@dp@rsefootsspec \l@dp@rsefootsspec parses lines specification and defines macros which hold the nu-
\l@dparsedstartpage meric values. Just a reminder of the arguments:
\l@dparsedstartline \printlines #1 | #2 | #3 | #4 | #5 | #6 | #7
\l@dparsedstartsub \printlines start-page | line | subline | end-page | line | subline | fontflag
\l@dparsedendpage3167 \def\l@dp@rsefootsspec#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7|{%
\l@dparsedendline3168 \gdef\l@dparsedstartpage{#1}%
\l@dparsedendsub3169 \gdef\l@dparsedstartline{#2}%
3170 \gdef\l@dparsedstartsub{#3}%
3171 \gdef\l@dparsedendpage{#4}%
3172 \gdef\l@dparsedendline{#5}%
3173 \gdef\l@dparsedendsub{#6}%
3174 }
3175 %

```

Initialise the several number value macros.

```

3176 \def\l@dparsedstartpage{0}%
3177 \def\l@dparsedstartline{0}%
3178 \def\l@dparsedstartsub{0}%
3179 \def\l@dparsedendpage{0}%
3180 \def\l@dparsedendline{0}%
3181 \def\l@dparsedendsub{0}%
3182
3183 %

```

**\setprintlines** The macro `\setprintlines` does the work of deciding what numbers should be printed. Its arguments are the same as the first 6 of `\printlines`.

```

3184 \newcommand*{\setprintlines}[6]{%
3185 \l@d@pnumfalse \l@d@dashfalse
3186 %

```

We print the page numbers only if: 1) we are doing the lineation by page, and 2) the ending page number is different from the starting page number.a

```

3187 \ifbypage@
3188 \ifnum#4=#1 \else
3189 \l@d@pnumtrue
3190 \l@d@dashtrue
3191 \fi
3192 \fi
3193 %

```

We print the ending line number if: (1) we are printing the ending page number, or (2) it is different from the starting line number.

```

3194 \ifl@d@pnum \l@d@elintrue \else \l@d@elinfalse \fi
3195 \ifnum#2=#5 \else
3196     \l@d@elintrue
3197     \l@d@dashtrue
3198 \fi
3199 %

```

We print the starting sub-line if it is nonzero.

```

3200 \l@d@ssubfalse
3201 \ifnum#3=0 \else
3202     \l@d@ssubtrue
3203 \fi
3204 %

```

We print the ending sub-line if it is nonzero and: (1) it is different from the starting sub-line number, or (2) the ending line number is being printed.

```

3205 \l@d@eslfalse
3206 \ifnum#6=0 \else
3207     \ifnum#6=#3
3208         \ifl@d@elin \l@d@esltrue \else \l@d@eslfalse \fi
3209     \else
3210         \l@d@esltrue
3211         \l@d@dashtrue
3212     \fi
3213 \fi%
3214 %

```

However, if the `\Xtwolines` is set for the current series, we do not print the last line number.

```

3215 \ifl@d@dash%
3216 \ifboolexpr{togl{fulllines@} or test{\ifcsempy{Xtwolines@}\
@currentseries}}}%
3217 {}%
3218 {%
3219 \setistwofollowinglines{#1}{#2}{#4}{#5}%
3220 \ifboolexpr{%
3221     (%
3222         togl {Xtwolinesbutnotmore@\@currentseries}%
3223         and not%
3224         (%
3225             bool {istwofollowinglines@}%
3226             )%
3227     )%
3228     or%
3229     (%
3230         (not test{\ifnumequal{#1}{#4}})%
3231         and togl{Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage@\@currentseries}%

```

```

3232         )%
3233     }%
3234     {}%
3235     {%
3236     \l@d@dashfalse%
3237     \l@d@Xtwolinestrue%
3238     \l@d@elinfalse%
3239     \l@d@eslfalse%
3240     \ifcsempy{Xmorethantwelines@ \@currentseries}%
3241     {}%
3242     {\ifistwofollowinglines@ \else%
3243     \l@d@Xmorethantwolinestrue%
3244     \fi%
3245     }%
3246     }%
3247     }%
3248 \fi%
3249 %

End of \setprintlines.

3250 }%
3251 %

```

`\setistwofollowinglines` The `\ifistwofollowinglines` boolean, used by the `\Xtwolines` and related setting, is set to true by `\setistwofollowinglines`. This command takes the following arguments:

- #1 First page number.
- #2 First line number.
- #3 Last page number.
- #4 Last line number.

If  $\#3 - \#2 = 1$ , then that means the two lines are subsequent, and consequently `\ifistwofollowinglines` is set to true. However, if we use lineation by page, two given lines can be subsequent if:

- The first line number is equal to the last line number of the first page.
- The last line number is equal to 1.
- $\#3 - \#1$  is equal to 1.

```

3252 \newif\ifistwofollowinglines@%
3253 \newcommand{\setistwofollowinglines}[4]{%
3254     \ifcsdef{lastlinenumberon@#1}%
3255     {\numdef{\tmp}{\csuse{lastlinenumberon@#1}}}%
3256     {\numdef{\tmp}{0}}}%

```

```

3257 \istwofollowinglines@false%
3258 \ifnumequal{#4-#2}{1}%
3259 {\istwofollowinglines@true}%
3260 {\ifbypage%
3261   \ifnumequal{#3-#1}{1}%
3262   {%
3263     \ifnumequal{#2}{\tmp}%
3264     {\ifnumequal{#4}{1}{\istwofollowinglines@true}{}}%
3265     {}%
3266   }%
3267   {%
3268     \fi%
3269   }%
3270 }%
3271 %

```

`\printlines` So, we have decided which part of line number sets will be printed depending of these value. Now we are ready to print them. If the lineation is by pstart, we print the pstart. Arguments are 1) start page number 2) start line number 3) start subline number 4) end page number 5) end line number 6) end subline number 7) font specification 8) side flag

```

3272 \def\printlines#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7|#8|{%
3273   \begingroup%
3274   %

```

If we use Lua<sub>TEX</sub>, ensure we use good text's direction.

```

3275 \ifluatex%
3276   \edef\@tmp{\the\textdir}%
3277   \ifdefstring{\@tmp}{TLT}{\textdir TLT}%Test in order to prevent
    spurious space (bug #397)
3278   \fi%
3279   %

```

Decide which part of line number components we will print.

```

3280 \setprintlines{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}%
3281 %

```

One subtlety left here is when to print a period between numbers. But the only instance in which this is tricky is for the ending sub-line number: it could come after the starting sub-line number (in which case we want only the dash) or after an ending line number (in which case we need to insert a period). So, first, print the start line number.

```

3282 \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xboxstartlinenum@\@currentseries}}{0pt}%
3283   {\bgroup}%
3284   {\leavevmode\hbox to \csuse{Xboxstartlinenum@\@currentseries}\bgroup\
    hfill}%
3285   \ifl@d@pnum%
3286     \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@start}{#1}%
3287     \csuse{Xsublinesep@\@currentseries}%
3288     \fi%

```

```

3289 \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@start}{%
3290 \linenumrep{#2}%
3291 \iftoggle{Xlineflag@{\@currentseries}{#8}{}}%
3292 }%
3293 \ifl@d@ssub%
3294 \csuse{Xsublinesep@{\@currentseries}}%
3295 \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@start}{\sublinenumrep{#3}}%
3296 \fi
3297 \egroup%
3298 %

```

Then print the dash + end line number, or the range symbol.

```

3299 \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xboxendlinenum@{\@currentseries}}{0pt}%
3300 {\bgroup}%
3301 {\hbox to \csuse{Xboxendlinenum@{\@currentseries}}\bgroup}%
3302 \ifl@d@Xtwolines%
3303 \ifl@d@Xmorethantwolines%
3304 \csuse{Xmorethantwolines@{\@currentseries}}%
3305 \else%
3306 \csuse{Xtwolines@{\@currentseries}}%
3307 \fi%
3308 \else%
3309 \ifl@d@dash%
3310 \ifdefined\linangesep%
3311 \linangesep%
3312 \else%
3313 \csuse{Xlinangeseparator@{\@currentseries}}%
3314 \fi%
3315 \fi%
3316 \ifl@d@pnum%
3317 \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@end}{#4}%
3318 \csuse{Xsublinesep@{\@currentseries}}%
3319 \fi%
3320 \ifl@d@elin%
3321 \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@end}{%
3322 \linenumrep{#5}%
3323 \iftoggle{Xlineflag@{\@currentseries}{#8}{}}%
3324 }%
3325 \fi%
3326 \ifl@d@esl%
3327 \ifl@d@elin%
3328 \csuse{Xsublinesep@{\@currentseries}}%
3329 \fi%
3330 \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@end}{\sublinenumrep{#6}}%
3331 \fi%
3332 \fi%
3333 \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xboxendlinenum@{\@currentseries}}{0pt}%
3334 {}%
3335 {\hfill}%Prevent underfull hbox
3336 \egroup%

```



```

3337 \endgroup%
3338 }%
3339 %

```

## XIII Familiar footnotes

### XIII.1 Adjacent footnotes

The original edmac provided users with five series of critical footnotes (`\Afootnote` `\Bfootnote` `\Cfootnote` `\Dfootnote` `\Efootnote`), and  $\text{\LaTeX}$  provides a single numbered footnote. The `reledmac` package uses the edmac mechanism to provide six series of numbered footnotes.

First, though, the `footmisc` package has an option whereby two or more consecutive footnotes have their marks separated by commas. This seemed to Peter Wilson such a useful ability that it was provided automatically by `eledmac`.

Maïeul Rouquette has maintained this feature in `reledmac`, despite he thought that is not directly in relationship with the aim of `reledmac`.

`\multiplefootnotemarker` These macros may have been defined by the `memoir` class, are provided by the `footmisc` package and perhaps by other footnote packages. That is why we use `\providecommand` and not `\newcommand`.

`\multfootsep`

```

3340 \providecommand*\multiplefootnotemarker}{3sp}
3341 \providecommand*\multfootsep}{\textsuperscript{\normalfont,}}
3342
3343 %
3344

```

`\m@mmf@prepare` A pair of self-cancelling kerns. This may have been defined in the `memoir` class.

```

3344 \providecommand*\m@mmf@prepare}{%
3345 \kern-\multiplefootnotemarker
3346 \kern\multiplefootnotemarker\relax}
3347 %

```

`\m@mmf@check` This may have been defined in the `memoir` class. If it recognises the last kern as `\multiplefootnotemarker` it typesets `\multfootsep`.

```

3348 \providecommand*\m@mmf@check}{%
3349 \ifdim\lastkern=\multiplefootnotemarker\relax
3350 \edef\x@sf{\the\spacefactor}%
3351 \unkern
3352 \multfootsep
3353 \spacefactor\x@sf\relax
3354 \fi}
3355
3356 %

```

We have to modify `\@footnotetext` and `\@footnotemark`. However, if `memoir` is used the modifications have already been made.

```
3357 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}{}{%
3358 %
```

`\@footnotetext` Add `\m@mmf@prepare` at the end of `\@footnotetext`.

```
3359 \apptocmd{\@footnotetext}{\m@mmf@prepare}{}{}
3360 %
```

`\@footnotemark` Modify `\@footnotemark` to cater for adjacent footnotes.

```
3361 \patchcmd{\@footnotemark}
3362 {\nobreak}
3363 {\m@mmf@check
3364 \nobreak
3365 }
3366 {}{}
3367 \patchcmd{\@footnotemark}
3368 {\@makefnmark}
3369 {\@makefnmark
3370 \m@mmf@prepare
3371 }
3372 {}{}
3373 {}{}
3374 %
```

Finished the modifications for the non-memoir case.

```
3375 }
3376
3377 %
```

## XIII.2 Regular footnotes for numbered texts

`\l@doldold@footnotetext` In order to enable the regular footnotes in numbered text we have to play around with its `\@footnotetext`, using different forms for when in numbered or regular text.

```
3378 \pretocmd{\@footnotetext}{%
3379 \ifnumberedpar@
3380 \edtext{}{\l@dbfnote{#1}}}%
3381 \else
3382 }{}{}
3383 \apptocmd{\@footnotetext}{\fi}{}{}%
3384 %
```

```

\l@dbfnote \l@dbfnote adds the footnote to the insert list, and \vl@dbfnote calls the original
\vl@dbfnote \@footnotetext. We also patch \footnote in order to get the correct footnote
\vl@dbfnote numbers when typesetting parallel texts. This is moved into a \get@fnmark command.
\footnote
\get@fnmark
\get@thisfootnote
3385
3386 \patchcmd%
3387   {\footnote}%
3388   {\stepcounter\@mpfn}%
3389   {%
3390     \ifboolexpr{bool{l@dpairing} or bool{l@dprintingpages} or bool{
3391       l@dprintingcolumns}}{%
3392       \global\advance\footnote@reading by \@ne%
3393       \get@thisfootnote%
3394       \get@fnmark{\thisfootnote}%
3395       \ifcsdef{footnotereading\the\footnote@reading=typeset}%
3396         {\setcounter{\@mpfn}{\csuse{footnotereading\the\footnote@reading=
3397           typeset}}}%
3398         {\setcounter{\@mpfn}{\footnote@reading}}%
3399       }%
3400     }%
3401   {}
3402   {}
3403
3404 \newcommand{\get@thisfootnote}{%
3405   \ifboolexpr{bool{l@dpairing} or bool{l@dprintingpages} or bool{
3406     l@dprintingcolumns}}{%
3407     \protected@xdef\thisfootnote{\the\footnote@reading}%
3408     }{%
3409     \protected@xdef\thisfootnote{\the\c@footnote}%
3410     }%
3411 }%
3412
3413 \newcommand{\l@dbfnote}[1]{%
3414   \get@thisfootnote%
3415   \gdef\@tag{#1\relax}%
3416   \ifledRcol%
3417     \xright@appenditem{%
3418       \ifdefined\Hy@footnote@currentHref%
3419         \noexpand\def\noexpand\Hy@footnote@currentHref{\
3420           Hy@footnote@currentHref}%
3421       \fi%
3422       \noexpand\vl@dbfnote{\expandonce\@tag}{\thisfootnote}%
3423     }%
3424     \to\inserts@listR
3425     \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
3426   \else%
3427     \xright@appenditem{%

```

```

3426         \ifdefined\Hy@footnote@currentHref%
3427             \noexpand\def\noexpand\Hy@footnote@currentHref{\
Hy@footnote@currentHref}%
3428             \fi%
3429             \noexpand\vl@dbfnote{{\expandonce\@tag}}{\thisfootnote}%
3430         }%
3431             \to\inserts@list
3432             \global\advance\insert@count \one%
3433         \fi
3434         \ignorespaces%
3435     }%
3436
3437 \newcommand{\get@fnmark}[1]{%
3438     \ifboolexpr{bool{l@dpairing} or bool{l@dprintingpages} or bool{
l@dprintingcolumns}}{%
3439         {%
3440             \stepcounter{footnote@typeset}%
3441             \setcounter{footnote}{\c@footnote@typeset}%
3442             \immediate\write\@mainaux{%
3443                 \csgdef{footnotereading#1=typeset}{\the\c@footnote@typeset}%
3444             }%
3445             \def\@thefnmark{\thefootnote}%
3446         }%
3447         {%
3448             \@namedef{\@thefnmark}{#1}%
3449         }%
3450     }%
3451
3452 \newcommand{\vl@dbfnote}[2]{%
3453     \get@fnmark{#2}%
3454     \@footnotetext{#1}%
3455 }%
3456 %

```

### XIII.3 Footnote formats

Some of the code for the various formats is remarkably similar to that in section ??.

The following macros generally set things up for the ‘standard’ footnote format.

`\prebodyfootmark` Two convenience macros for use by `\...@footnotemark...` macros.  
`\postbodyfootmark`

```

3457 \newcommand*\prebodyfootmark{%
3458     \leavevmode
3459     \ifhmode
3460         \edef\@xsf{\the\spacefactor}%
3461         \m@mmf@check
3462         \nobreak
3463     \fi}
3464 \newcommand*\postbodyfootmark{%

```

```

3465 \m@mmf@prepare
3466 \ifhmode\spacefactor\@x@sf\fi\relax}
3467
3468 %

```

## XIII.4 Footnote arrangement

### XIII.4.1 User level macro

**\arrangementX** `\arrangementX[s]{arrangement}` command calls, for each series, a specific command which set many counters and commands in order to define specific arrangement.

```

3469 \newcommandx{\arrangementX}[2][1,usedefault]{%
3470   \def\do##1{%
3471     \csname arrangementX@#2\endcsname{##1}%
3472   }%
3473   \ifstrepty{#1}%
3474     {%
3475       \dolistloop{\@series}%
3476     }%
3477     {
3478       \docsvlist{#1}%
3479     }%
3480   }%
3481   %

```

### XIII.4.2 Normal footnotes

**\normal@footnotemarkX** `\normal@footnotemarkX{series}` sets up the typesetting of the marker at the point where the footnote is called for.

```

3482 \newcommand*{\normal@footnotemarkX}[1]{%
3483   \prebodyfootmark
3484   \wrapped@bodyfootmarkX{#1}%
3485   \postbodyfootmark}
3486
3487 %

```

**\normalbodyfootmarkX** The `\normalbodyfootmarkX{series}` *really* typesets the in-text marker. The style is the normal superscript.

```

3488 \newcommand*{\normalbodyfootmarkX}[1]{%
3489   \hbox{\textsuperscript{\normalfont\@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}}}}
3490 %

```

**\normalvfootnoteX** `\normalvfootnoteX{series}{text}` does the `\insert` for the *series* and calls the series' `\footfmt...` to format the *text*.

```

3491 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\normalvfootnoteX}[2]{%
3492   \csuse{beforeinsertingX@#1}%
3493   \insert\@nameuse{footins#1}\bgroup
3494     \hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{widthX@#1}\relax%
3495     \noindent\csuse{bhooknoteX@#1}%
3496     \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}%
3497     \footsplitskips
3498     \ifl@dpairing\ifl@dpadding\else%
3499       \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
3500     \fi\fi%
3501     \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3502     \spaceskip=\z@skip \xspaceskip=\z@skip
3503     \csuse{\csuse{footnote@dir}}\@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}\egroup}
3504
3505 %

```

`\mpnormalvfootnoteX` The minipage version.

```

3506 \newcommand*{\mpnormalvfootnoteX}[2]{%
3507   \get@thisfootnoteX{#1}%
3508   \get@fnmarkX{#1}{\thisfootnote}%
3509   \edef\this@footnoteX@reading{\the\csname footnote#1@reading\endcsname}%
3510   \global\setbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}\vbox{%
3511     \unvbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}
3512     \noindent\csuse{bhooknoteX@#1}%
3513     \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}%
3514     \hsize\columnwidth
3515     \@parboxrestore
3516     \color@begingroup
3517     \@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}\color@endgroup}}
3518
3519 %

```

`\normalfootfmtX` `\normalfootfmtX{<series>}{<text>}` typesets the footnote text, prepended by the marker.

```

3520 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\normalfootfmtX}[2]{%
3521   \ifluatex%
3522     \textdir\footnote@luatextextdir%
3523     \pardir\footnote@luatexpardir%
3524     \par%
3525   \fi%
3526   \protected@edef\@currentlabel{%
3527     \@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}%
3528   }%
3529   \ledsetnormalparstuffX{#1}%
3530   \hangindent=\csuse{hangindentX@#1}%
3531   \everypar{\hangindent=\csuse{hangindentX@#1}}%
3532   \rule\z@{\splittopskip}
3533   {\csuse{notenumbfontX@#1}\wrapped@footfootmarkX{#1}}%
3534   \csuse{wrapcontentX@#1}{#2}%

```

```

3535 \strut\par}}
3536
3537 %

```

**\normalfootfootmarkX** `\normalfootfootmarkX{<series>}` is called by `\normalfootfmtX` to typeset the footnote marker in the footer before the footnote text.

```

3538 \newcommand*{\normalfootfootmarkX}[1]{%
3539 \textsuperscript{\@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}}}%
3540
3541 %

```

**\normalfootstartX** `\normalfootstartX{<series>}` is the `<series>` footnote starting macro used in the output routine.

```

3542 \newcommand*{\normalfootstartX}[1]{%
3543 \ifdimequal{0pt}{\prenotesX@}{}%
3544 {%
3545 \iftoggle{prenotesX@}{%
3546 \togglefalse{prenotesX@}%
3547 \skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=%
3548 \glueexpr\csuse{prenotesX@}+\csuse{aftererruleX@#1}\relax%
3549 }%
3550 }%
3551 }%
3552 \vskip\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname%
3553 \leftskip=\z@
3554 \rightskip=\z@
3555 \ifl@dpairing\else%
3556 \hspace=\old@hspace%
3557 \fi%
3558 \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
3559 \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3560 \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
3561 }%
3562
3563 %

```

**\normalfootnoteruleX** The rule drawn before the footnote series group.

```

3564 \let\normalfootnoteruleX=\footnoterule
3565
3566 %

```

**\normalfootgroupX** `\normalfootgroupX{<series>}` sends the contents of the `<series>` insert box to the output page without alteration.

```

3567 \newcommand*{\normalfootgroupX}[1]{%
3568 \csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}%
3569 \unvbox\@nameuse{footins#1}%

```

```

3570 \hsize=\old@hsize%
3571 }%
3572
3573 %

```

`\mpnormalfootgroupX` The minipage version.

```

3574 \newcommand*{\mpnormalfootgroupX}[1]{%
3575 \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}
3576 \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
3577 \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
3578 \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
3579 \marks\parledgroup@type{footnoteX}%
3580 \fi\fi\normalcolor
3581 \ifparledgroup%
3582 \ifl@dpairing%
3583 \else%
3584 \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
3585 \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3586 \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
3587 \fi%
3588 \else%
3589 \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
3590 \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3591 \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
3592 \fi%
3593 \csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}%
3594 \unvbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}}
3595
3596 %

```

`\normalbfnoteX`

```

3598 \newcommand{\normalbfnoteX}[2]{%
3599 \get@thisfootnoteX{#1}%
3600 \ifledRcol%
3601 \ifluatex
3602 \footnotelang@lua[R]%
3603 \fi
3604 \@ifundefined{xpg@main@language}%if polyglossia
3605 {}%
3606 {\footnotelang@poly[R]}%
3607 \xright@appenditem{%
3608 \noexpand\led@set@index@fornote{#1}%
3609 \unexpanded{\def\this@footnoteX@reading}{\the\csname footnote#1
@reading\endcsname}%
3610 \noexpand\vbfnoteX{#1}{#2}{\expandonce\thisfootnote}%
3611 \noexpand\led@reinit@index@fornote%
3612 }%
3613 \to\inserts@listR

```



```

3614 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
3615 \else%
3616 \ifluatex
3617 \footnotelang@lua%
3618 \fi
3619 \@ifundefined{xpg@main@language}%if polyglossia
3620 {}%
3621 {\footnotelang@poly}%
3622 \xright@appenditem{%
3623 \noexpand\led@set@index@fornote{#1}%
3624 \unexpanded{\def\this@footnoteX@reading{\the\csname footnote#1
@reading\endcsname}%
3625 \noexpand\vbfnoteX{#1}{#2}{\expandonce\thisfootnote}%
3626 \noexpand\led@reinit@index@fornote%
3627 }%
3628 \to\inserts@list
3629 \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
3630 \fi
3631 \ignorespaces}
3632
3633 %

```

**\get@thisfootnoteX** The macro `\get@thisfootnote` command just saves the footnote number in the `\thisfootnote` macro, depending on the use of pairing environments.

```

3634 \newcommand{\get@thisfootnoteX}[1]{%
3635 \ifboolexpr{bool{l@dpairing} or bool{l@dprintingpages} or bool{
l@dprintingcolumns}}{%
3636 \protected@xdef\thisfootnote{\the\csname footnote#1@reading\endcsname
}%
3637 }{%
3638 \protected@xdef\thisfootnote{\the\csname c@footnote#1\endcsname}%
3639 }%
3640 }%
3641 %

```

**\vbfnoteX** This command calls the correct footnote-inserting commands.

```

3642 \newcommand{\vbfnoteX}[3]{%
3643 \get@fnmarkX{#1}{#3}%
3644 \@nameuse{regvfootnote#1}{#1}{#2}%
3645 }%
3646
3647 %

```

**\get@fnmarkX** This command gets the correct footnote number when typesetting parallel texts.

```

3648 \newcommand{\get@fnmarkX}[2]{%
3649 \ifboolexpr{bool{l@dpairing} or bool{l@dprintingpages} or bool{
l@dprintingcolumns}}{%

```

```

3650   {%
3651     \stepcounter{footnote#1@typeset}%
3652     \setcounter{footnote#1}{\value{footnote#1@typeset}}%
3653     \@namedef{@thefnmark#1}{\csuse{thefootnote#1}}%
3654     \immediate\write\@mainaux{%
3655       \csgdef{footnote#1reading#2=typeset}{\the\csname c@footnote#1
@typeset\endcsname}%
3656     }%
3657   }%
3658   {%
3659     \@namedef{@thefnmark#1}{#2}%
3660   }%
3661 }
3662 %
3663 %

```

```

\newcommand{\vnumfootnoteX}[2]{%
3665   \ifnumberedpar@
3666     \edtext{}{\normalbfnoteX{#1}{#2}}%
3667   \else
3668     \def\this@footnoteX@reading{\the\csname footnote#1@reading\endcsname}%
3669     \get@thisfootnoteX{#1}%
3670     \get@fnmarkX{#1}{\expandonce\thisfootnote}%
3671     \@nameuse{regvfootnote#1}{#1}{#2}%
3672   \fi}
3673 %
3674 %

```

`\arrangementX@normal` `\arrangementX@normal{<series>}` initialises the settings for the `<series>` footnotes. This should always be called for each series.

```

3675 \newcommand*{\arrangementX@normal}[1]{%
3676   \csgdef{series@displayX#1}{normal}
3677   \expandafter\let\csname footstart#1\endcsname=\normalfootstartX
3678   \@namedef{@footnotemark#1}{\normal@footnotemarkX{#1}}
3679   \@namedef{bodyfootmark#1}{\normalbodyfootmarkX{#1}}
3680   \expandafter\let\csname regvfootnote#1\endcsname=\normalvfootnoteX
3681   \expandafter\let\csname vfootnote#1\endcsname=\vnumfootnoteX
3682   \expandafter\let\csname footfmt#1\endcsname=\normalfootfmtX
3683   \@namedef{footfootmark#1}{\normalfootfootmarkX{#1}}
3684   \expandafter\let\csname footgroup#1\endcsname=\normalfootgroupX
3685   \expandafter\let\csname footnoterule#1\endcsname=\normalfootnoteruleX
3686   \count\csname footins#1\endcsname=1000
3687   \csxdef{default@footins#1}{1000}%Use to have note only for one side
3688   \dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}
3689   \skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}%
3690   \advance\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname by\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
3691 %

```

Additions for minipages.

```

3692 \ifnoledgroup@else%
3693   \expandafter\let\csname mpvfootnote#1\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnoteX
3694   \expandafter\let\csname mpfootgroup#1\endcsname=\mpnormalfootgroupX
3695   \count\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=1000
3696   \dimen\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}%
3697   \skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}%
3698   \advance\skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname by\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
3699 \fi
3700 }
3701
3702 %

```

### XIII.4.3 Two columns footnotes

The following macros set footnotes in two columns. It is assumed that the length of each footnote is less than the column width.

```

\arrangementX@twocol 103 \newcommand*\arrangementX@twocol}[1]{%
3704   \csgdef{series@displayX#1}{twocol}
3705   \expandafter\let\csname regvfootnote#1\endcsname=\twocolvfootnoteX
3706   \expandafter\let\csname footfmt#1\endcsname=\twocolfootfmtX
3707   \expandafter\let\csname footgroup#1\endcsname=\twocolfootgroupX
3708   \dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}%
3709   \skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}%
3710   \advance\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname by \csuse{afterruleX@#1}\relax%
3711   \twocolfootsetupX{#1}
3712   \ifnoledgroup@else%
3713     \expandafter\let\csname mpvfootnote#1\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnoteX
3714     \expandafter\let\csname mpfootgroup#1\endcsname=\mptwocolfootgroupX
3715     \skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}%
3716     \advance\skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname by\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
3717     \mptwocolfootsetupX{#1}
3718   \fi%
3719 }
3720
3721 %

```

```

\twocolfootsetupX \twocolfootsetupX{<series>}
\mptwocolfootsetupX
3722 \newcommand*\twocolfootsetupX}[1]{%
3723   \count\csname footins#1\endcsname 500
3724   \csxdef{default@footins#1}{500}%Use this to confine the notes to one
side only
3725   \multiply\dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname by \tw@}
3726 \newcommand*\mptwocolfootsetupX}[1]{%
3727   \count\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname 500
3728   \multiply\dimen\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname by \tw@}
3729
3730 %

```

`\twocolvfootnoteX` `\twocolvfootnoteX{<series>}`

```

3731 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\twocolvfootnoteX}[2]{%
3732   \csuse{beforeinsertingX@#1}%
3733   \insert\csname footins#1\endcsname\bgroup%
3734     \hspace=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{widthX@#1}\relax%
3735     \noindent\csuse{bhooknoteX@#1}%
3736     \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}%
3737     \footssplitsskip%
3738     \spaceskip=\z@skip \xspaceskip=\z@skip%
3739     \@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}\egroup}
3740
3741 %

```

`\twocolfootfmtX` `\twocolfootfmtX{<series>}`

```

3742 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\twocolfootfmtX}[2]{%
3743   \protected@edef\@currentlabel{%
3744     \@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}%
3745   }%
3746   \normal@pars%
3747   \hangindent=\csuse{hangindentX@#1}%
3748   \everypar{\hangindent=\csuse{hangindentX@#1}}%
3749   \hspace \csuse{hsizetwocolX@#1}%
3750   \nottoggle{parindentX@#1}{\parindent=\z@}{}%
3751   \tolerance=5000\relax%
3752   \par%
3753   \@tempdima=\parindent%
3754   \csuse{colalignX@#1}%
3755   \parindent=\@tempdima%
3756   {\hspace{\parindent}%
3757    \csuse{notenumfontX@#1}\wrapped@footfootmarkX{#1}\strut%
3758    \csuse{wrapcontentX@#1}{#2}%
3759    \strut\par}%
3760   \allowbreak%
3761 }%
3762
3763 %

```

`\twocolfootgroupX` `\twocolfootgroupX{<series>}`  
`\mptwocolfootgroupX`

```

3764 \newcommand*{\twocolfootgroupX}[1]{\csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}\csuse{
3765   notefontsizeX@#1}
3766   \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
3767   \expandafter
3768   \rigidbalanceX\csname footins#1\endcsname \tw@ \splittopskip}}
3769
3770 \newcommand*{\mptwocolfootgroupX}[1]{%
3771   \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}
3772   \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%

```

```

3772 \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
3773 \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
3774 \marks\parledgroup@type{footnoteX}%
3775 \fi\fi\normalcolor
3776 \ifparledgroup%
3777 \ifl@dpairing%
3778 \else%
3779 \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
3780 \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3781 \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
3782 \fi%
3783 \else%
3784 \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
3785 \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3786 \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
3787 \fi%
3788 \csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}%
3789 \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
3790 \expandafter
3791 \rigidbalanceX\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname \tw@ \splittopskip}}
3792
3793 %

```

#### XIII.4.4 Three columns footnotes

The following macros set footnotes in three columns. It is assumed that the length of each footnote is less than the column width.

```

\arrangementX@threecol  \newcommand*{\arrangementX@threecol}[1]{%
3795 \csgdef{series@displayX#1}{threecol}
3796 \expandafter\let\csname regvfootnote#1\endcsname=\threecolvfootnoteX
3797 \expandafter\let\csname footfmt#1\endcsname=\threecolfootfmtX
3798 \expandafter\let\csname footgroup#1\endcsname=\threecolfootgroupX
3799 \dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}%
3800 \skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}%
3801 \advance\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname by \csuse{afterruleX@#1}\relax%
3802 \threecolfootsetupX{#1}
3803 \ifnoledgroup@ \else%
3804 \expandafter\let\csname mpvfootnote#1\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnoteX
3805 \expandafter\let\csname mpfootgroup#1\endcsname=\mpthreecolfootgroupX
3806 \skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}%
3807 \advance\skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname by \csuse{afterruleX@#1}
3808 \mpthreecolfootsetupX{#1}
3809 \fi%
3810 }
3811
3812 %

```

```

\threecolfootsetupX \threecolfootsetupX{<series>}
\mpthreecolfootsetupX

```

```

3813 \newcommand*{\threecolfootsetupX}[1]{%
3814   \count\csname footins#1\endcsname 333
3815   \csxdef{default@footins#1}{333}%Use this to confine the notes to one
side only
3816   \multiply\dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname by \thr@@}
3817 \newcommand*{\mpthreecolfootsetupX}[1]{%
3818   \count\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname 333
3819   \multiply\dimen\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname by \thr@@}
3820
3821 %

```

`\threecolvfootnoteX` `\threecolvfootnoteX{<series>}{<text>}`

```

3822 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\threecolvfootnoteX}[2]{%
%
3823   \csuse{beforeinsertingX@#1}%
3824   \insert\csname footins#1\endcsname\bgroup%
3825     \hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{widthX@#1}\relax%
3826     \noindent\csuse{bhooknoteX@#1}%
3827     \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}%
3828     \footsplitskips%
3829     \@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}\egroup}
3830
3831 %

```

`\threecolfootfmtX` `\threecolfootfmtX{<series>}`

```

3832 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\threecolfootfmtX}[2]{%
3833   \protected@edef\@currentlabel{%
3834     \@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}%
3835   }%
3836   \hangindent=\csuse{hangindentX@#1}%
3837   \everypar{\hangindent=\csuse{hangindentX@#1}}%
3838   \normal@pars%
3839   \hsize \csuse{hsizethreecolX@#1}%
3840   \nottoggle{parindentX@#1}{\parindent=\z@}{}%
3841   \tolerance=5000\relax%
3842   \@tempdima=\parindent%
3843   \csuse{colalignX@#1}%
3844   \parindent=\@tempdima%
3845   {\hspace{\parindent}%
3846     \csuse{notenumfontX@#1}\wrapped@footfootmarkX{#1}\strut%
3847     \csuse{wrapcontentX@#1}{#2}%
3848     \strut\par}\allowbreak}
3849
3850 %

```

`\threecolfootgroupX` `\threecolfootgroupX{<series>}`  
`\mpthreecolfootgroupX`

```

3851 \newcommand*{\threecolfootgroupX}[1]{\csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}\csuse{
notefontsizeX@#1}
3852 \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
3853 \expandafter
3854 \rigidbalanceX\csname footins#1\endcsname \thr@@ \splittopskip}}
3855
3856 \newcommand*{\mpthreecolfootgroupX}[1]{\%
3857 \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}
3858 \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup
3859 \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
3860 \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
3861 \marks\parledgroup@type{footnoteX}%
3862 \fi\fi\normalcolor
3863 \ifparledgroup%
3864 \ifl@dpairing%
3865 \else%
3866 \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
3867 \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3868 \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
3869 \fi%
3870 \else%
3871 \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
3872 \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3873 \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
3874 \fi%
3875 \csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}%
3876 \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
3877 \expandafter
3878 \rigidbalanceX\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname \thr@@ \splittopskip}}
3879
3880 %

```

### XIII.4.5 Paragraphed footnotes

The following macros set footnotes as one paragraph.

`\arrangementX@threecol` `\footparagraphX{<series>}`

```

3881 \newcommand*{\arrangementX@paragraph}[1]{\%
3882 \csgdef{series@displayX#1}{paragraph}%
3883 \expandafter\let\csname footstart#1\endcsname=\parafootstartX
3884 \expandafter\let\csname regvfootnote#1\endcsname=\para@vfootnoteX
3885 \expandafter\let\csname footfmt#1\endcsname=\parafootfmtX
3886 \expandafter\let\csname footgroup#1\endcsname=\para@footgroupX
3887 \expandafter\let\csname footnoterule#1\endcsname=\normalfootnoteruleX
3888 \count\csname footins#1\endcsname=1000
3889 \csxdef{default@footins#1}{1000}%Use this to confine the notes to one
side only
3890 \dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}
3891 \skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}%

```

```

3892 \advance\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname by\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
3893 \para@footsetupX{#1}
3894 \ifnoledgroup\else
3895   \expandafter\let\csname mpvfootnote#1\endcsname=\mppara@vfootnoteX
3896   \expandafter\let\csname mpfootgroup#1\endcsname=\mppara@footgroupX
3897   \count\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=1000
3898   \dimen\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}
3899   \skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}%
3900   \advance\skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname by\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
3901 \fi
3902 }
3903
3904 %

```

`\para@footsetupX` `\para@footsetupX{<series>}`

```

3905 \newcommand*{\para@footsetupX}[1]{\csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}\csuse{
notefontsizeX@#1}
3906   \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
3907   \ifcsempy{widthX@#1}%
3908     {}%
3909     {\columnwidth=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{widthX@#1}\relax}%
3910   \dimen0=\baselineskip
3911   \multiply\dimen0 by 1024
3912   \divide\dimen0 by \columnwidth \multiply\dimen0 by \footfudgefiddle\relax
3913   %
3914   \expandafter
3915   \xdef\csname footfudgefactor#1\endcsname{%
     \expandafter\strip@pt\dimen0 }}
3916
3917 %

```

`\parafootstartX` `\parafootstartX{<series>}`

```

3918 \newcommand*{\parafootstartX}[1]{%
3919   \ifdimequal{Opt}{\prenotesX@}{}%
3920   {%
3921     \iftoggle{prenotesX@}{%
3922       \togglefalse{prenotesX@}%
3923       \skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=%
3924       \glueexpr\csuse{prenotesX@}+\csuse{afterruleX@#1}\relax%
3925     }%
3926     {}%
3927   }%
3928   \leftskip=\z@
3929   \rightskip=\z@
3930   \nottoggle{parindentX@#1}{\parindent=\z@}{}%
3931   \vskip\skip@nameuse{footins#1}%
3932   \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
3933   \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%

```



```

3934 \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
3935 }
3936
3937 %

```

```

\para@vfootnoteX \para@vfootnoteX{<series>}{<text>}
\mppara@vfootnoteX

```

```

3938 \newcommand*{\para@vfootnoteX}[2]{%
3939 \csuse{beforeinsertingX@#1}%
3940 \insert\csname footins#1\endcsname%
3941 \bgroup
3942 \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}
3943 \footsplitskips
3944 \setbox0=\vbox{\hsize=\maxdimen%
3945 \let\bidir@RTL@everypar\@empty%
3946 \noindent\csuse{bhooknoteX@#1}%
3947 \@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}}%
3948 \setbox0=\hbox{\unvvhX{0}{#1}}%
3949 \dp0=\z@
3950 \ht0=\csname footfudgefactor#1\endcsname\wd0
3951 \box0
3952 \penalty0
3953 \egroup}
3954 \newcommand*{\mppara@vfootnoteX}[2]{%
3955 \get@thisfootnoteX{#1}%
3956 \get@fnmarkX{#1}{\thisfootnote}%
3957 \edef\this@footnoteX@reading{\the\csname footnote#1@reading\endcsname}%
3958 \global\setbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}\vbox{%
3959 \unvvhX\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}
3960 \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}
3961 \footsplitskips
3962 \setbox0=\vbox{\hsize=\maxdimen%
3963 \let\bidir@RTL@everypar\@empty%
3964 \noindent\color@begingroup%
3965 \csuse{bhooknoteX@#1}%
3966 \@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}\color@endgroup}%
3967 \setbox0=\hbox{\unvvhX{0}{#1}}%
3968 \dp0=\z@
3969 \ht0=\csname footfudgefactor#1\endcsname\wd0
3970 \box0
3971 \penalty0}}
3972
3973 %

```

```

\unvvhX\newcommand*{\unvvhX}[2]{% 2th is optional for retro-compatibility
3975 \setbox0=\vbox{\unvvhX#1%
3976 \global\setbox1=\lastbox}%
3977 \unhbox1
3978 \unskip % remove \rightskip,

```

```

3979 \unskip          % remove \parfillskip,
3980 \unpenalty       % remove \penalty of 10000,
3981 \hskip\csuse{afternoteX@#2}%
3982 \relax}% but add the glue to go between the notes
3983
3984 %

```

`\parafootfmtX` `\parafootfmtX{<series>}`

```

3985 \newcommand*{\parafootfmtX}[2]{%
3986   \protected@edef\@currentlabel{%
3987     \@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}%
3988   }%
3989   \insertparafootsepX{#1}%
3990   \ledsetnormalparstuff@common%
3991   {\csuse{notenumfontX@#1}%
3992    \csuse{notenumfontX@#1}%
3993    \wrapped@footfootmarkX{#1}%
3994    \strut%
3995    \csuse{wrapcontentX@#1}{#2}%
3996    \penalty-10}}
3997
3998 %

```

`\para@footgroupX` `\para@footgroupX{<series>}`  
`\mppara@footgroupX`

```

3999 \newcommand*{\para@footgroupX}[1]{%
4000   \hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{widthX@#1}\relax%
4001   \unvbox\csname footins#1\endcsname
4002   \ifcsstring{raggedX@#1}{L}{\RaggedLeft}{}%
4003   \ifcsstring{raggedX@#1}{R}{\RaggedRight}{}%
4004   \makehboxofhboxes
4005   \setbox0=\hbox{\unhbox0 \removehboxes}%
4006   \csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}
4007   \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}
4008   \unhbox0\par}
4009
4010 \newcommand*{\mppara@footgroupX}[1]{%
4011   \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
4012   \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}
4013   \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup
4014     \leavevmode%
4015     \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
4016     \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
4017     \marks\parledgroup@type{footnoteX}%
4018     \fi\fi\normalcolor
4019   \ifparledgroup%
4020     \ifl@dpairing%
4021     \else%
4022       \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%

```

```

4023 \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
4024 \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
4025 \fi%
4026 \else%
4027 \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
4028 \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
4029 \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
4030 \fi%
4031 \unvbox\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname
4032 \ifcsstring{raggedX@#1}{L}{\RaggedLeft}{}%
4033 \ifcsstring{raggedX@#1}{R}{\RaggedRight}{}%
4034 \makehboxofhboxes
4035 \setbox0=\hbox{\unhbox0 \removehboxes}%
4036 \csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}%
4037 \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}%
4038 \nottoggle{parindentX@#1}{\parindent=\z@}{}%
4039 \unhbox0\par}}
4040
4041 %

```

**Insertion of the footnotes separator** The command `\insertparafootsepX{<series>}` must be called at the beginning of `\parafootftmX`.

```

\insertparafootsepX% \newcommand{\insertparafootsepX}[1]{%
4043 \ifledRcol%
4044 \ifnumequal{\csuse{prevpage#1@numR}}{\page@numR}%
4045 {\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}%
4046 {}%
4047 \global\csname prevpage#1@numR\endcsname=\page@numR%
4048 \else%
4049 \ifnumequal{\csuse{prevpage#1@num}}{\page@num}%
4050 {\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}%
4051 {}%
4052 \global\csname prevpage#1@num\endcsname=\page@num%
4053 \fi%
4054 }
4055 %

```

### XIII.5 Wrapping footnote marks in hyperlink

`\wrapped@footfootmarkX` `\wrapped@footfootmarkX` prints the footnote mark of the footpage, wrapped in `hyperref` package's commands, if needed.

```

4056 \newcommand{\wrapped@footfootmarkX}[1]{%
4057 \ifdefined\hypertarget%
4058 \hyperlink%
4059 {@bodyfootmark#1@\this@footnoteX@reading}%
4060 {\@nameuse{footfootmark#1}}%

```

```

4061 \Hy@raisedlink{%
4062   \hypertarget%
4063   {@footnotemark#1@\this@footnoteX@reading}%
4064   {}%
4065 }%
4066 \else%
4067   \@nameuse{footfootmark#1}%
4068 \fi%
4069 }%
4070 %

```

`\wrapped@bodyfootmarkX` `\wrapped@bodyfootmarkX` prints the footnote mark of the text body, wrapped in `hyperref` package’s commands, if needed.

```

4071 \newcommand{\wrapped@bodyfootmarkX}[1]{%
4072   \ifdefined\hypertarget%
4073     \hyperlink%
4074     {@footnotemark#1@\expandafter\the\csname footnote#1@reading\
endcsname}%
4075     {@@nameuse{bodyfootmark#1}}}%
4076   \Hy@raisedlink{%
4077     \hypertarget%
4078     {@bodyfootmark#1@\expandafter\the\csname footnote#1@reading\
endcsname}%
4079     {}%
4080   }%
4081   \else%
4082     \@nameuse{bodyfootmark#1}%
4083   \fi%
4084 }%
4085 %

```

## XIV Code common to both critical and familiar footnote in normal arrangement

`\par` should always be redefined to `\endgraf` within the format macro (this is what `\normal@pars` does), to override tricky material in the main text to get the lines numbered automatically (as set up by `\autopar`, for example).

In the case of footnote arranged in a “normal” way, we also must set some setting for paragraph indent and text direction when using `LuaLaTeX`.

That why we have defined `\ledsetnormalparstuff@common` in order to make this setting for both familiar and critical notes. This command is called by command to make specific setting to critical or familiar footnote.

```

\ledsetnormalparstuff@common%86 \newcommand*{\ledsetnormalparstuff@common}{%
\Xledsetnormalparstuff%87   \ifluatex%
\ledsetnormalparstuffX%88   \textdir\footnote@luatextextdir%

```

```

4089 \pardir\footnote@luatexpardir%
4090 \fi%
4091 \csuse{\csuse{footnote@dir}}%
4092 \normal@pars%
4093 \parfillskip \z@ \@plus 1fil}%
4094
4095 \newcommand*{\Xledsetnormalparstuff}[1]{%
4096 \ledsetnormalparstuff@common%
4097 \nottoggle{Xparindent@#1}{\parindent=\z@}{\hspace{\parindent}}}%
4098 }%
4099
4100 \newcommand*{\ledsetnormalparstuffX}[1]{%
4101 \ledsetnormalparstuff@common%
4102 \nottoggle{parindentX@#1}{\parindent=\z@}{\hspace{\parindent}}}%
4103 }%
4104 %

```

## XV Footnotes' width for two columns

We define here some commands which make sense only with `reledpar`, but must be called when defining notes parameters. These commands change the width of block notes to allow them to have the same size than two parallel columns.

`\old@hsize` These two commands are called at the beginning of critical or familiar notes groups. They set, if the option is enabled, the `\hsize`. They are also called at the on the setup for paragraphed notes.

`\noteswidthliketwocolumns@`

`\oteswidthliketwocolumnsX@`

```

4105
4106 \newdimen\old@hsize%
4107 \AtBeginDocument{\old@hsize=\hsize}%
4108
4109 \newcommand{\setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@}[1]{%
4110 \global\let\hsize@fornote=\hsize%
4111 \global\old@hsize=\hsize%
4112 \let\old@columnwidth=\columnwidth%
4113 \iftoggle{Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns@#1}%
4114 {%
4115 \csuse{setwidthliketwocolumns@\columns@position}%
4116 \global\let\hsize@fornote=\hsize%
4117 }%
4118 }%
4119 \let\hsize=\hsize@fornote%
4120 \let\columnwidth=\old@columnwidth%
4121 }%
4122
4123 \newcommand{\setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@}[1]{%
4124 \global\let\hsize@fornote=\hsize%
4125 \global\old@hsize=\hsize%
4126 \let\old@columnwidth=\columnwidth%

```

```

4127 \iftoggle{noteswidthliketwocolumnsX@#1}{%
4128   {%
4129     \csuse{setwidthliketwocolumns@\columns@position}%
4130     \global\let\hsize@fornote=\hsize%
4131   }%
4132   {%
4133     \let\hsize=\hsize@fornote%
4134     \let\columnwidth=\old@columnwidth%
4135   }%
4136
4137 %

```

`\setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@` These two commands set the position of the critical / familiar footnotes, depending on the hooks `Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns` and `noteswidthliketwocolumnsX`. They call commands which are defined only in `reledpar`, because this feature has no sens without `reledpar`.

`\setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@`

```

4138 \newcommand{\setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@}[1]{%
4139   \iftoggle{Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns@#1}{%
4140     \csuse{setnotespositionliketwocolumns@\columns@position}%
4141   }{%
4142   }%
4143
4144 \newcommand{\setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@}[1]{%
4145   \iftoggle{noteswidthliketwocolumnsX@#1}{%
4146     \csuse{setnotespositionliketwocolumns@\columns@position}%
4147   }{%
4148   }%
4149
4150 %

```

## XVI Footnotes' order

`\fnpos` The `\fnpos` and `\mpfnpos` simply place their arguments in `\@fnpos` and `\@mpfnpos`, which will be used later in the output routine.

`\mpfnpos`

```

4151 \def\@fnpos{familiar-critical}
4152 \def\@mpfnpos{critical-familiar}
4153 \newcommand{\fnpos}[1]{\xdef\@fnpos{#1}}
4154 \newcommand{\mpfnpos}[1]{\xdef\@mpfnpos{#1}}
4155 %

```

## XVII Footnotes' rule

Because the footnotes' rules can be shifted to the right when footnotes are set like two columns, we do not print them directly, but we put them in a `\vbox`.

```

\print@Xfootnoterule36 \newcommand{\print@Xfootnoterule}[1]{%
\print@footnoteXrule37 \vskip-\csuse{Xafterterrule@#1}%Because count in \dimen\csuse{#1footins}
4158 \nointerlineskip%
4159 \moveleft-\leftskip\vbox{\csuse{#1footnoterule}}%
4160 \nointerlineskip%
4161 \vskip\csuse{Xafterterrule@#1}%
4162 }%
4163
4164 \newcommand{\print@footnoteXrule}[1]{%
4165 \vskip-\csuse{afterterruleX@#1}%Because count in \dimen\csuse{footins#1}
4166 \nointerlineskip%
4167 \moveleft-\leftskip\vbox{\csuse{footnoterule#1}}%
4168 \nointerlineskip%
4169 \vskip\csuse{afterterruleX@#1}%
4170 }%
4171
4172 %

```

## XVIII Specific skip for first series of footnotes

### XVIII.0.1 Overview

`\Xbeforenotes` inserts a specific skip for the first series of notes in a page. As we can't know in advance which series will be the first, we call `\prepare@Xprenotes` before inserting any critical notes, in order to prevent page number overlapping.

1. If it is the first note of the current page, it changes the footnote skip for the series to the value specified to `\Xbeforenotes`. It also keeps the series of the note as the first one of the current page.
2. If it is not the first note of the current page:
  - If the current series is printed after the series kept as the first of the current page, then nothing happens.
  - If the current series is printed before the series kept as the first of the current page, then it changes the footnote skip of the current series to the value normally used by the series which was marked as the first of the page. It also keeps the current series as the new first one of the current page.

For example, suppose the series order is A,B. We call first a `\Bfootnote` and a `\Afootnote`. The only skips used are, finally, the skip specific to the first series of the page, and the skip for the B series. If we have not called `\Afootnote`, the only skip used is the skip specific to the first series of the page.

That is perfect.

The series skip and the first series of the current page are reset before the footnotes are printed. Then, the `footstart` macros manage the problem of the first series of the page.

After the rule, the space which is defined by `\Xafterrule` does not depend on whether the series is the first one of the page or not. So we use its normal value for each series.

And now, implementation !

### XVIII.0.2 User level command

`\Xprenotes@` If user redefines `\Xprenotes@`, via `\Xprenotes` to a value greater than 0 pt, this skip will be added before first series notes instead of the notes skip.

```

4173 \newtoggle{\Xprenotes@}%
4174 \toggletrue{\Xprenotes@}%
4175 \newcommand{\Xprenotes@}{Opt}%
4176 \newcommand*{\Xprenotes}[1]{\renewcommand{\Xprenotes@}{#1}}%
4177 \newcommand{\preXnotes}[1]{\led@warning@preXnotes@deprecated\Xprenotes{#1}}
    %For compatibility
4178 %

```

The same, but for familiar footnotes.

```

\Xprenotes 79 \newtoggle{\prenotesX@}
\Xprenotes@80 \toggletrue{\prenotesX@}
4181 \newcommand{\prenotesX@}{Opt}
4182 \newcommand*{\prenotesX}[1]{\renewcommand{\prenotesX@}{#1}}
4183 %

```

### XVIII.0.3 Internal commands

```

firstXseries@84 \gdef\firstXseries@{}
prepare@Xprenotes85 \newcommand{\prepare@Xprenotes}[1]{%
4186   \ifdimequal{Opt}{\Xprenotes@}%
4187   {%
4188     {%
4189       \IfStrEq{\firstXseries@}{}{%
4190         \global\skip\csuse{#1footins}=\Xprenotes@%
4191         \global\advance\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@
#1}%
4192         \gdef\firstXseries@{#1}%
4193       }%
4194     {%
4195       \ifseriesbefore{#1}{\firstXseries@}%
4196       {%
4197         \global\skip\csuse{#1footins}=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@\firstXseries@}%
4198         \global\advance\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@
#1}%
4199         \gdef\firstXseries@{#1}%
4200       }%
4201     }%

```



```

4202 }%
4203 }%
4204 }
4205 %

```

The same thing is required for familiar notes and `\prenotesX`.

```

firstseriesX@ \gdef\firstseriesX@{}
prepare@prenotesX@ \newcommand{\prepare@prenotesX}[1]{%
4208   \ifdimequal{0pt}{\prenotesX@}%
4209   {}%
4210   {%
4211     \IfStrEq{\firstseriesX@}{-}{%
4212       \global\skip\csuse{footins#1}=\prenotesX@%
4213       \global\advance\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname by\csuse{afterruleX@
#1}%
4214       \gdef\firstseriesX@{#1}%
4215     }%
4216     {%
4217       \ifseriesbefore{#1}{\firstseriesX@}%
4218       {%
4219         \global\skip\csuse{footins#1}=\csuse{beforenotesX@\firstseriesX@}%
4220         \global\advance\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname by\csuse{afterruleX@
#1}%
4221         \gdef\firstXseries@{#1}%
4222       }%
4223     }%
4224   }%
4225 }%
4226 }
4227 %

```

## XIX Endnotes

First, check the `noend` option.

```

4228 \ifbool{noend@}{-}{%Used instead of \ifnoend@ to prevent expansion problem
4229 %

```

### XIX.1 Internal commands

`\l@dend@open` and `\l@dend@close` are the macros that are used to open and close the endnote file. Note that all our writing to this file is `\immediate`: all page and line numbers for the endnotes are generated by the same mechanism we use for the footnotes, so that there is no need to defer any writing to catch information from the output routine. The argument of these two command is the series letter.

```

4230 \newcommand{\l@dend@open}[1]{%
4231   \global\booltrue{l@dend@#1}%
4232   \expandafter\immediate%
4233   \expandafter\openout%
4234   \csname l@d@#1end\endcsname%
4235   =\l@auxdir\jobname.#1end\relax%
4236 }%
4237 \newcommand{\l@dend@close}[1]{%
4238   \global\boolfalse{l@dend@#1}%
4239   \expandafter\immediate%
4240   \expandafter\closeout\csname l@d@#1end\endcsname%
4241 }%
4242
4243 %

```

**\l@dend@stuff** \l@dend@stuff is used by \beginnumbering to do everything that is necessary for the endnotes at the start of each section: it opens the \l@d@end file, if necessary, and writes the section number to the endnote file.

```

4244 \newcommand{\l@dend@stuff}{%
4245   \def\do##1{%
4246     \ifbool{l@dend@##1}{}%
4247     {\l@dend@open{##1}}%
4248     \expandafter\immediate\expandafter\write\csname l@d@##1end\endcsname{\
string\l@d@section{\the\section@num}}%
4249   }%
4250   \dolistloop{@series}%
4251 }%
4252
4253 %

```

**\endprint** The \endprint here is nearly identical in its functioning to \normalfootfmt.  
**\l@d@section** The endnote file also contains \l@d@section commands, which supply the section numbers from the main text; standard reledmac does nothing with this information, but it is there if you want to write custom macros to do something with it. Arguments are:

- #1 Line numbers and font selection.
- #2 Lemma.
- #3 Note content.
- #4 Series.
- #5 Optional argument of \Xendnote.
- #6 Side (L or R).
- #7 Label for cross-referencing.

```

4254 \global\newbool{parapparatus@}{\long}\def\endprint#1#2#3#4#5#6#7{
4255   \csuse{Xendbhooknote@#4}%
4256   \csuse{Xendnotefontsize@#4}%
4257   \hangindent=\csuse{Xendhangindent@#4}%
4258   \ifXendinsertsep%
4259     \hskip\csuse{Xendafternote@#4}\relax%
4260     \csuse{Xendsep@#4}%
4261   \else%
4262     \iftoggle{Xendparagraph@#4}%
4263       {\global\Xendinsertsep@true}%
4264     {}%
4265   \fi%
4266   \xdef\@currentseries{#4}%
4267   \def\do##1{%
4268     \setkeys[mac]{truefootnoteoption}{##1}%
4269   }%
4270   \notblank{#5}{\docsvlist{#5}}{}%
4271   \IfStrEq{#6}{R}{\ledRcol@true}{}%
4272   \def\@this@crossref@start{#7:start}%
4273   \def\@this@crossref@end{#7:end}%
4274   \printlineendnote{#1}{#4}%
4275   \IfStrEq{#6}{R}{\ledRcol@false}{}%
4276   \undef\@this@crossref@start%
4277   \undef\@this@crossref@end%
4278   \nottoggle{Xendlemmadisablefontselection@#4}%
4279   {\select@lemmafont#1}%
4280   {}%
4281   \bgroup%
4282     \csuse{Xendlemmafont@#4}%
4283     \csuse{Xendwraplemma@#4}{#2}%
4284   \egroup%
4285   \ifbool{expr}%
4286     togl {nosep@}%
4287     or test{\ifcempty{Xendlemmaseparator@#4}}%
4288   }%
4289   {\hskip\csuse{Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator@#4}\relax}%
4290   {\nobreak%
4291     \hskip\csuse{Xendbeforelemmaseparator@#4}%
4292     \csuse{Xendlemmaseparator@#4}%
4293     \hskip\csuse{Xendafterlemmaseparator@#4}%
4294     \relax%
4295   }%
4296   \csuse{Xendwrapcontent@#4}{#3}%
4297   \nottoggle{Xendparagraph@#4}{\par}{}%
4298   \def\do##1{%
4299     \setkeys[mac]{falsefootnoteoption}{##1}%
4300   }%
4301   \notblank{#5}{\docsvlist{#5}}{}%
4302 }%
4303

```

```

4304 \let\l@d@section=\@gobble
4305
4306 %

```

**\printlineendnote** This macro controls, in endnote, whether the line number is printed or not, according to the series options. Its first argument is the information about lines; its second is the series of the footnote.

```

4307 \newcommand{\printlineendnote}[2]{%
4308   \l@dp@rsefootspec#1|{%
4309     \iftoggle{Xendnumberonlyfirstintwolines@#2}{%
4310       \edef\lineinfo@{\l@dparsedstartpage - \l@dparsedstartline - \
4311         \l@dparsedstartsub - \l@dparsedendpage - \l@dparsedendline - \
4312         \l@dparsedendsub}%
4313       }%
4314       {%
4315         \edef\lineinfo@{\l@dparsedstartpage - \l@dparsedstartline - \
4316         \l@dparsedstartsub}%
4317       }%
4318       \ifboolexpr{%
4319         togl {nonum@}%
4320         or togl {Xendnonumber@#2}}%
4321       {%
4322         \iftoggle{Xendnumberonlyfirstinline@#2}%
4323         {\ifcsequal{prevendline#2}%
4324           {\ifcsequal{prevendline#2}{\lineinfo@}%
4325             {%
4326               \csuse{Xendbhookinplaceofnumber@#2}%
4327               \ifcsequal{Xendsymmlinenumber@#2}%
4328               {\hspace{\csuse{Xendinplaceofnumber@#2}}}%
4329               {\printlineendnotearea{#2}}}%
4330             \csuse{Xendahookinplaceofnumber@#2}%
4331             }%
4332             {\printlineendnotearea{#1}{#2}}}%
4333           }%
4334           {\printlineendnotearea{#1}{#2}}}%We keep every time line
4335         \csxdef{prevendline#2}{\lineinfo@}%
4336       }%
4337     }%
4338   }%

```

```

\printsymmlineendnotearea#1 \newcommand{\printsymmlineendnotearea}[1]{%
4340   \hspace{\csuse{Xendbeforemlinenumber@#1}}%
4341   \csuse{Xendnotenumfont@#1}%
4342   \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xendboxsymmlinenumber@#1}}{\z@}%
4343   {\csuse{Xendsymmlinenumber@#1}}%

```

```

4344     {\hbox to \csuse{Xendboxsymlinenum@#1}%
4345       {\csuse{Xendsymlinenum@#1}\hfill}%
4346     }%
4347     \hspace{\csuse{Xendaftersymlinenum@#1}}%
4348   }%
4349   %

```

**\printlineendnotearea** This macro prints the space before the line number, changes the font, then prints the line number and the space after it. It is called by `\endprint` depending of the options about repeating line numbers. The first argument is line information, the second is the notes series (A, B, C, etc.)

```

4350 \newcommand{\printlineendnotearea}[2]{%
4351   \csuse{Xendbhooklinenumber@#2}%
4352   \hspace{\csuse{Xendbeforenumber@#2}}%
4353   \bgroup%
4354   \csuse{Xendnotenumfont@#2}%
4355   \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xendboxlinenum@#2}}{0pt}%
4356     {\printendlines#1||\ifledRcol@\@Rlineflag\fi}%
4357     {\leavevmode%
4358       \hbox to \csuse{Xendboxlinenum@#2}%
4359       {%
4360         \IfSubStr{RC}{\csuse{Xendboxlinenumalign@#2}}{\hfill}{}%
4361         \printendlines#1||\ifledRcol@\@Rlineflag\fi%
4362         \IfSubStr{LC}{\csuse{Xendboxlinenumalign@#2}}{\hfill}{}%
4363       }%
4364     \egroup%
4365     \hspace{\csuse{Xendafternumber@#2}}%
4366     \csuse{Xendahooklinenumber@#2}%
4367   }%
4368   %

```

## XIX.2 User level commands

### XIX.2.1 Inserting contents to endnotes

The `\Xendnotes` commands are defined upper, when defining apparatus commands by series. Here, we define. only `\toendnotes` command not specific to a series, in order to insert arbitrary code. The regular version writes an unexpanded argument, while the regular version writes a once-expanded argument.

```

\toendnotes*69 \newcommandx{\toendnotes}[2][1,usedefault]{%
\toendnotes*70   \ifboolexpr{bool{numbering} or bool{numberingR}}{%
4371     \def\do##1{%
4372       \reledmac@warning{toto}\expandafter\immediate\expandafter\write\
csname l@d@##1end\endcsname%
4373       {\unexpanded{#2}\@percentchar}%
4374     }%
4375     \ifstrempy{#1}%

```

```

4376     {\dolistloop{\@series}}}%
4377     {\docsvlist{#1}}}%
4378   }{\led@err@toendnotes@outsidenumbering}%
4379 }%
4380 \WithSuffix\newcommandx\toendnotes*[2][1,usedefault]{%
4381   \ifboolexpr{bool{numbering} or bool{numberingR}}{%
4382     \def\do##1{%
4383       \reledmac@warning{toto}\expandafter\immediate\expandafter\write\
4384       csname l@d@##1end\endcsname%
4385       {#2\@percentchar}%
4386     }%
4387     \ifstrempy{#1}%
4388     {\dolistloop{\@series}}}%
4389     {\docsvlist{#1}}}%
4390   }{\led@err@toendnotes@outsidenumbering}%
4391 }%

```

### XIX.2.2 Printing endnotes

**\doendnotes** \doendnotes is the command you use to print one series of endnotes; it takes one argument: the series letter of the note series you want to print. **\Xendinsertsep@** is set to true at the first note of the series, and to false at the last one.

```

4392 \newif\ifXendinsertsep@
4393 \newcommand*{\doendnotes}[1]{%
4394   \l@dend@close{#1}%
4395   \begingroup
4396     \makeatletter
4397     \expandafter\let\csname #1end\endcsname=\endprint
4398     \input\l@auxdir\jobname.#1end%
4399     \global\Xendinsertsep@false%
4400   \endgroup}
4401 %

```

**\doendnotesbysection** \doendnotesbysection is a variant of the previous macro. While **\doendnotes** print endnotes for all of numbered sections **\doendnotesbysection** print the endnotes for the first numbered section at its first call for a series, then for the second section at its second call for the same series, then for the third section at its third call for the same series, and so on.

```

4402 \newcommand*{\doendnotesbysection}[1]{%
4403   \l@dend@close{#1}%
4404   \global\expandafter\advance\csname #1end@bysection\endcsname by 1%
4405   \begingroup%
4406     \makeatletter%
4407     \def\l@d@section##1{%
4408       \ifnumequal{##1}{\csname #1end@bysection\endcsname}%
4409       {\cslet{#1end}{\endprint}}}%

```

```

4410     {\cslet{#1end}{\@gobblefive}}}%
4411   }%
4412   \input\l@auxdir\jobname.#1end%
4413   \global\Xendinsertsep@false%
4414 \endgroup%
4415 }%
4416 %

```

We close now the conditional period, which depends on `\ifnoend@`, because the following commands can be used by other commands than those specific to endnotes.

```

4417 }%
4418 %

```

**\setprintendlines** The `\printendlines` macro is similar to `\printlines` but is for printing endnotes rather than footnotes.

The principal difference between foot- and endnotes is that footnotes are printed on the page where they are specified but endnotes are printed at a different point in the document. We need an indication of the source of an endnote; `\setprintendlines` provides this by always printing the page number. The coding is slightly simpler than `\setprintlines`.

First of all, we print the second page number only if the ending page number is different from the starting page number.

```

4419 \newcommand*{\setprintendlines}[6]{%
4420   \l@d@pnumfalse \l@d@dashfalse
4421   \ifnum#4=#1 \else
4422     \l@d@pnumtrue
4423     \l@d@dashtrue
4424   \fi
4425 %

```

We print the ending line number if: (1) we are printing the ending page number, or (2) it is different from the starting line number.

```

4426   \ifl@d@pnum \l@d@elintrue \else \l@d@elinfalse \fi
4427   \ifnum#2=#5 \else
4428     \l@d@elintrue
4429     \l@d@dashtrue
4430   \fi
4431 %

```

We print the starting sub-line if it is nonzero.

```

4432   \l@d@ssubfalse
4433   \ifnum#3=0 \else
4434     \l@d@ssubtrue
4435   \fi
4436 %

```

We print the ending sub-line if it is nonzero and: (1) it is different from the starting sub-line number, or (2) the ending line number is being printed.

```

4437 \l@d@eslfalse
4438 \ifnum#6=0 \else
4439     \ifnum#6=#3
4440         \ifl@d@elin \l@d@esltrue \else \l@d@eslfalse \fi
4441     \else
4442         \l@d@esltrue
4443         \l@d@dashtrue
4444     \fi
4445 \fi%
4446 %

4447 \ifl@d@dash%
4448     \ifboolexpr{togl{fulllines@} or test{\ifcempty{Xendtwolines@}\@currentseries}}}%
4449     {%
4450     {%
4451         \setistwofollowinglines{#1}{#2}{#4}{#5}%
4452         \ifboolexpr{%
4453             (%
4454                 togl {Xendtwolinesbutnotmore@\@currentseries}%
4455                 and not%
4456                 (%
4457                     bool {istwofollowinglines@}%
4458                 )%
4459             )%
4460             or%
4461             (%
4462                 (not test{\ifnumequal{#1}{#4}})%
4463                 and togl{Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage@\@currentseries}%
4464             )%
4465             }%
4466             {%
4467             {%
4468                 \l@d@dashfalse%
4469                 \l@d@Xtwolinestrue%
4470                 \l@d@elinfalse%
4471                 \l@d@eslfalse%
4472                 \ifcempty{Xendmorethantwolines@\@currentseries}%
4473                 {%
4474                     {\ifistwofollowinglines@\else%
4475                     \l@d@Xmorethantwolinestrue%
4476                     \fi%
4477                     }%
4478                 }%
4479             }%
4480         \fi%
4481     }%

End of \setprintendlines.

4482 }%

```



```
4483 %
```

**\printendlines** Now we are ready to print it all.

```
4484 \def\printendlines#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7|#8|{\begingroup
4485 \setprintendlines{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}%
4486 %
```

The only subtlety left here is when to print a period between numbers. But the only instance in which this is tricky is for the ending sub-line number: it could be coming after the starting sub-line number (in which case we want only the dash) or after an ending line number (in which case we need to insert a period).

So, first, print the start lines.

```
4487 \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xendboxstartlinenum@\@currentseries}}{0pt}%
4488 {\bgroup}%
4489 {\leavevmode\hbox to \csuse{Xendboxstartlinenum@\@currentseries}\bgroup
\hfill}%
4490 \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@start}{\printnnum{#1}}%
4491 \ifl@d@dash%
4492 \ifl@d@pnum%
4493 \csuse{Xendlineprefixsingle@\@currentseries}%
4494 \else%
4495 \ifcempty{Xendlineprefixmore@\@currentseries}%
4496 {\csuse{Xendlineprefixsingle@\@currentseries}}
4497 {\csuse{Xendlineprefixmore@\@currentseries}}%
4498 \fi%
4499 \else%
4500 \csuse{Xendlineprefixsingle@\@currentseries}%
4501 \fi%
4502 \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@start}{\linenumrep{#2}}%
4503 \iftoggle{Xendlineflag@\@currentseries}{\ifledRcol@\@Rlineflag\fi}{}%
4504 \ifl@d@ssub%
4505 \csuse{Xendsublinesep@\@currentseries}%
4506 \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@start}{\sublinenumrep{#3}}%
4507 \fi%
4508 \egroup%
4509 %
```

And now, print the dash + the end line number, or the line number range symbol.

```
4510 \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xendboxendlinenum@\@currentseries}}{0pt}%
4511 {\bgroup}%
4512 {\hbox to \csuse{Xendboxendlinenum@\@currentseries}\bgroup}%
4513 \ifl@d@Xtwolines%
4514 \ifl@d@Xmorethantwolines%
4515 \csuse{Xendmorethantwolines@\@currentseries}%
4516 \else%
4517 \csuse{Xendtwolines@\@currentseries}%
4518 \fi%
4519 \else%
```

```

4520 \ifl@d@dash%
4521 \ifdefined\linrangesep@%
4522 \linrangesep@%
4523 \else%
4524 \csuse{Xendlinrangeseparator@}\@currentseries}%
4525 \fi%
4526 \fi%
4527 \ifl@d@pnum%
4528 \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@end}\printnpnum{#4}%
4529 \fi%
4530 \ifl@d@elin%
4531 \ifl@d@pnum\csuse{Xendlineprefixsingle@}\@currentseries}\fi%
4532 \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@end}{\linenumrep{#5}}%
4533 \iftoggle{Xendlineflag@}\@currentseries}{\ifledRcol@}\@Rlineflag\fi}{}%
4534 \fi%
4535 \ifl@d@esl%
4536 \ifl@d@elin%
4537 \csuse{Xendsublinesep@}\@currentseries}%
4538 \fi%
4539 \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@end}{\sublinenumrep{#6}}%
4540 \fi%
4541 \fi%
4542 \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xendboxendlinenum@}\@currentseries}{0pt}%
4543 {}%
4544 {\hfill}%Prevent underfull hbox
4545 \egroup%
4546 \endgroup%
4547 }%
4548
4549 %

```

**\printnpnum** A macro to print a page number in an endnote. Should not be override anymore

```

4550 \newcommand*\printnpnum[1]{\csuse{Xendbeforepagenumber@}\@currentseries
4551 }#1\csuse{Xendafterpagenumber@}\@currentseries}%
4552 %

```

## XX Generate series of notes

In this section, X means the name of the series (A, B etc.)

**\series** \series\series creates one more new series. It is a public command, which just loops on the private command \newseries@.

```

4553 \newcommand{\newseries}[1]{%
4554 \def\do##1{\newseries@{##1}}%
4555 \docsvlist{#1}
4556 }
4557 %

```

`\@series` The `\series@` macro is an etoolbox list, which contains the name of all series.

```
4558 \newcommand{\@series}{}
4559 %
```

The command `\newseries@series` creates a new series of the footnote.

```
\newseries@80 \newcommand{\newseries@}[1]{
4561 %
```

## XX.1 Test if series is still existing

```
4562 \xifinlist{#1}{\@series}{\led@warn@SeriesStillExist{#1}}%
4563 {%
4564 %
```

## XX.2 Init specific to reledpar

When calling `\newseries@` after having loaded `reledpar`, we need to load specific setting.

```
4565 \ifdefined\newseries@par%
4566 \newseries@par{#1}%
4567 \fi%
4568 %
```

## XX.3 For critical footnotes

Critical footnotes are those which start with letters. We look for the `\nocritical` option of `reledmac`.

```
4569 \unless\ifnocritical@
4570 %
```

### XX.3.1 Options

```
4571 \newtoggle{Xlineflag@#1}
4572 \newtoggle{Xparindent@#1}
4573 \newtoggle{Xlemmadisablefontselection@#1}
4574 \csgdef{Xwrapcontent@#1}{}%
4575 \csgdef{Xbeforeinserting@#1}{}%
4576 \csgdef{Xhangindent@#1}{Opt}%
4577 \csgdef{Xragged@#1}{}%
4578 \csgdef{Xhsizetwocol@#1}{0.45 \hsize}%
4579 \csgdef{Xhsizethreecol@#1}{.3 \hsize}%
4580 \csgdef{Xcolalign@#1}{\raggedright}%
4581 \csgdef{Xnotenumfont@#1}{\normalfont}%
4582 \csgdef{Xnotefontsize@#1}{\footnotesize}%

```

```

4583 \csgdef{Xbhooknote@#1}{}%
4584 \csgdef{Xbhookgroup@#1}{}%
4585
4586 \csgdef{Xboxlinenum@#1}{Opt}%
4587 \csgdef{Xboxlinenumalign@#1}{L}%
4588
4589 \csgdef{Xboxstartlinenum@#1}{Opt}%
4590 \csgdef{Xboxendlinenum@#1}{Opt}%
4591
4592 \csgdef{Xboxsymlinenum@#1}{Opt}%
4593 \newtoggle{Xnumberonlyfirstinline@#1}%
4594 \newtoggle{Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines@#1}%
4595 \csgdef{Xtwolines@#1}{}%
4596 \csgdef{Xmorethantwolines@#1}{}%
4597 \csgdef{Xsublinesep@#1}{\fullstop}%
4598 \newtoggle{Xtwolinesbutnotmore@#1}%
4599 \newtoggle{Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage@#1}%
4600 \newtoggle{Xonlypstart@#1}%
4601 \newtoggle{Xpstarteverytime@#1}%
4602 \newtoggle{Xpstart@#1}%
4603 \newtoggle{Xstanza@#1}%
4604 \csgdef{Xstanzaseparator@#1}{}%
4605 \csgdef{Xsymlinenum@#1}{}%
4606 \newtoggle{Xnonumber@#1}%
4607 \csgdef{Xbeforenumber@#1}{Opt}%
4608 \csgdef{Xtxtbeforenumber@#1}{}%
4609 \csgdef{Xafternumber@#1}{0.5em}%
4610 \newtoggle{Xnonbreakableafternumber@#1}%
4611 \csgdef{Xbeforesymlinenum@#1}{\csuse{Xbeforenumber@#1}}%
4612 \csgdef{Xaftersymlinenum@#1}{\csuse{Xafternumber@#1}}%
4613 \csgdef{Xinplaceofnumber@#1}{1em}%
4614 \global\cslet{Xlemmaseparator@#1}{\rbracket}%
4615 \csgdef{Xbeforelemmaseparator@#1}{0em}%
4616 \csgdef{Xafterlemmaseparator@#1}{0.5em}%
4617 \csgdef{Xinplaceoflemmaseparator@#1}{1em}%
4618 \csgdef{Xbeforenotes@#1}{1.2em \@plus .6em \@minus .6em}%
4619 \csgdef{Xafterrule@#1}{Opt}%
4620
4621 \csgdef{Xtxtbeforenotes@#1}{%
4622 \newtoggle{Xtxtbeforenotes@#1@typeset}}%Not directly used by user,
but internal
4623
4624 \csgdef{Xmaxhnotes@#1}{0.8\vsizel}%
4625 \newtoggle{Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns@#1}%
4626 \csgdef{Xparafootsep@#1}{}%
4627 \csgdef{Xafternote@#1}{1em plus .4em minus .4em}%
4628 \csgdef{Xlinrangeseparator@#1}{\endashchar}%
4629
4630 \csgdef{Xlemmafont@#1}{}%
4631 \csgdef{Xwraplemma@#1}{%

```

```

4632 \csgdef{Xwidth@#1}{\hsize}%
4633 %

```

### XX.3.2 Create inserts, needed to add notes in foot

As regards inserts, see chapter 15 of *The TeXbook* by D. Knuth.

```

4634 \expandafter\newinsert\csname #1footins\endcsname%
4635 \unless\ifnoledgroup%
4636 \expandafter\newinsert\csname mp#1footins\endcsname%
4637 \fi%
4638 %

```

### XX.3.3 Create commands for critical apparatus, \Afootnote, \Bfootnote etc.

Note the double # in command: it is because command it is made inside another command.

```

4639 \global\newbool{parapparatus@}{\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter
*}{\expandafter\newcommand}\csname #1footnote\endcsname[2][ ]{%
4640 \if@edtext@secondarg%
4641 \ifledRcol%
4642 \ifcsstring{Xonlyside@#1}{L}{\
led@error@note@called@onrightside{#1footnote}}}%
4643 \else%
4644 \ifcsstring{Xonlyside@#1}{R}{\
led@error@note@called@onleftside{#1footnote}}}%
4645 \fi%
4646 \begingroup%
4647 \newcommand{\content}{##2}%
4648 \ifnumberedpar@%
4649 \ifledRcol%
4650 \ifluatex%
4651 \footnotelang@lua[R]%
4652 \fi%
4653 \@ifundefined{xpg@main@language}%if polyglossia
4654 {}%
4655 {\footnotelang@poly[R]}%
4656 \footnoteoptions@{R}{##1}{true}%
4657 \xright@appenditem{%
4658 \ifbool{indtl@innote}%
4659 {\unexpanded{\let\index\nindex}}%
4660 {}%
4661 \ifbool{indtl@notenumber}%
4662 {\unexpanded{\let\index\nindex}}%There is no note
...number so
4663 {}%
4664 \noexpand\Xnote@true%
4665 \noexpand\prepare@Xprenotes{#1}%
4666 \noexpand\prepare@edindex@fornote{\l@d@nums}%

```

```

4667 \unexpanded{\def\sw@list@inedtext}{\expandafter\
unexpanded\expandafter{\sw@inthisedtext}}%The value of the \sw@inthisedtext
of current \edtext will be pushed to \sw@list@inedtext when the notes are
expanded.
4668 \noexpand\setcounter{stanzaR}{\the\c@stanzaR}%Save
stanzaR counter for footnote
4669 \unexpanded{\def\@this@crossref@start}{\theedtext:
start}%
4670 \unexpanded{\def\@this@crossref@end}{\theedtext:end}%
4671 \expandonce{\@beforeinsertofthisedtext}% Internal for
now, no reason to make it public
4672 \noexpand\csuse{v#1footnote}{#1}%
4673 {{\l@d@nums}{\expandonce\@tag}{\expandonce\content}}
%
4674 \noexpand\Xnote@false%
4675 \unexpanded{\undef\@this@crossref@start}%
4676 \unexpanded{\undef\@this@crossref@end}%
4677 \ifbool{indtl@innote}%
4678 {\unexpanded{\let\index\orig@index}}%
4679 {}%
4680 \ifbool{indtl@notenumber}%
4681 {\unexpanded{\let\index\orig@index}}%
4682 {}%
4683 }\to\inserts@listR
4684 \footnoteoptions@{R}{#1}{false}%
4685 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
4686 \else%
4687 \ifluatex%
4688 \footnotelang@lua%
4689 \fi%
4690 \@ifundefined{xpg@main@language}%if polyglossia
4691 {}%
4692 {\footnotelang@poly}%
4693 \footnoteoptions@{L}{#1}{true}%
4694 \xright@appenditem{%
4695 \ifbool{indtl@innote}%
4696 {\unexpanded{\let\index\nindex}}%
4697 {}%
4698 \ifbool{indtl@notenumber}%
4699 {\unexpanded{\let\index\nindex}}%There is no note
...number so
4700 {}%
4701 \noexpand\Xnote@true%
4702 \noexpand\prepare@Xprenotes{#1}%
4703 \noexpand\prepare@edindex@fornote{\l@d@nums}%
4704 \unexpanded{\def\sw@list@inedtext}{\expandafter\
unexpanded\expandafter{\sw@inthisedtext}}%The value of the \sw@inthisedtext
of current edtext will be pushed to \sw@list@inedtext when the notes are
expanded.
4705 \ifl@pairing%

```

```

4706 \noexpand\setcounter{stanzaL}{\the\c@stanzaL}%Save
stanzaR counter for footnote
4707 \fi%
4708 \unexpanded{\def\@this@crossref@start}{\theedtext:
start}}%
4709 \unexpanded{\def\@this@crossref@end}{\theedtext:end}%
4710 \expandonce{\@beforeinsertofthisedtext}%Internal for
now, no reason to make it public
4711 \noexpand\csuse{v#1footnote}%
4712 {#1}%
4713 {{\l@d@nums}{\expandonce\@tag}{\expandonce\content
}}}%
4714 \unexpanded{\undef\@this@crossref@start}%
4715 \unexpanded{\undef\@this@crossref@end}%
4716 \noexpand\Xnote@false%
4717 \ifbool{indtl@innote}%
4718 {\unexpanded{\let\index\orig@@index}}%
4719 {}%
4720 \ifbool{indtl@notenumber}%
4721 {\unexpanded{\let\index\orig@@index}}%
4722 {}%
4723 }\to\inserts@list
4724 \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
4725 \footnoteoptions@{L}{#1}{false}%
4726 \fi
4727 \else
4728 \csuse{v#1footnote}{#1}{{0|0|0|0|0|0|0|0}{#1}}%
4729 \fi%
4730 \endgroup%
4731 \else%
4732 \led@err@FootnoteNotInSecondArgEdtext{#1}%
4733 \fi%
4734 \ignorespaces%
4735 }
4736 %

```

Create counter used to determine on which page the previous note was called.

```

4737 \expandafter\newcount\csname #1prevpage@num\endcsname%
4738 \expandafter\newcount\csname #1prevpage@numR\endcsname%
4739 %

```

We need to be able to modify reledmac's footnote macros and restore their

```

4740 \global\csletcs{#1@@footnote}{#1footnote}
4741 %

```

### XX.3.4 Set standard display

```

4742 \Xarrangement@normal{#1}%
4743 %

```

End of for critical footnotes.

```
4744 \fi
4745 %
```

## XX.4 For familiar footnotes

Familiar footnotes are those which end with letters. We look for the `nofamiliar` option of `reledmac`.

```
4746 \unless\ifnofamiliar@
4747 %
```

### XX.4.1 Options

```
4748 \newtoggle{parindentX@#1}
4749 \csgdef{wrapcontentX@#1}{}%
4750 \csgdef{hangindentX@#1}{Opt}%
4751 \csgdef{beforeinsertingX@#1}{}%
4752 \csgdef{raggedX@#1}{}%
4753 \csgdef{hsizetwocolX@#1}{0.45 \hsize}%
4754 \csgdef{hsizethreecolX@#1}{.3 \hsize}%
4755 \csgdef{colalignX@#1}{\raggedright}%
4756 \csgdef{notenumfontX@#1}{\normalfont}%
4757 \csgdef{notefontsizeX@#1}{\footnotesize}%
4758 \csgdef{bhooknoteX@#1}{}%
4759 \csgdef{bhookgroupX@#1}{}%
4760 \csgdef{afterruleX@#1}{Opt}
4761 \csgdef{beforenotesX@#1}{1.2em \@plus .6em \@minus .6em}
4762 \csgdef{maxhnotesX@#1}{0.8\vsizex}%
4763 \newtoggle{noteswidthliketwocolumnsX@#1}%
4764 \csgdef{parafootsepX@#1}{}%
4765 \csgdef{afternoteX@#1}{1em plus.4em minus.4em}
4766 \csgdef{widthX@#1}{\hsizex}%
4767 % End of for familiar footnotes.
4768 % \subsubsection{Create inserts, needed to add notes in foot}
4769 % As regards inserts, see chapter 15 of the TeXBook by D. Knuth.
4770 % \begin{macrocode}
4771 \expandafter\newinsert\csname footins#1\endcsname%
4772 \unless\ifnoledgroup@%
4773 \expandafter\newinsert\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname%
4774 \fi%
4775 %
```

### XX.4.2 Create tools for familiar footnotes (\footnoteX)

First, create the `\footnoteX` command. Note the double # in command: it is because a command is called inside another command.

```
4776 \global\expandafter\newcommand\csname footnote#1\endcsname[1]{%
4777
```



```

4778     \begingroup%
4779         \prepare@prenotesX{#1}%
4780         \newcommand{\content}{##1}%
4781 %

```

If we are preparing parallel typesetting, we cannot just increase the footnote counter. Read `reledpar`'s handbook about that (V.1.2 p. 47).

```

4782     \global\expandafter\advance\csname footnote#1@reading\
endcsname by \@ne%
4783     \ifboolexpr{bool{!@dpairing} or bool{!@dprintingpages} or
bool{!@dprintingcolumns}}{%
4784         \ifcsdef{footnote#1@reading\the\csname footnote#1@reading\
endcsname=typeset}%
4785             {\setcounter{footnote#1}{\csuse{footnote#1@reading\the\
csname footnote#1@reading\endcsname=typeset}}}%
4786             {\setcounter{footnote#1}{\the\csname footnote#1@reading
\endcsname}}}%
4787     }{%
4788         \stepcounter{footnote#1}%
4789     }%
4790 %

```

We also have to check consistency with `\onlysideX` setting.

```

4791     \ifledRcol%
4792         \ifcsstring{onlysideX@#1}{L}{\
led@error@note@called@onrightside{footnote#1}}{%
4793     }%
4794     \else%
4795         \ifcsstring{onlysideX@#1}{R}{\
led@error@note@called@onleftside{footnote#1}}{%
4796     }%
4797     \fi%
4798 %

```

And now, the feature not depending of whether we are preparing parallel typesetting

```

4797     \protected@csxdef{@thefnmark#1}{\csuse{thefootnote#1}}%
4798     \nottoggle{nomk@}%Nomk is set to true when using \
footnoteXnomk with \parpackage
4799     {\csuse{@footnotemark#1}}%
4800     {}%
4801     \ifluatex%
4802         \xdef\footnote@luatextextdir{\the\textdir}%
4803         \xdef\footnote@luatexpardir{\the\pardir}%
4804     \fi%
4805     \if@ledgroup%
4806         \led@set@index@fornote{#1}%
4807     \fi%
4808     \csuse{vfootnote#1}{#1}{\expandonce\content}\m@mmf@prepare%
4809     \ifbool{indtl@innote}%
4810         {\let\index\orig@@index}%
4811     }%

```

```

4812         \ifbool{indtl@notenumber}%
4813         {\let\index\orig@index}%
4814         }%
4815     \endgroup%
4816 }
4817 %

```

Then define the counters. The  $\TeX$  counter `footnoteX` is the only one manipulated by the user. This is the one which is printed. The  $\TeX$  counter `\footnoteX@reading` is increased at each footnote. It is used for hyperlinks, for using `hyperlink` package, and for getting the correct footnote number when using parallel typesetting (V.1.2 p. 47).

```

4818     \newcounter{footnote#1}
4819     \global\expandafter\renewcommand\csname thefootnote#1\endcsname{\
arabic{footnote#1}}
4820     \expandafter\newcount\csname footnote#1@reading\endcsname%
4821 %

```

Create counter used to determine on which page the previous note was called.

```

4822     \expandafter\newcount\csname prevpage#1@num\endcsname%
4823     \expandafter\newcount\csname prevpage#1@numR\endcsname%
4824 %

```

Add `\let\footnoteX\@gobble` to `\no@expands`.

```

4825     \expandafter\gappto\expandafter\no@expands\expandafter{\expandafter\
let\csname footnote#1\endcsname\@gobble}%
4826 %

```

Do not forget to initialize the series

```

4827     \arrangementX@normal{#1}%
4828     \fi
4829 %

```

## XX.5 The endnotes

Endnotes are commands like `\Xendnote`, where `X` is a series letter. First, we check for the `noend` options.

```

4830     \unless\ifnoend@
4831 %

```

### XX.5.1 The auxiliary file

`\l@d@Xend` Endnotes of all varieties are saved up in a file, one by series, typically named `\jobname.Xend`.  
`\ifl@dend@X` `\l@d@end` is the output stream number for this file, and `\ifl@dend@X` is a flag that is  
`\l@dend@Xtrue` true when the file is open.  
`\l@dend@Xfalse`

```

4832     \expandafter\newwrite\csname l@d@#1end\endcsname%
4833     \expandafter\newif\csname ifl@dend@#1\endcsname%
4834 %

```

### XX.5.2 The main macro

The `\Xendnote` macro functions to write one endnote to the `.Xend` file. We change `\newlinechar` so that in the file every space becomes the start of a new line; this generally ensures that a long note does not exceed restrictions on the length of lines in files.

```

4835 \global\expandafter\newcommand\csname #1endnote\endcsname[2][1,
4836 usedefault]{%
4837 \bgroup%
4838 \newlinechar='40%
4839 \global\@noneed@Footnotetrue%
4840 \newcommand{\content}{##2}%
4841 \stepcounter{labidx}%
4842 \expandafter\immediate\expandafter\write\csname l@d@#1end\
endcsname{%
4843 \unexpanded{\def\sw@list@inedtext}{\expandafter\unexpanded\
expandafter{\sw@inthisedtext}} %Voluntary space, to add linebreak in the
output file
4844 \expandafter\string\csname #1end\endcsname%
4845 {\ifnumberedpar@l@d@nums\fi}%
4846 {\ifnumberedpar@\expandonce\@tag\fi}%
4847 {\expandonce\content}%
4848 {\#1}%
4849 {\unexpanded{##1}}%
4850 {\ifledRcol R\else L\fi}%
4851 {\theedtext}%
4852 \@percentchar%
4853 }%
4854 \egroup%
4855 \ignorespaces%
4856 }%
4857 %

```

### XX.5.3 Tools

The `\Xtoendnotes` command inserts any arbitrary content into the endnote file. It is an alias of the more generalist `\addtoennotes`

```

4858 \global\expandafter\newcommand\csname #1toendnotes\endcsname[1]{%
4859 \toendnotes[#1]{##1}%
4860 }%
4861
4862 \expandafter\WithSuffix\expandafter\newcommand\csname #1toendnotes\
endcsname*[1]{%
4863 \toendnotes*[#1]{##1}%
4864 }%
4865
4866

```

```
4867 %
```

### XX.5.4 Internal commands

\Xendnote commands called \Xend commands on to the endnote file; these are analogous to the various footfmt commands above, and they take the same arguments. When we process this file, we want to pick out the notes of one series and ignore all the rest. To do that, we equate the end command for the series we want to \endprint, and leave the rest equated to \@gobblefive, which just skips over its five arguments.

```
4868
4869 \global\cslet{#1end}{\@gobblefive}
4870 %
```

We need to store the number of times \doendnotesbysection is called for one series.

```
4871 \global\expandafter\newcount\csname #1end@bysection\endcsname%
4872 %
```

### XX.5.5 The options

```
4873 \csgdef{Xendwraplemma@#1}{%
4874 \csgdef{Xendwrapcontent@#1}{}%
4875 \csgdef{Xendtwolines@#1}{}%
4876 \csgdef{Xendmoreethantwolines@#1}{}%
4877 \newtoggle{Xendtwolinesbutnotmore@#1}{}%
4878 \newtoggle{Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage@#1}{}%
4879 \newtoggle{Xendlemmadisablefontselection@#1}{}%
4880 \csgdef{Xendnotenumfont@#1}{\normalfont}%
4881 \csgdef{Xendnotefontsize@#1}{\footnotesize}%
4882 \csgdef{Xendbhooknote@#1}{}%
4883
4884 \csgdef{Xendsublinesep@#1}{\fullstop}%
4885
4886 \csgdef{Xendbeforenumber@#1}{0pt}
4887 \csgdef{Xendafternumber@#1}{0.5em}
4888
4889 \csgdef{Xendboxlinenum@#1}{0pt}%
4890 \csgdef{Xendboxlinenumalign@#1}{L}%
4891
4892 \csgdef{Xendboxstartlinenum@#1}{0pt}%
4893 \csgdef{Xendboxendlinenum@#1}{0pt}%
4894
4895 \csgdef{Xendlemmaseparator@#1}{}%
4896 \csgdef{Xendbeforelemmaseparator@#1}{0em}%
4897 \csgdef{Xendafterlemmaseparator@#1}{0.5em}%
4898 \csgdef{Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator@#1}{0.5em}%
4899
4900 \newtoggle{Xendparagraph@#1}{%}
```

```

4901 \csgdef{Xendafternote@#1}{1em plus.4em minus.4em}%
4902 \csgdef{Xendsep@#1}{}%
4903
4904 \csgdef{Xendinplaceofnumber@#1}{0pt}%
4905 \newtoggle{Xendnonumber@#1}%
4906
4907 \csgdef{Xendhangindent@#1}{0pt}%
4908 \newtoggle{Xendnumberonlyfirstinline@#1}%
4909 \newtoggle{Xendnumberonlyfirstintwolines@#1}%
4910
4911 \csgdef{Xendbeforesymmlinenumber@#1}{\csuse{Xendbeforenumber@#1}}%
4912 \csgdef{Xendaftersymmlinenumber@#1}{\csuse{Xendafternumber@#1}}%
4913 \csgdef{Xendsymmlinenumber@#1}{}%
4914 \csgdef{Xendboxsymmlinenumber@#1}{0pt}%
4915
4916 \csgdef{Xendbhooklinenumber@#1}{}%
4917 \csgdef{Xendehooklinenumber@#1}{}%
4918 \csgdef{Xendbhookinplaceofnumber@#1}{}%
4919 \csgdef{Xendehookinplaceofnumber@#1}{}%
4920
4921 \csgdef{Xendlinangeseparator@#1}{\endashchar}%
4922
4923 \csgdef{Xendbeforepagenumber@#1}{p.}%
4924 \csgdef{Xendafterpagenumber@#1}{) }%
4925 \csgdef{Xendlinprefixsingle@#1}{}%
4926 \csgdef{Xendlinprefixmore@#1}{}%
4927
4928 \newtoggle{Xendlinflag@#1}
4929
4930 \csgdef{Xendlemmafont@#1}{}%
4931 %

```

End of endnotes declaration

```

4932 \fi%
4933 %

```

Dump series in \@series

```

4934 \listxadd{\@series}{#1}
4935 }
4936 }% End of \newseries
4937 %

```

## XX.6 Init standards series (A,B,C,D,E)

```

4938 \expandafter\newseries\expandafter{\default@series}
4939 %

```

## XXI Setting series display

### XXI.1 Change series order

**\seriesatbegin** `\seriesatbegin{<s>}` changes the order of series, to put the series `<s>` at the beginning of the list. The series can be the result of a command.

```

4940 \newcommand{\seriesatbegin}[1]{%
4941   \StrDel{\@series}{#1}[\@series]%
4942   \edef\@new{}%
4943   \listadd{\@new}{#1}%
4944   \listadd{\@new}{\@series}%
4945   \xdef\@series{\@new}%
4946 }
4947 %

```

**\seriesatend** And `\seriesatend` moves the series to the end of the list.

```

4948 \newcommand{\seriesatend}[1]{%
4949   \StrDel{\@series}{#1}[\@series]%
4950   \edef\@new{}%
4951   \listadd{\@new}{\@series}%
4952   \listadd{\@new}{#1}%
4953   \xdef\@series{\@new}%
4954 }
4955 %

```

### XXI.2 Test series order

**\ifseriesbefore** `\ifseriesbefore{<seriesA>}{<seriesB>}{<true>}{<false>}` expands `<true>` if `<seriesA>` is printed before `<seriesB>`, expands `<false>` otherwise.

```

4956 \newcommand{\ifseriesbefore}[4]{%
4957   \StrPosition{\@series}{#1}[\@first]%
4958   \StrPosition{\@series}{#2}[\@second]%
4959   \ifnumgreater{\@second}{\@first}{#3}{#4}%
4960 }
4961 %

```

#### XXI.2.1 Get the first series

In some specific case, we need to know the first series of the list of series.

```

\@getfirstseries62 \newcommand{\@getfirstseries}{%
4963   \ifdefempty{\@series}%
4964   {\xdef\@firstseries{}}%
4965   {\StrChar{\@series}{1}[\@firstseries]}%
4966 }%
4967 %

```

## XXI.3 Series setting

### XXI.3.1 General way of working

The setting's command (like `\numberonlyfirstinline`), also called “hooks” can be divided in two categories: those which require a string values and those which require a boolean value. The first category includes those which require a length value, because we store the length's expression send by user and we evaluate it only in the commands which requires to know the setting. The second category require boolean value only when it is set to FALSE. Otherwise, we understand the insinuated value is TRUE.

For each “hook” command, we store the value in commands (first category) or a `etoolbox`'s toggle (second category) which names are in the form `\<hook>@<series>`. For example when calling `\twolines{<sq.>}`, we store `sq.` in commands `\twolines@A`, `\twolines@B`, `\twolines@C`...for each series defined for use with `reledmac`, or, if the [`<series>`] optional argument was send, for each series of this argument.

These values are tested in some specific places, scattered in all the code, depending of their effects. The default values are defined by the `\newseries@` command.

In order to prevent code duplication, we have created some generic commands. Some of them change the value of any hook send as argument. Some other, getting a hook name, generate the user level commands.

### XXI.3.2 Tools to set options

`\settoggle@series` `\settoggle@series{<series>}{<toggle>}{<value>}` is a generic command to switch toggles for some series. The arguments are:

- #1 (mandatory): the series for which the hooks should be set. If empty, all the series will be affected.
- #2 (mandatory): the name of the hook.
- #3 (mandatory): the new value of toggle (true or false).
- #4 (optional): if equal to `reload`, reload the footnote setting (call again `\Xarrangement` or `\arrangementX` or ... depending of the footnote display).
- #5 (optional): if not empty, and if #1 is empty, change the hook setting for pseudo-series, as `appref`.

```

4968 \newcommandx{\settoggle@series}[5][4,5,usedefault]{%
4969   \def\do##1{%
4970     \global\settoggle{#2@##1}{#3}%
4971     \ifstrequal{#4}{critical}{
4972       \csuse{Xarrangement@}\csuse{series@display##1}{##1}%
4973     }{
4974       \ifstrequal{#4}{familiar}{
4975         \csuse{arrangementX@}\csuse{series@displayX##1}{##1}%
4976       }{
4977       }%
4978     \ifstreempty{#1}{%

```

```

4979         \dolistloop{\@series}%
4980         \ifstrempy{#5}{}{}%
4981         \docsvlist{#5}%
4982     }
4983 }%
4984 {%
4985     \docsvlist{#1}%
4986 }%
4987 }
4988 %

```

**\setcommand@series** `\setcommand@series{<series>}{<command>}{<value>}` is a generic command to store hook's value into commands specific to some series. The arguments are:

- #1 (mandatory): the series for which the hooks should be set. If empty, all the series will be affected.
- #2 (mandatory): the name of the hook.
- #3 (mandatory): the new value of the hook/command.
- #4 (optional): if equal to `reload`, reload the footnote setting (call `\footnormal` or `\footparagraph` or ... depending of the footnote display).
- #5 (optional): if not empty, and if #1 is empty, change the hook setting for pseudo-series, as `appref`.

```

4989 \newcommandx{\setcommand@series}[5][4,5,usedefault]{%
4990     \def\do##1{
4991         \csgdef{#2@##1}{#3}
4992         \ifstrequal{#4}{critical}{%
4993             \csuse{Xarrangement@}\csuse{series@display##1}}{##1}%
4994         }{}
4995         \ifstrequal{#4}{familiar}{%
4996             \csuse{arrangementX@}\csuse{series@displayX##1}}{##1}%
4997         }{}%
4998     }%
4999     \ifstrempy{#1}{%
5000         \dolistloop{\@series}%
5001         \ifstrempy{#5}{}{}%
5002         \docsvlist{#5}
5003     }
5004 }%
5005 {%
5006     \docsvlist{#1}%
5007 }%
5008 }%
5009 %

```



## XXI.3.3 Tools to generate options commands

**\newhookcommand@series** `\newhookcommand@series\command names` is a generic command to add new commands for hooks, like `\Xhsizetwocol`. The first argument is the name of the hook, the second a comma-separated list of pseudo-series where the hook can be used, like `appref` in the case of `\Xtwolines`. The second argument is also used to create commands named `\<hookname><pseudoserries>`, like `\Xtwolinesappref`.

```

5010 \newcommandx{\newhookcommand@series}[2][2,usedefault]{%
5011   \global\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter*\csname #1\endcsname[2][]{%
5012     \setcommand@series{##1}{#1}{##2}[][#2]%
5013   }%
5014   \ifstrempy{#2}{-}{%
5015     \def\do##1{%
5016       \global\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter*\csname #1##1\endcsname
5017       [1]{%
5018         \csuse{#1}[##1]{####1}%
5019       }%
5020     }%
5021     \docsvlist{#2}%
5022   }%
5023 }%

```

**\newhooktoggle@series** `\newhooktoggle@series\command names` is a generic command to add new commands for a new toggle hook, like `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline`. The second argument is also used to create commands named `\<hookname><pseudoserries>`, like `\Xtwolinesbutnotmoreappref`.

```

5024 \newcommandx{\newhooktoggle@series}[2][2,usedefault]{%
5025   \global\expandafter\newcommandx\expandafter*\csname #1\endcsname[2][1,2={
5026     true},usedefault]{%
5027     \settoggle@series{##1}{#1}{##2}[][#2]%
5028   }%
5029   \ifstrempy{#2}{-}{%
5030     \def\do##1{%
5031       \global\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter*\csname #1##1\endcsname{%
5032         \csuse{#1}[##1]%
5033       }%
5034     }%
5035     \docsvlist{#2}%
5036   }%
5037 }%

```

**\newhooktoggle@series@reload** `\newhookcommand@toggle@reload` does the same thing as `\newhooktoggle@series` but the commands created by this macro also reload the series arrangement, depending of type or notes

```

5038 \newcommand{\newhooktoggle@series@reload}[2]{%

```

```

5039 \global\expandafter\newcommandx\expandafter*\csname #1\endcsname[2][1,2={
      true},usedefault]{%
5040     \settoggle@series{##1}{#1}{##2}[#2]%
5041     }%
5042 }%
5043 %

```

`\newhookcommand@series@reload` `\newhookcommand@series@reload` does the same thing as `\newhookcommand@series` but the commands created by this macro also reload the series' arrangement.

```

5044 \newcommand{\newhookcommand@series@reload}[2]{%
5045     \global\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter*\csname #1\endcsname[2][1]{%
5046         \setcommand@series{##1}{#1}{##2}[#2]%
5047     }%
5048 }
5049 %

```

### XXI.3.4 Options for critical notes

Before generating the commands that are used to set the critical notes, such as `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline`, `\Xlemmaseparator` and the like, we check the `nocritical` option.

```

5050 \unless\ifnocritical@
5051     \newhookcommand@series{Xwrapcontent}%
5052     \newhookcommand@series{Xbeforeinserting}%
5053     \newhookcommand@series{Xlemmafont}%
5054     \newhookcommand@series{Xwraplemma}%
5055     \newhooktoggle@series{Xparindent}
5056     \newhookcommand@series{Xhangindent}
5057     \newhookcommand@series{Xragged}
5058     \newhookcommand@series{Xhsizetwocol}
5059     \newhookcommand@series{Xhsizethreecol}
5060     \newhookcommand@series{Xcolalign}%
5061     \newhookcommand@series{Xnotenumfont}
5062     \newhookcommand@series{Xbhooknote}
5063     \newhookcommand@series@reload{Xbhookgroup}{critical}
5064     \newhookcommand@series{Xboxsymlinenum}%
5065     \newhookcommand@series{Xsymlinenum}
5066     \newhookcommand@series{Xbeforenumber}
5067     \newhookcommand@series{Xtxtbeforenumber}
5068     \newhookcommand@series{Xafternumber}
5069     \newhookcommand@series{Xbeforesymlinenum}
5070     \newhookcommand@series{Xaftersymlinenum}
5071     \newhookcommand@series{Xinplaceofnumber}
5072     \newhookcommand@series{Xlemmaseparator}
5073     \newhookcommand@series{Xbeforelemmaseparator}
5074     \newhookcommand@series{Xafterlemmaseparator}
5075     \newhookcommand@series{Xinplaceoflemmaseparator}
5076     \newhookcommand@series{Xtxtbeforenotes}

```

```

5077 \newhookcommand@series@reload{Xafterrule}{critical}
5078 \newhooktoggle@series{Xnumberonlyfirstinline}
5079 \newhooktoggle@series{Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines}
5080 \newhooktoggle@series{Xnonumber}
5081 \newhooktoggle@series{Xpstart}
5082 \newhooktoggle@series{Xpstarteverytime}%
5083
5084 \newhooktoggle@series{Xstanza}%
5085 \newhookcommand@series{Xstanzaseparator}%
5086
5087 \newhooktoggle@series{Xonlypstart}
5088 \newhooktoggle@series{Xnonbreakableafternumber}
5089 \newhooktoggle@series{Xlemmadisablefontselection}
5090 \newhookcommand@series@reload{Xmaxhnotes}{critical}
5091 \newhookcommand@series@reload{Xbeforenotes}{critical}
5092 \newhooktoggle@series@reload{Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns}{critical}%
5093 \newhookcommand@series@reload{Xnotefontsize}{critical}
5094
5095 \newhookcommand@series{Xboxlinenum}%
5096 \newhookcommand@series{Xboxlinenumalign}%
5097
5098 \newhookcommand@series{Xboxstartlinenum}%
5099 \newhookcommand@series{Xboxendlinenum}%
5100
5101 \newhookcommand@series{Xafternote}%
5102 \newhookcommand@series{Xparafootsep}
5103
5104 \newhookcommand@series@reload{Xwidth}{critical}%
5105
5106 \ifundef{\Xhsize}%
5107   {%
5108     \newcommandx{\Xhsize}[2][1,usedefault]{%
5109       \led@warning@Xhsize@deprecated%
5110       \Xwidth[#1]{#2}%
5111     }%
5112   }%
5113   {}%
5114 \fi
5115 \newhooktoggle@series{Xlineflag}[appref,SEref]
5116 \newhookcommand@series{Xtwolines}[appref,SEref]
5117 \newhookcommand@series{Xmorethantwolines}[appref,SEref]
5118 \newhookcommand@series{Xsublinesep}[appref,SEref,side]
5119 \newhooktoggle@series{Xtwolinesbutnotmore}[appref,SEref]
5120 \newhooktoggle@series{Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage}[appref,SEref]
5121 \newhookcommand@series{Xlinrangeseparator}[appref,SEref]
5122 %

```

### XXI.3.5 Options for familiar notes

Before generating the optional commands for familiar notes, we check the `\nofamiliar` option.

```

5123 \unless\ifnofamiliar@
5124   \newhookcommand@series{wrapcontentX}%
5125   \newhookcommand@series{beforeinsertingX}%
5126   \newhooktoggle@series{parindentX}
5127   \newhookcommand@series{hangindentX}
5128   \newhookcommand@series{raggedX}
5129   \newhookcommand@series{hsizetwocolX}
5130   \newhookcommand@series{hsizethreecolX}
5131   \newhookcommand@series{colalignX}%
5132   \newhookcommand@series{notenumfontX}
5133   \newhookcommand@series{bhooknoteX}
5134   \newhookcommand@series@reload{bhookgroupX}{familiar}
5135   \newhookcommand@series@reload{beforenotesX}{familiar}
5136   \newhookcommand@series@reload{maxhnotesX}{familiar}
5137   \newhooktoggle@series@reload{noteswidthliketwocolumnsX}{familiar}%
5138   \newhookcommand@series@reload{afterruleX}{familiar}
5139   \newhookcommand@series@reload{notefontsizeX}{familiar}
5140   \newhookcommand@series{afternoteX}
5141   \newhookcommand@series{parafootsepX}
5142   \newhookcommand@series@reload{widthX}{familiar}%
5143   \ifundef{\hsizeX}%
5144     {%
5145       \newcommandx{\hsizeX}[2][1,usedefault]{%
5146         \led@warning@hsizeX@deprecated%
5147         \widthX[#1]{#2}%
5148       }%
5149     }%
5150   {}%
5151 \fi
5152 %

```

### XXI.3.6 Options for endnotes

Before generating the commands that are used to set the endnotes, such as `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline`, `\Xlemmaseparator+` and the like, we check the `noend` option.

```

5153 \unless\ifnoend@
5154   \newhookcommand@series{Xendwraplemma}
5155   \newhookcommand@series{Xendwrapcontent}
5156   \newhookcommand@series{Xendnotenumfont}
5157   \newhookcommand@series{Xendlemmafont}%
5158   \newhookcommand@series{Xendbhooknote}
5159
5160   \newhookcommand@series{Xendboxlinenum}%
5161   \newhookcommand@series{Xendboxlinenumalign}%

```

```

5162 \newhookcommand@series{Xendboxstartlinenum}%
5163 \newhookcommand@series{Xendboxendlinenum}%
5164
5165
5166 \newhookcommand@series{Xendnotefontsize}
5167 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendlemmadisablefontselection}
5168 \newhookcommand@series{Xendlemmaseparator}
5169 \newhookcommand@series{Xendbeforelemmaseparator}
5170 \newhookcommand@series{Xendafterlemmaseparator}
5171 \newhookcommand@series{Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator}
5172
5173 \newhookcommand@series{Xendbeforenumber}%
5174 \newhookcommand@series{Xendafternumber}%
5175
5176 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendparagraph}
5177 \newhookcommand@series{Xendafternote}
5178 \newhookcommand@series{Xendsep}
5179
5180 \newhookcommand@series{Xendinplaceofnumber}%
5181 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendnonumber}%
5182
5183 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendnumberonlyfirstinline}%
5184 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendnumberonlyfirstintwolines}%
5185
5186 \newhookcommand@series{Xendsymmlinenumber}%
5187 \newhookcommand@series{Xendbeforesymmlinenumber}%
5188 \newhookcommand@series{Xendaftersymmlinenumber}%
5189 \newhookcommand@series{Xendboxsymmlinenumber}%
5190
5191 \newhookcommand@series{Xendbhooklinenumber}%
5192 \newhookcommand@series{Xendahooklinenumber}%
5193 \newhookcommand@series{Xendbhookinplaceofnumber}%
5194 \newhookcommand@series{Xendahookinplaceofnumber}%
5195
5196 \newhookcommand@series{Xendhangindent}%
5197
5198
5199 \fi
5200 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendlineflag}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage]
5201 \newhookcommand@series{Xendtwolines}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage]
5202 \newhookcommand@series{Xendmorethantwolines}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage]
5203 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendtwolinesbutnotmore}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage]
5204 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage}[apprefwithpage,
SErefwithpage]
5205 \newhookcommand@series{Xendlinerangeseparator}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage
]
5206 \newhookcommand@series{Xendbeforepagenumber}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage,
SErefonlypage]
5207 \newhookcommand@series{Xendafterpagenumber}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage]
5208 \newhookcommand@series{Xendlineprefixsingle}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage]

```

```

5209 \newhookcommand@series{Xendlineprefixmore}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage]
5210 \newhookcommand@series{Xendsublinesep}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage]
5211
5212 %

```

#### XXI.4 Hooks for a particular footnote

**\newhooktoggle@specific** **\newhooktoggle@specific** is a generic command to create boolean hook specific to a note.

```

5213 \newcommand{\newhooktoggle@specific}[1]{%
5214   \newtoggle{#1}%
5215   \define@key[mac]{truefootnoteoption}{#1}[]{\global\settoggle{#1}{true}}%
   When enabling footnote option
5216   \define@key[mac]{falsefootnoteoption}{#1}[]{\global\settoggle{#1}{false}
5217   }}
5218 %

```

**\newhookarg@specific** **\newhookarg@specific** is a generic command to create argumen hook specific to a note.

```

5219 \newcommand{\newhookarg@specific}[1]{%
5220   \define@key[mac]{truefootnoteoption}{#1}{\global\def\linrangesep@{##1}}%
   When enabling footnote option
5221   \define@key[mac]{falsefootnoteoption}{#1}{\global\undef\linrangesep@}%
   When
5222   }
5223 %

```

And now, we define some hooks specific to a note.

```

5224 \newhooktoggle@specific{fulllines}%
5225 \newhooktoggle@specific{nonum}
5226 \newhooktoggle@specific{nosep}
5227 \newhookarg@specific{linrangesep}
5228 %

```

**linrangesep@** **\linrangesep@** is defined by the option `linrangesep` of critical notes to change temporarily the line range separator for a specific line. As we have to define it before typesetting the line and undefine it after, we use the family of `xkeyval` package's key.

```

5229 %

```

**\nomk@** **\nomk@** toggle is used by `reledpar` to remove the footnote mark in the text when using `\footnoteXmk`. Read `reledpar` handbook.

```

5230 \newtoggle{nomk@}%
5231 %

```

## XXI.5 Alias

`\Xnolemmaseparator` `\Xnolemmaseparator[⟨series⟩]` is just an alias for `\Xlemmaseparator[⟨series⟩]{}`.

```
5232 \newcommand*{\Xnolemmaseparator}[1][1]{\Xlemmaseparator[#1]{}}
5233 %
```

## XXII Output routine

Now we begin the output routine and associated things.

### XXII.1 Page number management

`\pageno` `\pageno` is a page number, starting at 1, and `\advancepageno` increments the number.  
`\advancepageno`

```
5234 \countdef\pageno=0 \pageno=1
5235 \newcommand*{\advancepageno}{\ifnum\pageno<\z@ \global\advance\pageno\m@ne
5236 \else\global\advance\pageno\@ne\fi}
5237
5238 %
```

### XXII.2 Extra footnotes output

With luck we might only have to change `\@makecol` and `\@reinserts` of the  $\TeX$ 's kernel. Since `reledmac`, we use `etoolbox`'s patching commands instead of overriding. It should provides better compatibility with other package which modify these commands

`\doxtrafeet` `\doxtrafeet` is the code extending `\@makecol` to cater for the extra `reledmac` feet. We have two categories of extra footnotes. By default, we order the footnote inserts so that the regular footnotes of  $\TeX$  are first, then familiar familiar footnotes and finally the critical footnotes.

```
5239 \newcommand*{\l@ddoxtrafeet}{%
5240 \IfStrEq{familiar-critical}{\@fnpos}
5241 {\do@feetX\Xdo@feet}%
5242 {%
5243 \IfStrEq{critical-familiar}{\@fnpos}%
5244 {\Xdo@feet\do@feetX}%
5245 {\do@feetX\Xdo@feet}%
5246 }%
5247 }%
5248
5249 %
```

`\Xdo@feet` `\Xdo@feet` is the code extending `\@makecol` to cater for the extra critical feet.

```

5250 \newcommand*\Xdo@feet}{%
5251   \setbox\@outputbox \vbox{%
5252     \unvbox\@outputbox
5253     \@opXfeet}}
5254 %

```

**\@opXfeet** The extra critical feet to be added to the output. The normal way to add one series, **\print@Xnotes** **\print@Xnotes**, is replaced by **reledpar** when using **\Pages**.

```

5255 \newcommand\print@Xnotes[1]{%
5256   \xdef\@currentseries{#1}%
5257   \csuse{#1footstart}{#1}%
5258   \csuse{#1footgroup}{#1}%
5259 }%
5260 %

```

We print all series of notes by looping on them. We check before printing them that they are not voided.

```

5261 \newcommand*\@opXfeet}{%
5262   \unless\ifnocritical@%
5263     \gdef\firstXseries@{}%
5264     \def\do##1{%
5265       \ifvoid\csuse{##1footins}\else%
5266         \global\skip\csuse{##1footins}=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@##1}%
5267         \global\advance\skip\csuse{##1footins} by\csuse{Xafterrule@##1}%
5268         \print@Xnotes{##1}%
5269       \fi%
5270     }%
5271     \dolistloop{\@series}%
5272   \fi%
5273 }%
5274 %

```

**\l@ddodoreintrafeet** **\l@ddodoreintrafeet** is the code for catering for the extra footnotes within **\@reinserts**. We use the same category and ordering as in **\l@ddoxtrafeet**.

```

5275 \newcommand*\l@ddodoreintrafeet}{%
5276   \IfStrEq{familiar-critical}{\@fnpos}%
5277   {\@doreinfeetX\X@doreinfeet}%
5278   {%
5279     \IfStrEq{critical-familiar}{\@fnpos}%
5280     {\X@doreinfeet\@doreinfeetX}%
5281     {\@doreinfeetX\X@doreinfeet}%
5282   }%
5283 }
5284 %
5285 %

```

**\X@doreinfeet** **\X@doreinfeet** is the code for catering for the extra critical footnotes within **\@reinserts**.



```

5286 \newcommand*{\X@doreinfeet}{%
5287   \unless\ifnocritical@%
5288   \def\do##1{%
5289     \ifvoid\csuse{##1footins}\else%
5290     \insert\csuse{##1footins}{\unvbox\csuse{##1footins}}%
5291     \fi}%
5292   \dolistloop{\@series}
5293   \fi%
5294 }
5295
5296 %

```

`\print@notesX` We have to add all the new kinds of familiar footnotes to the output routine. The normal way to add one series. `\print@Xnotes` is replaced by `reledpar` when using `\Pages`.

```

\do@feetX
\@doreinfeetX
5297 \newcommand\print@notesX[1]{%
5298   \xdef\@currentseries{#1}%
5299   \csuse{footstart#1}{#1}%
5300   \csuse{footgroup#1}{#1}%
5301 }%
5302 %

```

We print all the series of notes by looping on them. We check before printing them that they are not voided.

```

5303 \newcommand*{\do@feetX}{%
5304   \unless\ifnofamiliar@%
5305   \gdef\firstseriesX@{}%
5306   \setbox\@outputbox \vbox{%
5307     \unvbox\@outputbox%
5308     \def\do##1{%
5309       \ifvoid\csuse{footins##1}\else%
5310       \global\skip\csuse{footins##1}=\csuse{beforenotesX@##1}%
5311       \global\advance\skip\csuse{footins##1} by\csuse{afterruleX@##1}%
5312       \print@notesX{##1}%
5313       \fi%
5314     }%
5315     \dolistloop{\@series}}%
5316   \fi%
5317 }%
5318
5319 \newcommand{\@doreinfeetX}{%
5320   \unless\ifnofamiliar@%
5321   \def\do##1{%
5322     \ifvoid\csuse{footins##1}\else
5323     \insert%
5324       \csuse{footins##1}
5325       {\unvbox\csuse{footins##1}}%
5326     \fi%
5327   }%
5328   \dolistloop{\@series}%

```

```

5329 \fi%
5330 }%
5331
5332 %

```

### XXII.3 Patching standard output of commands

The memoir class does not use the ‘standard’ versions of `\@makecol` and `\@reinserts`, due to its sidebar insert. We had better add that code if memoir is used. (It can be awkward dealing with `\if` code within `\if` code, so don’t use `\ifl@dmemoir` here.)

```

5333 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}{%
5334 %

```

memoir is loaded so we use memoir’s built in hooks.

```

5335 \g@addto@macro{\m@mdoextrafeet}{\l@ddoxtrafeet}%
5336 \g@addto@macro{\m@mdodoreinextrafeet}{\l@ddodoreinextrafeet}%
5337 }{%
5338 %

```

memoir has not been loaded, so patch `\@makecol` and `\@reinserts`.

```

5339 \@ifpackageloaded{fancyhdr}{%
5340 \patchcmd%
5341   {\latex@makecol}%
5342   {\xdef\@freelist{\@freelist\@midlist}}%
5343   {\xdef\@freelist{\@freelist\@midlist}\l@ddoxtrafeet}%
5344   {}%
5345   {\led@error@fail@patch@@makecol}}%
5346 }{%
5347 \patchcmd%
5348   {\@makecol}%
5349   {\xdef\@freelist{\@freelist\@midlist}}%
5350   {\xdef\@freelist{\@freelist\@midlist}\l@ddoxtrafeet}%
5351   {}%
5352   {\led@error@fail@patch@@makecol}}%
5353 }%
5354
5355 \patchcmd%
5356   {\@reinserts}%
5357   {\ifvbox}%
5358   {\l@ddodoreinextrafeet\ifvbox}%
5359   {}%
5360   {\led@error@fail@patch@@reinserts}}%
5361 }
5362
5363 %

```

It turns out that `\@doclearpage` also needs modifying.

`\if@led@nofoot` We have to check if there are any leftover feet.

```
5364 \newif\if@led@nofoot
5365
5366 %
```

```
5367 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}{%
5368 %
```

If the memoir class is loaded we hook into its modified `\@doclearpage`.

```
\@mem@extranofeet 5369 \g@addto@macro{\@mem@extranofeet}{%%
5370 \def\do#1{%
5371 \unless\ifnocritical@%
5372 \ifvoid\csuse{#1footins}\else\@mem@nofootfalse\fi%
5373 \fi%
5374 \unless\ifnofamiliar@%
5375 \ifvoid\csuse{footins#1}\else\@mem@nofootfalse\fi%
5376 \fi%
5377 }
5378 \dolistloop{\@series}%
5379 }%
5380 }{%
5381 %
```

As memoir is not loaded we have patch `\@doclearpage`.

```
\@led@testifnofoot 5382 \newcommand*{\@led@testifnofoot}{%
5383 \@doclearpage 5384 \@led@nofoottrue%
5385 \ifvoid\footins\else%
5386 \@led@nofootfalse%
5387 \fi%
5388 \def\do##1{%
5389 \unless\ifnocritical@%
5390 \ifvoid\csuse{##1footins}\else%
5391 \@led@nofootfalse%
5392 \fi%
5393 \fi%
5394 \unless\ifnofamiliar@%
5395 \ifvoid\csuse{footins##1}\else%
5396 \@led@nofootfalse%
5397 \fi%
5398 \fi%
5399 \dolistloop{\@series}%
5400 }%
5401
5402 \pretocmd%
5403 {\@doclearpage}%
```

```

5404 {\@led@testifnofoot}%
5405 {}%
5406 {\led@error@fail@patch@@doclearpage}%
5407
5408 \patchcmd%
5409 {\@doclearpage}%
5410 {\ifvoid\footins}%
5411 {\if@led@nofoot}%
5412 {}%
5413 {\led@error@fail@patch@@doclearpage}%
5414
5415 }
5416
5417 %

```

## XXIII Cross referencing

You can mark a place in the text using a command of the form `\edlabel{<foo>}`, and later refer to it using the label `<foo>` by typing `\edpageref{<foo>}`, or `\lineref{<foo>}` or `\sublineref{<foo>}` or `\pstartref`. These reference commands will produce, respectively, the page, line sub-line and pstart on which the `\edlabel{<foo>}` command occurred.

The reference macros warn you if a reference is made to an undefined label. If `{<foo>}` has been used as a label before, the `\edlabel{<foo>}` command will issue a complaint; subsequent `\edpageref` and `\edlineref` commands will refer to the latest occurrence of `\edlabel{<foo>}`.

**\labelref@list** Set up a new list, `\labelref@list`, to hold the page, line and sub-line numbers for each label.

```

5418 \list@create{\labelref@list}
5419 %

```

**\zz@@@** A convenience macro to zero two labeling counters in one go.

```

5420 \newcommand*{\zz@@@}{000|000} % set two counters to zero in one go
5421
5422 %

```

**\edlabel** The `\edlabel` command first writes a `\@lab` macro to the `\linenum@out` file. It then checks to see that the `\labelref@list` actually has something in it (if not, it creates a dummy entry), and pops the next value for the current label, storing it in `\label@refs`. Finally it defines the label to be `\empty` so that any future check will turn up the fact that it has been used.<sup>32</sup>

---

<sup>32</sup>The remaining macros in this section were kindly revised by Wayne Sullivan, who substantially improved their efficiency and flexibility.

This version of the original `edmac \label` uses `\@bsphack` and `\@esphack` to eliminate extra space problems and also use the  $\TeX$  write methods for the `.aux` file.

Jesse Billett<sup>33</sup> found that the original code could be off by several pages. This version, hopefully cures that, and also allows for non-arabic page numbering.

```

5423 \newcommand*{\edlabel}[1]{%
5424   \ifl@dpairing\ifautopar%
5425     \strut%
5426   \fi\fi%
5427   \@bsphack%
5428   \ifboolexpr{bool{ledRcol} or bool{ledRcol@}}{%
5429     \ifXnote@%
5430       \protected@write\@auxout{%
5431         {\string\l@dmake@labelsR\space\thepage|\l@dparsedstartline|\
5432         l@dparsedstartsub|\the\c@pstartR|{#1}}}%
5433       \ifdef{\hypertarget}%
5434         {\Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{#1}{}}}%
5435       {}%
5436     \else%
5437       \write\linenum@outR{\string\@lab}%
5438       \ifx\labelref@listR\empty%
5439         \xdef\label@refs{\zz@@@}%
5440       \else%
5441         \gl@p\labelref@listR\to\label@refs%
5442       \fi%
5443       \ifvmode%
5444         \advancelabel@refs%
5445       \fi%
5446     }%
5447   }%
5448   \ifXnote@%
5449     \protected@write\@auxout{%
5450       {\string\l@dmake@labelsR\space\thepage|\label@refs|\the\c@pstartR
5451       |{#1}}}%
5452     \ifdef{\hypertarget}%
5453       {\Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{#1}{}}}%
5454     {}%
5455   \fi%
5456 }%
5457 \ifXnote@%
5458   \protected@write\@auxout{%
5459     {\string\l@dmake@labelsR\space\thepage|\l@dparsedstartline|\
5460     l@dparsedstartsub|\the\c@pstartR|{#1}}}%
5461   \ifdef{\hypertarget}%
5462     {\Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{#1}{}}}%
5463   {}%
5464   \else%
5465     \write\linenum@outR{\string\@lab}%
5466     \ifx\labelref@listR\empty%
5467       \xdef\label@refs{\zz@@@}%
5468     \else%
5469       \gl@p\labelref@listR\to\label@refs%
5470     \fi%
5471     \ifvmode%
5472       \advancelabel@refs%
5473     \fi%
5474   }%
5475 }%

```

Use code from the kernel `\label` command to write the correct page number. Also define an `hypertarget` if `hyperref` package is loaded.

```

5446   \protected@write\@auxout{%
5447     {\string\l@dmake@labelsR\space\thepage|\label@refs|\the\c@pstartR
5448     |{#1}}}%
5449   \ifdef{\hypertarget}%
5450     {\Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{#1}{}}}%
5451   {}%
5452   \fi%
5453 }%
5454 \ifXnote@%
5455   \protected@write\@auxout{%
5456     {\string\l@dmake@labelsR\space\thepage|\l@dparsedstartline|\
5457     l@dparsedstartsub|\the\c@pstartR|{#1}}}%
5458   \ifdef{\hypertarget}%
5459     {\Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{#1}{}}}%
5460   {}%
5461   \else%
5462     \write\linenum@outR{\string\@lab}%
5463     \ifx\labelref@listR\empty%
5464       \xdef\label@refs{\zz@@@}%
5465     \else%
5466       \gl@p\labelref@listR\to\label@refs%
5467     \fi%
5468     \ifvmode%
5469       \advancelabel@refs%
5470     \fi%
5471   }%
5472 }%

```

<sup>33</sup>(jdb43@cam.ac.uk) via the ctt thread ‘ledmac cross referencing’, 25 August 2003.

```

5460 \write\linenum@out{\string\@lab}%
5461 \ifx\labelref@list\empty%
5462 \xdef\label@refs{\zz@@@}%
5463 \else%
5464 \gl@p\labelref@list\to\label@refs%
5465 \fi%
5466 \ifvmode%
5467 \advancelabel@refs%
5468 \fi%
5469 \protected@write\@auxout{%
5470 {\string\l@dmake@labels\space\thepage|\label@refs|\the\c@pstart
|{#1}}}%
5471 \ifdef{\hypertarget}%
5472 {\Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{#1}{}}}%
5473 {}%
5474 \fi%
5475 }%
5476 \@esphack}%
5477
5478 %

```

`\advancelabel@refs` In cases where `\edlabel` is the first element in a paragraph, we have a problem with line counts, because line counts change only at the first horizontal box of the paragraph. Hence, we need to test `\edlabel` if it occurs at the start of a paragraph. To do so, we use `\ifvmode`. If the test is true, we must advance by one unit the amount of text we write into the `.aux` file. We do so using `\advancelabel@refs` command.

`\labelrefsparseline`

`\labelrefsparsesubline`

```

5479 \newcounter{line}%
5480 \newcounter{subline}%
5481 \newcommand{\advancelabel@refs}{%
5482 \setcounter{line}{\expandafter\labelrefsparseline\label@refs}%
5483 \stepcounter{line}%
5484 \ifsublines@%
5485 \setcounter{subline}{\expandafter\labelrefsparsesubline\label@refs}%
5486 %
5487 \stepcounter{subline}{1}%
5488 \def\label@refs{\theline|\thesubline}%
5489 \else%
5490 \def\label@refs{\theline|0}%
5491 \fi%
5492 }
5493 \def\labelrefsparseline#1|#2{#1}
5494 \def\labelrefsparsesubline#1|#2{#2}
5495 %

```

`\l@dmake@labels` The `\l@dmake@labels` macro gets executed when the labels file is read. For each label it defines a macro, whose name is made up partly from the label you supplied, that contains the page, line and sub-line numbers. But first it checks to see whether the label has already been used (and complains if it has).

The initial use of `\newcommand` is to catch if `\l@dmake@labels` has been previously defined (by a class or package).

#1 page number, #2 line number, #3 sub-line number, #4 pstart number, #5 label.

```

5495 \newcommand*{\l@dmake@labels}{}
5496 \def\l@dmake@labels#1|#2|#3|#4|#5{%
5497   \expandafter\ifx\csname the@label\csuse{XR@prefix}#5\endcsname \relax\
else
5498     \led@warn@DuplicateLabel{\csuse{XR@prefix}#5}%
5499   \fi
5500   \expandafter\gdef\csname the@label\csuse{XR@prefix}#5\endcsname
{#1|#2|#3|#4|\relax}%
5501   \ignorespaces}
5502
5503 %

```

TeX reads the aux file at both the beginning and end of the document, so we have to switch off duplicate label checking after the first time the file is read.

```

5504 \AtBeginDocument{%
5505   \def\l@dmake@labels#1|#2|#3|#4|#5{%
5506   }
5507
5508 %

```

**\@lab** The `\@lab` command, which appears in the `\linenum@out` file, appends the current values of page, line and sub-line to the `\labelref@list`. These values are defined by the earlier `\@page`, `\@nl`, and the `\sub@on` and `\sub@off` commands appearing in the `\linenum@out` file.

TeX uses the page counter for page numbers. However, it appears that this is not the right place to grab the page number. That task is now done in the `\edlabel` macro. This version of `\@lab` appends just the current line and sub-line numbers to `\labelref@list`.

```

5509
5510 \newcommand*{\@lab}{%
5511   \ifledRcol
5512     \xright@appenditem{\linenumr@p{\line@numR}}|{%
5513       \ifsublines@ \sublinenumr@p{\subline@numR}\else 0\fi}%
5514     \to\labelref@listR
5515   \else
5516     \xright@appenditem{\linenumr@p{\line@num}}|{%
5517       \ifsublines@ \sublinenumr@p{\subline@num}\else 0\fi}%
5518     \to\labelref@list
5519   \fi}
5520 %

```

**\applabel** `\applabel`, if called in `\edtext` will insert automatically both a start and an end label for the current edtext lines.

```

5521 \newcommand*{\applabel}[1]{%
5522   \if@edtext@secondarg%
5523   %

```

Label should not be already defined.

```

5524   \ifcsundef{the@label#1}{%
5525     \csdef{the@label#1}{applabel}%
5526   }%
5527   {%
5528     \led@warn@DuplicateLabel{#1 (applabel)}%
5529   }%
5530 %

```

Parse the \edtext line numbers.

```

5531   \expandafter\l@dp@rsefootspec\l@d@nums|%
5532 %

```

Use the  $\TeX$  standard hack for label.

```

5533   \@bsphack%
5534 %

```

And now, write the data in the auxiliary file.

```

5535   \ifledRcol%
5536     \protected@write\@auxout{%
5537       {\string\l@dmake@labelsR\space\l@dparsedstartpage|\
5538       \l@dparsedstartline|\l@dparsedstartsub|\the\c@pstartR|{#1:start}}}%
5539     \ifdef{\hypertarget}%
5540       {\Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{#1:start}}{}}}%
5541     \protected@write\@auxout{%
5542       {\string\l@dmake@labelsR\space\l@dparsedendpage|\l@dparsedendline
5543       |\l@dparsedendsub|\the\c@pstartR|{#1:end}}}%
5544     \else%
5545       \protected@write\@auxout{%
5546         {\string\l@dmake@labels\space\l@dparsedstartpage|\
5547         \l@dparsedstartline|\l@dparsedstartsub|\the\c@pstart|{#1:start}}}%
5548       \ifdef{\hypertarget}%
5549         {\Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{#1:start}}{}}}%
5550       \protected@write\@auxout{%
5551         {\string\l@dmake@labels\space\l@dparsedendpage|\l@dparsedendline
5552         |\l@dparsedendsub|\the\c@pstart|{#1:end}}}%
5553       \fi%
5554 %

```

Use the  $\TeX$  standard hack for label.

```

5553   \@esphack%
5554 %

```

Warning if \applabel is called outside of \edtext.



```

5555 \else%
5556 \led@warn@AppLabelOutSecondArgEdtext{#1}%
5557 \fi%
5558 %

```

End of \applabel

```

5559 }%
5560 %

```

**\edlabels** \edlabels and \edlabelE are just used to mark the beginning and the end of a passage.

```

\edlabelE
\edlabelSE
5561 \newcommand{\edlabels}[1]{%
5562 \edlabel{#1:start}%
5563 }
5564 \newcommand{\edlabelE}[1]{%
5565 \edlabel{#1:end}%
5566 }
5567 \newcommand{\edlabelSE}[1]{%
5568 \edlabels{#1}%
5569 \edlabelE{#1}%
5570 }
5571 %

```

**\wrap@edcrossref** \wrap@edcrossref is called around all reledmac crossref commands, except those which start with x. It adds the hyperlink.

```

5572 \newrobustcmd{\wrap@edcrossref}[2]{%
5573 \ifdef{hyperlink}%
5574 {\hyperlink{#1}{#2}}%
5575 {#2}%
5576 }
5577 %

```

**\edpageref** If the specified label exists, \edpageref gives its page number.

**\xpageref** For this reference command, as for the other two, a special version with prefix x is provided for use in places where the command is to be scanned as a number, as in \linenum. These special versions have two limitations: they do not print error messages if the reference is unknown, and they can't appear as the first label or reference command in the file; you must ensure that a \edlabel or a normal reference command appears first, or these x-commands will always return zeros.

TeX already defines a \pageref, so changing the name to \edpageref.

```

5578 \newcommand*{\edpageref}[1]{\l@dref@undefined{#1}\wrap@edcrossref{#1}{\l@dgetref@num{1}{#1}}}
5579 \newcommand*{\xpageref}[1]{\l@dgetref@num{1}{#1}}
5580
5581 %

```

**\edlineref** If the specified label exists, \lineref gives its line number.

**\xlineref**

```

5582 \newcommand*\edlineref}[1]{\l@dref@undefined{#1}\wrap@edcrossref{#1}{\
5583   l@dgetref@num{2}{#1}\xflagref{#1}}}%
5584 \newcommand*\xlineref}[1]{\l@dgetref@num{2}{#1}}%
5585 %

```

**\sublineref** If the specified label exists, \sublineref gives its sub-line number.

```

\sublineref
5586 \newcommand*\sublineref}[1]{\l@dref@undefined{#1}\wrap@edcrossref{#1}{\
5587   l@dgetref@num{3}{#1}}}%
5588 \newcommand*\xsublineref}[1]{\l@dgetref@num{3}{#1}}%
5589 %

```

**\pstartref** If the specified label exists, \pstartref gives its pstart number.

```

\pstartref
5590 \newcommand*\pstartref}[1]{\l@dref@undefined{#1}\wrap@edcrossref{#1}{\
5591   l@dgetref@num{4}{#1}}}%
5592 \newcommand*\xpstartref}[1]{\l@dgetref@num{4}{#1}}%
5593 %

```

**\xflagref** \xflagref finds the side flag of any ref defined with \edlabel.

```

5594 \newcommand*\xflagref}[1]{\l@dgetref@num{5}{#1}}%
5595 %

```

The next three macros are used by the referencing commands above, and do the job of extracting the right numbers from the label macro that contains the page, line, and sub-line number.

**\l@dref@undefined** The \l@dref@undefined macro is called when you refer to a label with the normal referencing macros. Its argument is a label, and it just checks that the label has been defined.

```

5596 \newcommand*\l@dref@undefined}[1]{%
5597   \expandafter\ifx\csname the@label#1\endcsname\relax
5598     \led@warn@RefUndefined{#1}%
5599   \fi}
5600 %
5601 %

```

**\l@dgetref@num** Next, \l@dgetref@num fetches the number we want. It has two arguments: the first is simply a digit, specifying whether to fetch a page (1), line (2), sub-line (3), (4) pstart number or (5) side flag. (This switching is done by calling \l@dlabel@parse.) The second argument is the label-macro, which because of the \@lab macro above is defined to be a string of the type 123|456|789.

```

5602 \newcommand*{\l@getref@num}[2]{%
5603   \expandafter
5604   \ifx\csname the@label#2\endcsname \relax
5605     000%
5606   \else
5607     \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter
5608     \l@label@parse\csname the@label#2\endcsname|#1%
5609   \fi}
5610
5611 %

```

**\l@label@parse** Notice that we slipped another | delimiter into the penultimate line of \l@getref@num, to keep the ‘switch-number’ separate from the reference numbers. This | is used as another parameter delimiter by \l@label@parse, which extracts the appropriate number from its first arguments. The |-delimited arguments consist of the expanded label-macro (three reference numbers), followed by the switch-number (1, 2, 3 or 4) which defines which of the earlier five numbers to pick out. (It was earlier given as the first argument of \l@getref@num.)

```

5612 \newcommand*{\l@label@parse}{%
5613   \def\l@label@parse#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6{%
5614     \ifcase #6%
5615       \or #1%
5616       \or #2%
5617       \or #3%
5618       \or #4%
5619       \or #5%
5620     \fi}
5621 %

```

**\xxref** The \xxref command takes two arguments, both of which are labels, e.g., \xxref{mouse}{elephant}. It first does some checking to make sure that the labels do exist (if one does not, those numbers are set to zero). Then it calls \linenum and sets the beginning page, line, and sub-line numbers to those of the place where \label{mouse} was placed, and the ending numbers to those at {elephant}. The point of this is to be able to manufacture footnote line references to passages which cannot be specified in the normal way as the first argument to \edtext for one reason or another. Using \xxref in the second argument of \edtext lets you set things up at least semi-automatically.

```

5622 \newcommand*{\xxref}[2]{%
5623   {%
5624     \expandafter\ifx\csname the@label#1\endcsname \relax%
5625       \expandafter\let\csname the@@label#1\endcsname\zz@@@%
5626     \else%
5627       \expandafter\def\csname the@@label#1\endcsname{\l@getref@num
5628         {1}-{#1}|\l@getref@num{2}-{#1}|\l@getref@num{3}-{#1}}%
5629       \fi%
5630     \expandafter\ifx\csname the@label#2\endcsname \relax%
5631       \expandafter\let\csname the@@label#2\endcsname\zz@@@%

```

```

5631 \else%
5632 \expandafter\def\csname the@@label#2\endcsname{\l@getref@num
5633 {1}{#2}|\l@getref@num{2}{#2}|\l@getref@num{3}{#2}}%
5634 \fi%
5635 \letcs{\@tempa}{the@@label#1}%
5636 \letcs{\@tempb}{the@@label#2}%
5637 \global\appto\@beforeinsertofthisedtext{\def\@this@crossref@start{#1}}%
5638 \global\appto\@beforeinsertofthisedtext{\def\@this@crossref@end{#2}}%
5639 \linenum{\@tempa|
5640 \@tempb}}}%
5641 %

```

`\appref` `\SEref`, `\apprefwithpage`, `\SErefwithpage` and `\SEonlypage` print cross-ref to some start / end lines defined by specific commands. It prints the lines as they should be printed in the apparatus (critical notes for not suffixed versions, endnotes for suffixed versions).

`\SErefwithpage` Here we define hooks similar to some those related to critical footnotes or endnotes. `\SErefwithpage` So, first declare the default value of the hooks for the pseudo-series. Also declare the internal toggle which are switch by `reledmac`.

```

5642 \def\Xtwolines@appref{}%
5643 \def\Xtwolines@SEref{}%
5644
5645 \def\Xmorethantwolines@appref{}%
5646 \def\Xmorethantwolines@SEref{}%
5647
5648 \def\Xlinerangeseparator@appref{\endashchar}%
5649 \def\Xlinerangeseparator@SEref{\endashchar}%
5650
5651 \def\Xsublinesep@appref{\fullstop}%
5652 \def\Xsublinesep@SEref{\fullstop}%
5653
5654 \newtoggle{Xtwolinesbutnotmore@appref}%
5655 \newtoggle{Xtwolinesbutnotmore@SEref}%
5656
5657 \newtoggle{Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage@appref}%
5658
5659 \newtoggle{Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage@SEref}%
5660
5661 \newtoggle{Xlineflag@appref}%
5662 \toggletrue{Xlineflag@appref}%Here exception
5663 \newtoggle{Xlineflag@SEref}%
5664 \toggletrue{Xlineflag@SEref}%Here exception
5665
5666 \def\Xendtwolines@apprefwithpage{}%
5667 \def\Xendtwolines@SErefwithpage{}%
5668
5669 \def\Xendmorethantwolines@apprefwithpage{}%

```

```

5670 \def\Xendmorethantwolines@SErefwithpage{}%
5671
5672 \def\Xendlinerangeseparator@apprefwithpage{\endashchar}
5673 \def\Xendlinerangeseparator@SErefwithpage{\endashchar}
5674 \def\Xendlinerangeseparator@SErefonlypage{\endashchar}
5675
5676 \def\Xendbeforepagenumber@apprefwithpage{p.}%
5677 \def\Xendbeforepagenumber@SErefwithpage{p.}%
5678 \def\Xendbeforepagenumber@SEonlypage{p.}%
5679
5680 \def\Xendafterpagenumber@apprefwithpage{ }%
5681 \def\Xendafterpagenumber@SErefwithpage{ }%
5682
5683
5684 \def\Xendlineprefixsingle@apprefwithpage{}%
5685 \def\Xendlineprefixsingle@SErefwithpage{}%
5686
5687 \def\Xendlineprefixmore@apprefwithpage{}%
5688 \def\Xendlineprefixmore@SErefwithpage{}%
5689
5690 \newtoggle{Xendtwolinesbutnotmore@apprefwithpage}%
5691 \newtoggle{Xendtwolinesbutnotmore@SErefwithpage}%
5692
5693 \def\Xendsublinesep@apprefwithpage{\fullstop}%
5694 \def\Xendsublinesep@SErefwithpage{\fullstop}%
5695
5696 \newtoggle{Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage@apprefwithpage}%
5697 \newtoggle{Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage@SErefwithpage}%
5698
5699 \newtoggle{Xendlineflag@apprefwithpage}
5700 \toggletrue{Xendlineflag@apprefwithpage}%Here, exception
5701 \newtoggle{Xendlineflag@SErefwithpage}
5702 \toggletrue{Xendlineflag@SErefwithpage}%Here, exception
5703
5704 %

```

Note that some of these hooks are declared but no user command can change their values. Such hooks are not pertinent for appref and apprefwithpage pseudo-series, but their values are nonetheless tested in some macros.

```

5705
5706 \xdef\Xboxstartlinenum@appref{Opt}
5707 \xdef\Xboxstartlinenum@SEref{Opt}
5708
5709 \xdef\Xboxendlinenum@appref{Opt}
5710 \xdef\Xboxendlinenum@SEref{Opt}
5711
5712 \xdef\Xendboxstartlinenum@apprefwithpage{Opt}
5713 \xdef\Xendboxstartlinenum@SErefwithpage{Opt}
5714
5715 \xdef\Xendboxendlinenum@apprefwithpage{Opt}

```

```

5716 \xdef\Xendboxendlinenum@Serefwithpage{Opt}
5717
5718 %

```

Now, declare the default values of \@apprefprefixsingle and \@apprefprefixmore, \@Serefprefix, \@Serefprefixmore and the commands which defines them.

```

5719 \newcommand\@apprefprefixsingle{}%
5720 \newcommand\@Serefprefixsingle{}%
5721
5722 \newcommand\@apprefprefixmore{}%
5723 \newcommand\@Serefprefixmore{}%
5724
5725 \newcommand{\setapprefprefixsingle}[1]{%
5726   \gdef\@apprefprefixsingle{#1}%
5727 }
5728 \newcommand{\setSerefprefixsingle}[1]{%
5729   \gdef\@Serefprefixsingle{#1}%
5730 }
5731
5732 \newcommand{\setapprefprefixmore}[1]{%
5733   \gdef\@apprefprefixmore{#1}%
5734 }
5735 \newcommand{\setSerefprefixmore}[1]{%
5736   \gdef\@Serefprefixmore{#1}%
5737 }
5738
5739 %

```

And not \setSerefonlypageprefixsingle and \setSerefonlypageprefixmore.

```

5740 \let\setSerefonlypageprefixsingle\XendbeforepagenumberSerefonlypage%
5741 \newcommand{\setSerefonlypageprefixmore}[1]{%
5742   \gdef\@Serefonlypage@prefixmore{#1}%
5743 }%
5744 %

```

And now, the main commands: \appref, \apprefwithpage, \Seref and \Serefwithpage. These commands call \reformatted@ and \reformattedwithpage, which calls \printlines and \printendlines. That is why we have previously declared all hooks values tested inside these last commands.

```

5745
5746 \newcommandx{\appref}[2][1,usedefault]{\reformatted@{#1}{#2}{appref}}
5747 \newcommandx{\Seref}[2][1,usedefault]{\reformatted@{#1}{#2}{Seref}}
5748
5749 \newcommandx{\apprefwithpage}[2][1,usedefault]{\reformattedwithpage@
5750 {#1}{#2}{appref}}
5750 \newcommandx{\Serefwithpage}[2][1,usedefault]{\reformattedwithpage@
5751 {#1}{#2}{Seref}}
5751 \newcommandx{\Serefonlypage}[2][1,usedefault]{\reformattedonlypage@
5752 {#1}{#2}{Seref}}

```

```

5752
5753
5754 \newcommand{\reformatted@}[3]{%
5755   \def\do##1{%
5756     \setkeys[mac]{truefootnoteoption}{##1}%
5757   }%
5758   \notblank{#1}{\docsvlist{#1}}{}%
5759   \xdef\@currentseries{#3}%
5760   \ifcempty{@#3prefixmore}%
5761     {\@apprefprefixsingle}%
5762     {%
5763       \IfEq{\xlineref{#2:start}}{\xlineref{#2:end}}%
5764       {\csuse{@#3prefixsingle}}%
5765       {\csuse{@#3prefixmore}}%
5766     }%
5767   \ifboolexpr{%
5768     test{\ifcsundef{the@label#2:start}}%
5769     or test{\ifcsundef{the@label#2:end}}%
5770   }%
5771     {\led@warn@pairRefUndefined{#2}\nfss@text{\reset@font\bfseries ??}}%
5772     {%
5773       \def\@this@crossref@start{#2:start}%
5774       \def\@this@crossref@end{#2:end}%
5775       \printlines\xpageref{#2:start}|\xlineref{#2:start}|\xsublineref{#2:
start}|\xpageref{#2:end}|\xlineref{#2:end}|\xsublineref{#2:end}|\relax|\
xflagref{#2:start}|\%
5776       \undef\@this@crossref@end%
5777       \undef\@this@crossref@start%
5778     }%
5779   \def\do##1{%
5780     \setkeys[mac]{falsefootnoteoption}{##1}%
5781   }%
5782   \notblank{#1}{\docsvlist{#1}}{}%
5783 }%
5784
5785 \newcommand{\reformattedwithpage@}[3]{%
5786   \def\do##1{%
5787     \setkeys[mac]{truefootnoteoption}{##1}%
5788   }%
5789   \notblank{#1}{\docsvlist{#1}}{}%
5790   \xdef\@currentseries{#3withpage}%
5791   \ifboolexpr{%
5792     test{\ifcsundef{the@label#2:start}}%
5793     or test{\ifcsundef{the@label#2:end}}%
5794   }%
5795     {\led@warn@pairRefUndefined{#2}\nfss@text{\reset@font\bfseries ??}}%
5796     {%
5797       \def\@this@crossref@start{#2:start}%
5798       \def\@this@crossref@end{#2:end}%
5799       \printendlines\xpageref{#2:start}|\xlineref{#2:start}|\xsublineref{#2:

```

```

start}\xpageref{#2:end}|\xlineref{#2:end}|\xsublineref{#2:end}|\relax|\
xflagref{#2:start}|}%
5800 \undef\@this@crossref@end%
5801 \undef\@this@crossref@start%
5802 }%
5803 \def\do##1{%
5804 \setkeys[mac]{falsefootnoteoption}{##1}%
5805 }%
5806 \notblank{#1}{\docsvlist{#1}}}%
5807 }%
5808
5809 \newcommand{\reformattedonlypage@}[3]{%
5810 \def\do##1{%
5811 \setkeys[mac]{truefootnoteoption}{##1}%
5812 }%
5813 \notblank{#1}{\docsvlist{#1}}}%
5814 \xdef\@currentseries{#3onlypage}%
5815 \ifboolexpr{%
5816 test{\ifcsundef{the@label#2:start}}}%
5817 or test{\ifcsundef{the@label#2:end}}}%
5818 }%
5819 {\led@warn@pairRefUndefined{#2}\nfss@text{\reset@font\bfseries ??}}}%
5820 {\ifnumequal{\xpageref{#2:end}}{\xpageref{#2:start}}}%
5821 {%
5822 \printnpnum{%
5823 \wrap@edcrossref{#2:start}{\xpageref{#2:start}}}%
5824 }%
5825 }%
5826 {%
5827 \ifcsvoid{#3onlypage@prefixmore}%
5828 {}%
5829 {\csletcs{Xendbeforepagenumber@#3onlypage}{#3onlypage@prefixmore}}%
5830 \ifdefined\linangesep%
5831 \printnpnum{%
5832 \wrap@edcrossref{#2:start}{\xpageref{#2:start}}}%
5833 \linangesep%
5834 \wrap@edcrossref{#2:end}{\xpageref{#2:end}}}%
5835 }%
5836 \else%
5837 \printnpnum{%
5838 \wrap@edcrossref{#2:start}{\xpageref{#2:start}}}%
5839 \csuse{Xendlinangeseparator@\@currentseries}%
5840 \wrap@edcrossref{#2:end}{\xpageref{#2:end}}}%
5841 }%
5842 \fi%
5843 }%
5844 }%
5845 \def\do##1{%
5846 \setkeys[mac]{falsefootnoteoption}{##1}%
5847 }%

```



```

5848 \notblank{#1}{\docsvlist{#1}}{ }%
5849 }%
5850 %

```

**\edmakelabel** Sometimes the `\edlabel` command cannot be used to specify exactly the page and line desired; you can use the `\edmakelabel` macro make your own label. For example, if you insert `\edmakelabel{elephant}{10|25|0}` you will have created a new label, and a later call to `\edpageref{elephant}` would print ‘10’ and `\lineref{elephant}` would print ‘25’. The sub-line number here is zero. `\edmakelabel` takes a label, followed by a page and a line number(s) as arguments.  $\TeX$  defines a `\makelabel` macro which is used in lists. Peter Wilson has changed the name to `\edmakelabel`.

```

5851 \newcommand*{\edmakelabel}[2]{\expandafter\xdef\csname the@label#1\
endcsname{#2}}
5852
5853 %

```

(If you are only going to refer to such a label using `\xxref`, then you can omit entries in the same way as with `\linenum` (see VI.3 p. 125 and V.9 p. 93), since `\xxref` makes a call to `\linenum` in order to do its work.)

## XXIII.1 Compatibility with xref

Here, we provide compatibility with the `xref` to enable `reledmac`’s cross-referencing to external documents. We assume that the user loads `xref` *before* `reledmac`, but uses `\externaldocument` *after* loading `reledmac`.

**\XR@test** First, we patch the `xr` macro `\XR@test`, which is called on every line of the external `.aux` file, in order to also call macros specific to `reledmac`.

```

5854 \pretocmd{\XR@test}{%
5855   {\XR@test@mac+++#1#2#3#4+++}%
5856   { }%
5857   { }%
5858   %

```

**\XR@test@mac** The `\XR@test@mac` takes the full content of a line of the external `.aux` files, with the three final dots added by `xr`.

```

5859 \long\def\xR@test@mac+++#1+++{\XR@test@mac@test#1}
5860 %

```

**\XR@test@mac@test** And finally, `\XR@test@mac@test` does the job. This code is based on the `\XR@test` macro of the `xr` package. However, not that the `\XR@prefix` is not called here, but it is integrated directly in `\l@dmake@labels` and `\l@dmake@labelsR`.

```

5861 \long\def\xR@test@mac@test#1#2...{%The triple dots (NOT \ldots) are because
of the line 22 of xr.sty v5.02 1994/05/28
5862   \ifx#1\l@dmake@labels%

```

```

5863 \l@dmake@labels#2%
5864 \else
5865 \ifx#1\l@dmake@labelsR%
5866 \l@dmake@labelsR #2%
5867 \fi%
5868 \fi%
5869 }%
5870 %

```

## XXIV Side notes

Regular `\marginpars` do not work inside numbered text — they do not produce any note but do put an extra unnumbered blank line into the text.

`\@xympar` Changing `\@xympar` a little at least ensures that `\marginpars` in numbered text do not disturb the flow.

```

5871 \pretocmd{\@xympar}%
5872 {\ifnumberedpar@
5873 \led@warn@NoMarginpars
5874 \@esphack
5875 \else}%
5876 {}%
5877 {}%
5878
5879 \apptocmd{\@xympar}%
5880 {\fi}%
5881 {}
5882 {}
5883
5884 %

```

We provide side notes as replacement for `\marginpar` in numbered text.

`\sidenote@margin` These are the sidenote equivalents to `\line@margin` and `\linenummargin` for specifying which margin. The default is the right margin (opposite to the default for line numbers). `\l@dgetsidenote@margin` returns the number associated to side note margin:

**left:** 0

**right:** 1

**outer:** 2

**inner:** 3

```

5885 \newcount\sidenote@margin
5886 \newcommand*{\sidenotemargin}[1]{\{%
5887   \l@dgetsidenote@margin{#1}%
5888   \ifnum\@l@tempcntb>\m@ne
5889     \ifledRcol
5890       \global\sidenote@marginR=\@l@tempcntb
5891     \else
5892       \global\sidenote@margin=\@l@tempcntb
5893     \fi
5894   \fi}}
5895 \newcommand*{\l@dgetsidenote@margin}[1]{\%
5896   \def\@tempa{#1}\def\@tempb{left}%
5897   \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
5898     \@l@tempcntb \z@
5899   \else
5900     \def\@tempb{right}%
5901     \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
5902       \@l@tempcntb \@ne
5903     \else
5904       \def\@tempb{outer}%
5905       \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
5906         \@l@tempcntb \tw@
5907       \else
5908         \def\@tempb{inner}%
5909         \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
5910           \@l@tempcntb \thr@@
5911         \else
5912           \led@warn@BadSidenotemargin
5913           \@l@tempcntb \m@ne
5914         \fi
5915       \fi
5916     \fi
5917   \fi}
5918 \sidenotemargin{right}
5919
5920 %

```

**\l@dlp@rbox** We need two boxes to store sidenote texts.

```

\l@drp@rbox
5921 \newbox\l@dlp@rbox
5922 \newbox\l@drp@rbox
5923
5924 %

```

**\ledlsnotewidth** These specify the width of the left/right boxes (initialised to \marginparwidth), their distance from the text (initialised to \linenumsep), and the fonts used.

```

\ledrsnotewidth
\ledlsnotesep
5925 \newdimen\ledlsnotewidth \ledlsnotewidth=\marginparwidth
\ledrsnotesep
5926 \newdimen\ledrsnotewidth \ledrsnotewidth=\marginparwidth
\ledlsnotefontsetup
5927 \newdimen\ledlsnotesep \ledlsnotesep=\linenumsep
\ledrsnotefontsetup

```

```

5928 \newdimen\ledrsnotesep \ledrsnotesep=\linenumsep
5929 \newcommand*\ledlsnotefontsetup{\raggedleft\footnotesize}
5930 \newcommand*\ledrsnotefontsetup{\raggedright\footnotesize}
5931
5932 %

```

`\ledleftnote` `\ledleftnote`, `\ledrightnote`, `\ledinnernote`, `\ledouternote` are the user commands for left, right, inner and outer sidenotes. The two last one are just alias for the two first one, depending of the page number. `\ledsidenote{<text>}` is the command for a moveable sidenote.

```

\ledsidenote
5933 \newcommand*\ledleftnote[1]{\edtext{}\l@dlsnote{#1}}
5934 \newcommand*\ledrightnote[1]{\edtext{}\l@drsnote{#1}}
5935 \newcommand*\ledsidenote[1]{\edtext{}\l@dcnote{#1}}%
5936 \newcommand*\ledinnernote[1]{\edtext{}\l@disnote{#1}}%
5937 \newcommand*\ledouternote[1]{\edtext{}\l@dosnote{#1}}%
5938 %

```

`\l@dlsnote` . The ‘footnotes’ for left, right, and moveable sidenotes. The whole scheme is reminiscent of the critical footnotes code.

```

\l@drsnote
\l@dcnote
5939 \newif\ifrighnoteup
\l@desnote
5940 \righnoteuptrue
\l@disnote
5941
5942 \newcommand*\l@dlsnote[1]{%
5943   \begingroup%
5944   \newcommand{\content}{#1}%
5945   \ifnumberedpar@
5946     \ifledRcol%
5947       \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\l@dlsnote{\expandonce\content}}%
5948         \to\inserts@listR
5949       \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
5950     \else%
5951       \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\l@dlsnote{\expandonce\content}}%
5952         \to\inserts@list
5953       \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
5954     \fi
5955   \fi%
5956   \ignorespaces%
5957   \endgroup%
5958 }%
5959
5960 \newcommand*\l@drsnote[1]{%
5961   \begingroup%
5962   \newcommand{\content}{#1}%
5963   \ifnumberedpar@
5964     \ifledRcol%
5965       \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\l@drsnote{\expandonce\content}}%
5966         \to\inserts@listR
5967       \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%

```

```

5968 \else%
5969 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\vl@drsnote{\expandonce\content}}}%
5970 \to\inserts@list
5971 \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
5972 \fi
5973 \fi\ignorespaces%
5974 \endgroup%
5975 }%
5976
5977 \newcommand*{\l@dcsnote}[1]{%
5978 \begingroup%
5979 \newcommand{\content}{#1}%
5980 \ifnumberedpar@
5981 \ifledRcol%
5982 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\vl@dcsnote{\expandonce\content}}}%
5983 \to\inserts@listR
5984 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
5985 \else%
5986 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\vl@dcsnote{\expandonce\content}}}%
5987 \to\inserts@list
5988 \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
5989 \fi
5990 \fi\ignorespaces%
5991 \endgroup%
5992 }%
5993
5994 \newcommand*{\l@disnote}[1]{%
5995 \begingroup%
5996 \newcommand{\content}{#1}%
5997 \ifnumberedpar@%
5998 \ifledRcol%
5999 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\vl@disnote{\expandonce\content}}}%
6000 \to\inserts@listR%
6001 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
6002 \else%
6003 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\vl@disnote{\expandonce\content}}}%
6004 \to\inserts@list%
6005 \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
6006 \fi%
6007 \fi\ignorespaces%
6008 \endgroup%
6009 }%
6010
6011 \newcommand*{\l@dosnote}[1]{%
6012 \begingroup%
6013 \newcommand{\content}{#1}%
6014 \ifnumberedpar@%
6015 \ifledRcol%
6016 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\vl@dosnote{\expandonce\content}}}%
6017 \to\inserts@listR%

```

```

6018 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
6019 \else%
6020 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\vl@dosnote{\expandonce\content}}}%
6021 \to\inserts@list%
6022 \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
6023 \fi%
6024 \fi\ignorespaces%
6025 \endgroup%
6026 }%
6027
6028 %

```

`\vl@dlsnote` Put the left/right text into boxes, but just save the moveable text. `\l@dcsnotetext`, `\vl@drsnote` `\l@dcsnotetext@l` and `\l@dcsnotetext@r` are etoolbox's lists which will store the content of side notes. We store the content in lists, because we need to loop later on them, in case many sidenote co-exist for the same line. That is there some special test to do, in order to:

- Store the content of `\ledsidenote` to `\l@dcsnotetext` in any cases.
- Store the content of `\rightsidenote` to:
  - `\l@dcsnotetext` if `\ledsidenote` is to be put on right.
  - `\l@dcsnotetext@r` if `\ledsidenote` is to be put on left.
- Store the content of `\leftsidenote` to:
  - `\l@dcsnotetext` if `\ledsidenote` is to be put on left.
  - `\l@dcsnotetext@l` if `\ledsidenote` is to be put on right.

`\vl@disnote` and `\vl@dosnote` just call `\vl@dlsnote` or `\vl@drsnote`, depending of the page.

```

6029 \newcommand*{\vl@dlsnote}[1]{%
6030 \ifledRcol%
6031 \@l@tempcntb=\sidenote@marginR%
6032 \ifnum\@l@tempcntb>\@ne%
6033 \advance\@l@tempcntb by\page@numR%
6034 \fi%
6035 \else%
6036 \@l@tempcntb=\sidenote@margin%
6037 \ifnum\@l@tempcntb>\@ne%
6038 \advance\@l@tempcntb by\page@num%
6039 \fi%
6040 \fi%
6041 \ifodd\@l@tempcntb%
6042 \listgadd{\l@dcsnotetext@l}{#1}%
6043 \else%
6044 \listgadd{\l@dcsnotetext}{#1}%
6045 \fi

```

```

6046 }
6047 \newcommand*{\vl@drsnote}[1]{%
6048   \ifledRcol{%
6049     \@l@tempcntb=\sidenote@marginR%
6050     \ifnum\@l@tempcntb>\@ne%
6051       \advance\@l@tempcntb by\page@numR%
6052     \fi%
6053   \else%
6054     \@l@tempcntb=\sidenote@margin%
6055     \ifnum\@l@tempcntb>\@ne%
6056       \advance\@l@tempcntb by\page@num%
6057     \fi%
6058   \fi%
6059   \ifodd\@l@tempcntb%
6060     \listgadd{\l@dcsnotetext}{#1}%
6061   \else%
6062     \listgadd{\l@dcsnotetext@r}{#1}%
6063   \fi%
6064 }
6065 \newcommand*{\vl@dcsnote}[1]{\listgadd{\l@dcsnotetext}{#1}}
6066
6067 \newcommand{\vl@disnote}[1]{%
6068   \ifledRcol{%
6069     \@tempcnta=\page@numR%
6070   \else%
6071     \@tempcnta=\page@num%
6072   \fi%
6073   \ifodd\@tempcnta% ODD => right page => inner side = left side
6074     \vl@dlsnote{#1}%
6075   \else%
6076     \vl@drsnote{#1}%
6077   \fi%
6078 }%
6079
6080 \newcommand{\vl@dosnote}[1]{%
6081   \ifledRcol{%
6082     \@tempcnta=\page@numR%
6083   \else%
6084     \@tempcnta=\page@num%
6085   \fi%
6086   \ifodd\@tempcnta% ODD => right page => outer side = right side
6087     \vl@drsnote{#1}%
6088   \else%
6089     \vl@dlsnote{#1}%
6090   \fi%
6091 }%
6092
6093 %

```

`\setl@dlp@rbox` `\setl@dlprbox{<lednums>}{<tag>}{<text>}` puts <text> into the \l@dlp@rbox box.  
`\setl@drpr@box`

And similarly for the right side box. It is these boxes that finally get displayed in the margins.

```

6094 \newcommand*\setl@dlp@rbox}[1]{%
6095   \begingroup%
6096   \parindent\z@\hsize=\ledlsnotewidth%
6097   \ledlsnotefontsetup%We kept it outside of the vbox, because can affect
the ragging
6098   \global\setbox\l@dlp@rbox%
6099   \ifleftnoteup%
6100     =\vbox to\z@{\{\ledlsnotefontsetup\vss #1}\}%We put \
ledlsnotefontsetup inside footnote because required for color command. Note
the {} to keep setting local.
6101     \else%
6102     =\vbox to 0.70\baselineskip{\{\ledlsnotefontsetup\strut#1\vss}\}%
6103     \fi%
6104   \endgroup%
6105 }
6106
6107 \newcommand*\setl@drp@rbox}[1]{%
6108   \begingroup%
6109   \parindent\z@\hsize=\ledrsnotewidth%
6110   \ledrsnotefontsetup%We kept it outside of the vbox, because can affect
the ragging
6111   \global\setbox\l@drp@rbox%
6112   \ifrightrightnoteup%
6113     =\vbox to\z@{\{\ledrsnotefontsetup\vss#1}\}%We put \ledrsnotefontsetup
inside footnote because required for color command. Note the {} to keep
setting local.
6114     \else%
6115     =\vbox to0.7\baselineskip{\{\ledrsnotefontsetup\strut#1\vss}\}%
6116     \fi%
6117   \endgroup%
6118 }%
6119 \newif\ifleftnoteup
6120 \leftnoteuptrue
6121 %

```

**\@sidenotesep** This macro is used to separate sidenotes of the same line.

```

6122 \newcommand{\setsidenotesep}[1]{\gdef\@sidenotesep{#1}}
6123 \newcommand{\@sidenotesep}{, }
6124 %

```

**\affixside@note** This macro puts any moveable sidenote text into the left or right sidenote box, depending on which margin it is meant to go in. It's a very much stripped down version of `\affixlin@num`.

Before do it, we concatenate all moveable sidenotes of the line, using `\@sidenotesep` as separator. It is the result that we put on the sidenote.



```

6125 \newcommand*{\affixside@note}{%
6126   \def\sidenotecontent@{%
6127     \numgdef{\itemcount@}{0}%
6128     \def\do##1{%
6129       \ifnumequal{\itemcount@}{0}%
6130         {%
6131           \appto\sidenotecontent@{##1}}% Not print not separator before
the 1st note
6132         {\appto\sidenotecontent@{\@sidenotesep ##1}%
6133          }%
6134         \numgdef{\itemcount@}{\itemcount@+\@ne}%
6135       }%
6136     \dolistloop{\l@dcstotetext}%
6137     \ifnumgreater{\itemcount@}{1}{\led@err@ManySidenotes}{}%
6138   }%

```

And we do the same for left and right notes (not movable).

```

6139 \gdef\@templ@d{%
6140 \gdef\@templ@n{\l@dcstotetext\l@dcstotetext@1\l@dcstotetext@r}%
6141 \ifx\@templ@d\@templ@n \else%
6142   \if@twocolumn%
6143     \if@firstcolumn%
6144       \setl@dlp@rbox{##1}{\sidenotecontent@}%
6145     \else%
6146       \setl@drp@rbox{\sidenotecontent@}%
6147     \fi%
6148   \else%
6149     \l@dttempcntb=\sidenote@margin%
6150     \ifnum\l@dttempcntb>\@ne%
6151       \advance\l@dttempcntb by\page@num%
6152     \fi%
6153     \ifodd\l@dttempcntb%
6154       \setl@drp@rbox{\sidenotecontent@}%
6155       \gdef\sidenotecontent@{%
6156         \numgdef{\itemcount@}{0}%
6157         \dolistloop{\l@dcstotetext@1}%
6158         \ifnumgreater{\itemcount@}{1}{\led@err@ManyLeftnotes}{}%
6159         \setl@dlp@rbox{\sidenotecontent@}%
6160       \else%
6161         \setl@dlp@rbox{\sidenotecontent@}%
6162         \gdef\sidenotecontent@{%
6163           \numgdef{\itemcount@}{0}%
6164           \dolistloop{\l@dcstotetext@r}%
6165           \ifnumgreater{\itemcount@}{1}{\led@err@ManyRightnotes}{}%
6166           \setl@drp@rbox{\sidenotecontent@}%
6167         \fi%
6168       \fi%
6169     \fi%
6170   }
6171   %

```

## XXV Minipages and such

We can put footnotes into minipages. The preparatory code has been set up earlier, all that remains is to ensure that it is available inside a minipage box. This requires some alteration to the kernel code, specifically the `\@iiminipage` and `\endminipage` macros. We will arrange this so that additional series can be easily added.

`\l@dfetbeginmini` These will be the hooks in `\@iiminipage` and `\endminipage`.  
`\l@dfetendmini` They can be extended to handle other things if necessary.

```

6172 \ifnoledgroup@else%
6173 \newcommand*{\l@dfetbeginmini}{\@ledgrouptrue\l@dedbeginmini\
l@dfambeginmini}
6174 \newcommand*{\l@dfetendmini}{%
6175   \IfStrEq{critical-familiar}{\@mpfnpos}%
6176   {\l@dedendmini\l@dfamendmini}%
6177   {%
6178     \IfStrEq{familiar-critical}{\@mpfnpos}%
6179     {\l@dfamendmini\l@dedendmini}%
6180     {\l@dedendmini\l@dfamendmini}%
6181   }%
6182 }%
6183 %

```

`\l@dedbeginmini` These handle the initiation and closure of critical footnotes in a minipage environment.  
`\l@dedendmini`

```

6184 \newcommand*{\l@dedbeginmini}{%
6185   \unless\ifnocritical@%
6186   \def\do##1{\csletcs{v##1footnote}{mpv##1footnote}}%
6187   \dolistloop{\@series}%
6188   \fi%
6189 }
6190 \newcommand*{\l@dedendmini}{%
6191   \unless\ifnocritical@%
6192   \ifl@dpairing%
6193     \ifledRcol%
6194       \flush@notesR%
6195     \else%
6196       \flush@notes%
6197     \fi%
6198   \fi
6199   \def\do##1{%
6200     \ifvoid\csuse{mp##1footins}\else%
6201     \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
6202       \ifledRcol%
6203         \dimgdef{\parledgroup@beforenotesR}{\parledgroup@beforenotesR+
skip\@nameuse{mp##1footins}}%
6204       \else%
6205         \dimgdef{\parledgroup@beforenotesL}{\parledgroup@beforenotesL
+skip\@nameuse{mp##1footins}}%

```

```

6206         \fi%
6207         \fi\fi%
6208         \csuse{mp##1footgroup}{##1}%
6209     \fi}%
6210     \dolistloop{\@series}%
6211 \fi%
6212 }%
6213 %
6214 %

```

`\l@dfambeginmini` These handle the initiation and closure of familiar footnotes in a minipage environment.

`\l@dfamendmini`

```

6215 \newcommand*\l@dfambeginmini{%
6216     \unless\ifnofamiliar%
6217     \def\do##1{\csletcs{vfootnote##1}{mpvfootnote##1}}%
6218     \dolistloop{\@series}%
6219 \fi%
6220 }%
6221
6222 \newcommand*\l@dfamendmini{%
6223     \unless\ifnofamiliar%
6224     \def\do##1{%
6225         \ifvoid\csuse{mpfootins##1}\else%
6226         \csuse{mpfootgroup##1}{##1}%
6227         \fi}%
6228     \dolistloop{\@series}%
6229 \fi%
6230 }%
6231 %

```

`\@iiiminipage` This is our extended form of the kernel `\@iiiminipage` defined in `ltboxes.dtx`.

```

6232 \patchcmd%
6233 {\@iiiminipage}%
6234 {\let\@footnotetext\@mpfootnotetext}%
6235 {\let\@footnotetext\@mpfootnotetext\l@dfeetbeginmini}%
6236 {}%
6237 {\led@error@fail@patch@\@iiiminipage}%
6238 %

```

`\endminipage` This is our extended form of the kernel `\endminipage` defined in `ltboxes.dtx`.

```

6239 \patchcmd%
6240 {\endminipage}%
6241 {\footnoterule}%
6242 {\footnoterule\l@advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes}%
6243 {}%
6244 {\led@error@fail@patch@endminipage}%
6245
6246 \patchcmd%

```

```

6247 {\endminipage}%
6248 {\@minipagefalse}%
6249 {\l@dfeetendmini\@minipagefalse}%
6250 {}%
6251 {\led@error@fail@patch@endminipage}
6252
6253 %

```

`\l@dunboxmpfoot` `\l@dunboxmpfoot` insert normal footnotes for ledgroup.  
`\advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes`

```

6254 \newcommand*{\l@dunboxmpfoot}{%
6255   \vskip\skip\@mpfootins
6256   \normalcolor
6257   \footnoterule
6258   \l@advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes
6259   \unvbox\@mpfootins%
6260 }
6261 %

```

When using parallel ledgroup, we need to store the vertical space added before footnote, in order to compensate them between left and right pages.

```

6262 \newcommand{\l@advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes}{%
6263   \ifparledgroup
6264     \ifl@dpairing
6265       \ifledRcol
6266         \dimgdef{\parledgroup@beforenotesR}{\parledgroup@beforenotesR+
skip\@mpfootins}
6267       \else
6268         \dimgdef{\parledgroup@beforenotesL}{\parledgroup@beforenotesL+
skip\@mpfootins}
6269       \fi
6270     \fi
6271   \fi
6272 }
6273 %

```

`ledgroup` This environment puts footnotes at the end, even if that happens to be in the middle of a page, or crossing a page boundary. It is a sort of unboxed, fixed width minipage.

```

6274 \newenvironment{ledgroup}{%
6275   \resetprevpage@num%
6276   \def\@mpfn{mpfootnote}\def\thempfn{\thempfootnote}\c@mpfootnote\z@%
6277   \let\@footnotetext\@mpfootnotetext
6278   \l@dfeetbeginmini%
6279 }{%
6280   \par
6281   \unskip

```

```

6283 \ifvoid\@mpfootins\else
6284   \l@dunboxmpfoot
6285 \fi
6286 \l@dfeetendmini%
6287 \@ledgroupfalse%
6288 }
6289
6290
6291 %

```

```

    ledgroupsize \begin{ledgroupsize}[\langle pos \rangle]{\langle width \rangle}

```

This environment puts footnotes at the end, even if that happens to be in the middle of a page, or crossing a page boundary. It is a sort of unboxed, variable  $\langle width \rangle$  minipage. The optional  $\langle pos \rangle$  controls the sideways position of numbered text.

```

6292 \newenvironment{ledgroupsize}[2][1]{%
6293 %

```

Set the various text measures.

```

6294 \hspace #2\relax
6295 %

```

Initialize fills for centering.

```

6296 \let\ledllfill\hfil
6297 \let\ledrlfill\hfil
6298 \def\@tempa{#1}\def\@tempb{1}%
6299 %

```

Left adjusted numbered lines

```

6300 \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
6301 \let\ledllfill\relax
6302 \else
6303 \def\@tempb{r}%
6304 \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
6305 %

```

Right adjusted numbered lines

```

6306 \let\ledrlfill\relax
6307 \fi
6308 \fi
6309 %

```

Set up the footnoting.

```

6310 \def\@mpfn{mpfootnote}\def\thempfn{\thempfootnote}\c@mpfootnote\z@
6311 \let\@footnotetext\@mpfootnotetext
6312 \l@dfeetbeginmini%
6313 }{%
6314 \par
6315 \unskip
6316 \ifvoid\@mpfootins\else

```

```

6317 \l@dunboxmpfoot
6318 \fi
6319 \l@dfeetendmini%
6320 }
6321
6322 %

```

Close the \ifnoledgroup@\else.

```

6323 \fi%
6324 %

```

`\ifledgroupnotesL@` These boolean tests check if we are in the notes of a ledgroup. If we are, we do not  
`\ifledgroupnotesR@` number the lines. It could be useful for parallel ledgroup of `reledpar`.

```

6325 \newif\ifledgroupnotesL@
6326 \newif\ifledgroupnotesR@
6327 %

```

## XXVI Indexing

Here is some code for indexing using page and line numbers.

### XXVI.1 Looking on package order

First, ensure that `imakeidx` or `indextools` is loaded *before* `eledmac`.

```

6328 \AtBeginDocument{%
6329 \unless\ifl@imakeidx%
6330 \@ifpackageloaded{imakeidx}{\led@error@ImakeidxAfterEledmac}{}%
6331 \fi%
6332 \unless\ifl@indextools%
6333 \@ifpackageloaded{indextools}{\led@error@indextoolsAfterEledmac}{}%
6334 \fi%
6335 }
6336 %

```

### XXVI.2 Auxiliary macros for `\edindex`

`\pagelinesep` In order to get a correct line number we have to use the label/ref mechanism. These  
`\edindexlab` macros are for that.

```

\c@labidx
6337 \newcommand{\pagelinesep}{-}
6338 \newcommand{\edindexlab}{\&\&}
6339 \newcounter{labidx}
6340 \setcounter{labidx}{0}
6341
6342 %

```

`\doedindexlabel` This macro sets an `\edlabel`.

```

6343 \newcommand{\doedindexlabel}{%
6344   \stepcounter{labidx}%
6345   \edlabel{\edindexlab\thelabidx}%
6346 }
6347
6348 %

```

`\thepageline` This macro makes up the page/line number combo from the label/ref. The associated counter is never directly used, but it is required in order to not have any error message with `\edgls`.

```

6349 \newcounter{pageline}%
6350 \renewcommand{\thepageline}{%
6351   \thepage%
6352   \pagelinesep%
6353   \xlineref{\edindexlab\thelabidx}%
6354 }
6355 %

```

`\thestartpageline` These macros make up the page/line start/end number when the `\edindex` command is called in critical notes.

`\theendpageline`

```

6356 \newcommand{\thestartpageline}{%
6357   \l@dparsedstartpage%
6358   \pagelinesep%
6359   \l@dparsedstartline%
6360 }
6361 \newcommand{\theendpageline}{%
6362   \l@dparsedendpage%
6363   \pagelinesep%
6364   \l@dparsedendline%
6365 }
6366 %

```

### XXVI.3 Code specific to `\edindex` in critical footnotes

`\if@edindex@fornote@true` This boolean test is switching at the beginning of each critical note, to allow index referring to this note.

```

6367 \newif\if@edindex@fornote@
6368 %

```

`\prepare@edindex@fornote` This macro is called at the beginning of each critical note. It switches some parameters, to allow index referring to this note, with reference to page and line number. It also defines `\@ledinnote@command` which will be printed as an encapsulating command after the |.

```

6369 \newcommand{\prepare@edindex@fornote}[1]{%
6370     \l@dp@rsefootspec#1|}%
6371     \@edindex@fornote@true%
6372 }
6373 %

```

`\get@edindex@ledinnote@command` The `\get@edindex@ledinnote@command` macro defines a `\@ledinnote@command` command which is added as an attribute (text inserted after |) of the next index entry. Consequently, we write the definition of the location reference attribute in the .xdy file.

```

6374 \newcommand{\get@edindex@ledinnote@command}{%
6375     \ifxindy@%
6376         \gdef\@ledinnote@command{%
6377             ledinnote\thelabidx%
6378         }%
6379         \ifxindyhyperref@%
6380             \immediate\write\eledmac@xindyout{%
6381                 (define-attributes ("ledinnote\thelabidx"))^^J
6382                 \space\space(markup-locref^^J
6383                 \eledmacmarkuplocdepth^^J
6384                 :open "\string\ledinnote[\edindexlab\thelabidx]{\@index@command
6385             }{"^^J
6386                 :close "}"^^J
6387                 :attr "ledinnote\thelabidx"^^J
6388             )
6389         }%
6390         \else%
6391             \immediate\write\eledmac@xindyout{%
6392                 (define-attributes ("ledinnote\thelabidx"))^^J
6393                 \space\space(markup-locref^^J
6394                 \eledmacmarkuplocdepth^^J
6395                 :open "\string\ledinnote{\@index@command}{\"^^J
6396                 :close "}"^^J
6397                 :attr "ledinnote\thelabidx"^^J
6398             )
6399         }%
6400     }%
6401     \fi%
6402 }
6403 %

```

If we do not use xindy option, `\@ledinnote@command` will produce something like `ledinnote{formattingcommand}`.

```

6401 \else%
6402     \gdef\@ledinnote@command{%
6403         ledinnote[\edindexlab\thelabidx]{\@index@command}%
6404     }%
6405     \fi%
6406 }
6407 %

```



## XXVI.4 Analysis of command in indexed text

`\get@index@command` This macro is used to analyze if a text to be indexed has a command after a |.

```

6408 \def\get@index@command#1|#2+{%
6409   \gdef\@index@txt{#1}%
6410   \gdef\@index@command{#2}%
6411   \xdef\@index@parenthesis{%
6412     \IfBeginWith{\@index@command}{(}{%
6413       \StrGobbleLeft{\@index@command}{1}[\@index@command@]%
6414       \global\let\@index@command\@index@command@%
6415       \xdef\@index@parenthesis{(%
6416     }{%
6417     \IfBeginWith{\@index@command}{)}{%
6418       \StrGobbleLeft{\@index@command}{1}[\@index@command@]%
6419       \global\let\@index@command\@index@command@%
6420       \xdef\@index@parenthesis{)}%
6421     }{%
6422   }
6423   %

```

## XXVI.5 Code for the formatted index

`\ledinnote` These macros are used to specify that an index reference points to a note. Arguments of `\ledinnote` are: #1 (optional): the label for the hyperlink, #2: command applied to the number, #3: the number itself.

`\ledinnotehyperpage`

`\ledinnotemark`

```

6424 \newcommandx{\ledinnote}[3][1,usedefault]{%
6425   \ifboolexpr{%
6426     test{\ifdefequal{\iftrue}{\ifHy@hyperindex}}%
6427     or%
6428     bool {xindyhyperref@}%
6429   }%
6430   {%
6431     \csuse{#2}{\hyperlink{#1}{\ledinnotemark{#3}}}%
6432   }%
6433   {%
6434     \csuse{#2}{\ledinnotemark{#3}}%
6435   }%
6436 }%
6437 \newcommand{\ledinnotehyperpage}[2]{\csuse{#1}{\ledinnotemark{\hyperpage
6438   {#2}}}%
6439 %

```

## XXVI.6 Main code

Eledmac and ledmac were using the specific indexing tools of the memoir in order to allow multiple index. However, eledmac used imakeidx or indextools tools when

one these two package was loaded. This system forced to maintained a double code, which was not very useful. Since `reledmac`, we use only the `imakeidx` or `indextools` tools.

The memoir class provides more flexible indexing than the standard classes. We need different code if the memoir class is being used, except if `imakeidx` or `indextools` is used.

```

\edindex Write the index information to the idx file.
\@wredindex
6440 \newcommand{\@wredindex}[2][1=\expandonce\jobname,usedefault]{%#1 = the
index name, #2 = the text
6441 \ifl@imakeidx%
6442 \if@edindex@fornote%
6443 \IfSubStr[1]{#2}{|}{\get@index@command#2+}{\get@index@command#2|+}%
6444 \get@edindex@ledinnote@command%
6445 \expandafter\imki@wrindexentry{#1}{\@index@txt|(\@ledinnote@command
}{\thestartpageline}%
6446 \expandafter\imki@wrindexentry{#1}{\@index@txt|)\@ledinnote@command
}{\theendpageline}%
6447 \else%
6448 \get@edindex@hyperref{#2}%
6449 \imki@wrindexentry{#1}{\@index@txt\@edindex@hyperref}{\thepageline}%
6450 \fi%
6451 \else%
6452 \if@edindex@fornote%
6453 \IfSubStr[1]{#2}{|}{\get@index@command#2+}{\get@index@command#2|+}%
6454 \get@edindex@ledinnote@command%
6455 \expandafter\protected@write\@indexfile{}%
6456 {\string\indexentry{\@index@txt|(\@ledinnote@command}{\thestartpageline}
}{\theendpageline}%
6457 \expandafter\protected@write\@indexfile{}%
6458 {\string\indexentry{\@index@txt|)\@ledinnote@command}{\theendpageline}
}{\theendpageline}%
6459 \fi%
6460 \else%
6461 \protected@write\@indexfile{}%
6462 {\string\indexentry{#2}{\thepageline}
}{\thepageline}%
6463 \fi%
6464 \endgroup
6465 \esphack%
6466 }
6467 %

```

Need to add the definition of `\edindex` to `\makeindex`, and initialise `\edindex` to do nothing.

```

6471 \pretocmd{\makeindex}{%
6472 \def\edindex{\@bsphack
6473 \doedindexlabel
6474 \begingroup

```

```

6475 \@sanitize
6476 \@wredindex}}{}{}
6477 \newcommand{\edindex}[1]{\@bsphack\@esphack}
6478 %

```

## XXVI.7 Hyperlink

**\hyperlinkformat** \hyperlinkformat command is to be used to have both a internal hyperlink and a format, when indexing.

```

6479 \newcommand{\hyperlinkformat}[3]{%
6480 \ifstrepty{#1}%
6481 {\hyperlink{#2}{#3}}%
6482 {\csuse{#1}{\hyperlink{#2}{#3}}}%
6483 }}
6484 %

```

**\hyperlinkR** \hyperlinkR command is to be used to create a internal hyperlink and \ledRflag, when indexing.

```

6485 \newcommand{\hyperlinkR}[2]{%
6486 \hyperlink{#1}{#2\@Rlineflag}%
6487 }%
6488 %
6489 %

```

**\hyperlinkformatR** \hyperlinkformatR command is to be used to create a internal hyperlink, a format and a \@Rlineflag, when indexing.

```

6490 \newcommand{\hyperlinkformatR}[3]{%
6491 \hyperlinkformat{#1}{#2}{#3\@Rlineflag}%
6492 }%
6493 %
6494 %

```

**\get@edindex@hyperref** \get@edindex@hyperref is to be used to define the \@edindex@hyperref macro, which, in index, links to the point where the index was called (with hyperref).

```

6495 \newcommand{\get@edindex@hyperref}[1]{%
6496 %

```

We have to disable temporary spaces to work through a xstring bug (or feature?)

```

6497 \edef\temp@{%
6498 \catcode`\ =9 %space need for catcode
6499 \detokenize{#1}%For active character in unicode
6500 \catcode`\ =10 % space need for catcode
6501 }%
6502 %

```

Now, we define \@edindex@hyperref if the hyperindex of hyperref is enabled.

```

6503 \ifdefequal{\iftrue}{\ifHy@hyperindex}{%
6504   \IfSubStr{\temp@}{|}%
6505     {\get@index@command#1+%
6506       \ifledRcol%
6507         \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{|\@index@parenthesis %space kept
6508           hyperlinkformatR{\@index@command}%
6509             {\edindexlab\thelabidx}}%
6510       \else%
6511         \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{|\@index@parenthesis %space kept
6512           hyperlinkformat{\@index@command}%
6513             {\edindexlab\thelabidx}}%
6514       \fi%
6515     }%
6516     {\get@index@command#1|+%
6517       \ifledRcol%
6518         \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{|\hyperlinkR{\edindexlab\thelabidx}}%
6519       \else%
6520         \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{|\hyperlink{\edindexlab\thelabidx}}%
6521       \fi%
6522     }%
6523   }%
6524 %

6525 % If we use both xindy and hyperref, first get the \protect\cs{
index@command} command.
6526 % Then define \protect\cs{@edindex@hyperref} in the form \verb+eledmacXXX+
6527 % \begin{macrocode}
6528 {\ifxindyhyperref%
6529   \IfSubStr{\temp@}{|}%
6530     {\get@index@command#1+%
6531       {\get@index@command#1|+%
6532         \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{|\eledmac\thelabidx}%
6533       }%
6534     }%
6535   }%
6536   \csxdef{xindyparenthesis@{\@index@txt}{\thelabidx}%
6537     \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{|\eledmac\thelabidx}%
6538   }%
6539   {}%
6540 %

```

If we start a reference range by a opening parenthesis, store the `\thelabidx` for the current `\edindex`, then define `\@edindex@hyperref` in the form `|\eledmac\thelabidx`.

```

6534 \IfStrEq{\@index@parenthesis}{(}%
6535 {%
6536   \csxdef{xindyparenthesis@{\@index@txt}{\thelabidx}%
6537     \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{|\eledmac\thelabidx}%
6538   }%
6539   {}%
6540 %

```

This `\thelabidx` will be called back at the closing parenthesis, to have the same number in `\@edindex@hyperref` command that we had at the opening parenthesis. `\@edindex@hyperref` start by a closing parenthesis, then followed by `eledmacXXX` where `XXX` is the `\thelabidx` of the opening `\edindex`.

```

6541 \IfStrEq{\@index@parenthesis}{)}%

```

```

6542 {%
6543 \xdef\@edindex@hyperref{|\}eledmac\csuse{xindyparenthesis@
\index@txt}}}%
6544 \global\csundef{xindyparenthesis@\@index@txt}}%
6545 }%
6546 %

```

Write in the .xdy file the attributes of the location.

```

6547 {%
6548 \immediate\write\eledmac@xindy@out{%
6549 (define-attributes ("eledmac\thelabidx"))^^J
6550 \space\space(markup-locref^^J
6551 \eledmacmarkuplocdepth^^J
6552 :open "\string\hyperlink%
6553 \ifledRcol R\fi%
6554 {\edindexlab\thelabidx}%
6555 {\ifdefempty{\@index@command}%
6556 {}}%
6557 {\@backslashchar\@index@command}%
6558 {"^^J
6559 :close "}}^^J
6560 :attr "eledmac\thelabidx"^^J
6561 )
6562 }%
6563 }%
6564 %

```

And now, in any other case.

```

6565 \else%
6566 \gdef\@index@txt{#1}%
6567 \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{}%
6568 \fi%
6569 }%
6570 }
6571 %

```

## XXVI.8 ‘innote’ and ‘notenumber’ option of indextols package

**\led@set@index@fornote** The `\led@set@index@fornote` is called when a familiar footnote is inserted — and not when it is read — and changes the `\index` command depending of the option of the `indextols` package. Its only argument is the note series.

```

6572 \newcommand{\led@set@index@fornote}[1]{%
6573 \ifbool{indtl@innote}%
6574 {\let\index\nindex}%
6575 }%
6576 \ifbool{indtl@notenumber}%
6577 {%

```

```

6578 \renewcommand{\index}[2][\indtl@jobname]{%
6579 \orig@@index[##1]{%
6580 ##2|innotenumber{\csuse{thefootnote#1}}}%
6581 }%
6582 }%
6583 }%
6584 {}%
6585 }%
6586 %

```

`\led@reinit@index@fornote` The `\led@reinit@index@fornote` just reset the default value of `\index`.

```

6587 \newcommand{\led@reinit@index@fornote}{%
6588 \ifbool{indtl@innote}%
6589 {\let\index\orig@@index}%
6590 {}%
6591 \ifbool{indtl@notenumber}%
6592 {\let\index\orig@@index}%
6593 {}%
6594 }%
6595 %

```

## XXVII Glossaries

Here, we define the `\gls`-like commands prefixed by `ed`, only if the package `glossaries` is loaded.

```

6596 \AtBeginDocument{%
6597 \@ifpackageloaded{glossaries}{%
6598 %

```

First those which arguments are `[<options>]{<label>}[<insert>]`.

```

6599 \renewcommand{\do}[1]{%
6600 \expandafter\DeclareRobustCommand\csname ed#1\endcsname[3][1,3,
usedefault]{%
6601 \doedindexlabel%
6602 \csname#1\endcsname[counter=pageline,##1]{##2}[##3]%
6603 }%
6604 \expandafter\WithSuffix\expandafter\DeclareRobustCommand\csname ed
#1\endcsname*[3][1,3,usedefault]{%
6605 \doedindexlabel%
6606 \csname#1\endcsname*[counter=pageline,##1]{##2}[##3]%
6607 }%
6608 }%
6609 \docsvlist{%
6610 gls,%
6611 GLs,%
6612 GLS,%
6613 glspl,%

```

```

6614 Glspl,%
6615 GLSpl,%
6616 glstext,%
6617 Glstext,%
6618 GLStext,%
6619 Glsfirst,%
6620 GLSfirst,%
6621 glsplural%
6622 Glsplural,%
6623 GLSplural,%
6624 glsfirstplural,%
6625 Glsfirstplural,%
6626 GLSfirstplural,%
6627 glsname,%
6628 Glsname,%
6629 GLSname,%
6630 glssymbol,%
6631 Glssymbol,%
6632 GLSsymbol,%
6633 glsdesc,%
6634 Glsdesc,%
6635 GLSdesc,%
6636 glsuseri,%
6637 Glsuseri,%
6638 GLSuseri,%
6639 glsuserii,%
6640 Glsuserii,%
6641 GLSuserii,%
6642 glsuseriii,%
6643 Glsuseriii,%
6644 GLSuseriii,%
6645 glsuseriv,%
6646 Glsuseriv,%
6647 GLSuseriv,%
6648 glsuserv,%
6649 Glsuserv,%
6650 GLSuserv,%
6651 glsuservi,%
6652 Glsuservi,%
6653 GLSuservi%
6654 }%
6655 %

```

First those which arguments are [*options*]{*label*}{*link text*}.

```

6656 \renewcommand{\do}[1]{%
6657 \expandafter\DeclareRobustCommandx\cscname ed#1\endcscname[3][1,
usedefault]{%
6658 \doedindexlabel%
6659 \cscname#1\endcscname[counter=pageline,##1]{##2}{##3}%
6660 }%

```

```

6661 \expandafter\WithSuffix\expandafter\DeclareRobustCommand\csname ed
#1\endcsname*[3][1,usedefault]{%
6662 \doedindexlabel%
6663 \csname#1\endcsname*[counter=pageline,##1]{##2}{##3}%
6664 }%
6665 }%
6666 \docsvlist{glsdisp,glslink}%
6667 }{}%
6668 }%
6669 %

```

## XXVIII Verse

The original code is principally Wayne Sullivan's code from `edstanza`. However, the code has been many time modified by Maïeul Rouquette in order to obtain new features and improved compatibility with `reledpar`.

### XXVIII.1 Hanging symbol management

`\@hangingsymbol` The macro `\@hangingsymbol` is used to insert a symbol on each hanging of verses. It is set by user level macro `\sethangingsymbol`.  
`\ifinstanza` For example, in french typographie the symbol is '['. We obtain it by the next code:

```
\sethangingsymbol{[,}
```

The `\ifinstanza` boolean is used to be sure that we are in a stanza part.

```

6670 \def\@hangingsymbol{}
6671 \newcommand*\sethangingsymbol[1]{%
6672 \gdef\@hangingsymbol{#1}%
6673 }%
6674 \newif\ifinstanza
6675 %

```

`\inserthangingsymbol` The boolean `\ifinserthangingsymbol` is set to TRUE when `\@lock` is greater than 1, i.e. when we are not in the first line of a verse. The switch of `\ifinserthangingsymbol` is made in `\do@line` before the printing of line but after the line number calculation.

```

6676 \newif\ifinserthangingsymbol
6677 \newcommand\inserthangingsymbol{%
6678 \ifinserthangingsymbol%
6679 \ifinstanza%
6680 \@hangingsymbol%
6681 \fi%
6682 \fi%
6683 }
6684 %

```



## XXVIII.2 Using & character

**\ampersand** Within a stanza the \& macro is going to be usurped. We need an alias in case an & needs to be typeset in a stanza. Define it rather than letting it in case some other package has already defined it.

```
6685 \newcommand*\ampersand{\char`\&}
6686
6687 %
```

## XXVIII.3 Code category setting

**\stanza@count** Before we can define the main macros we need to save and reset some category codes.  
**\stanzaindentbase** To save the current values we use \next and \body from the \loop macro.

```
6688 \chardef\body=\catcode`\@
6689 \catcode`\@=11
6690 \chardef\next=\catcode`\&
6691 \catcode`\&=\active
6692
6693 %
```

## XXVIII.4 Stanza count and indent

A count register is allocated for counting lines in a stanza; also allocated is a dimension register which is used to specify the base value for line indentation; all stanza indentations are multiples of this value. The default value of \stanzaindentbase is 20pt.

```
6694 \newcount\stanza@count
6695 \newlength{\stanzaindentbase}
6696 \setlength{\stanzaindentbase}{20pt}
6697
6698 %
```

**\strip@szacnt** The indentations of stanza lines are non-negative integer multiples of the unit called  
**\setstanzavalues** \stanzaindentbase. To make it easier for the user to specify these numbers, some list macros are defined. These take numerical values in a list separated by commas and assign the values to special control sequences using \mathchardef. Though this does limit the range from 0 to 32767, it should suffice for most applications, including *penalties*, which will be discussed below.

```
6699 \def\strip@szacnt#1,#2|{\def\@tempb{#1}\def\@tempa{#2|}}
6700 \newcommand*\setstanzavalues}[2]{\def\@tempa{#2,,|}%
6701   \stanza@count\z@
6702   \def\next{\expandafter\strip@szacnt\@tempa
6703     \ifx\@tempb\empty\let\next\relax\else
6704       \expandafter\mathchardef\csname #1@number\stanza@count
6705       \@endcsname\@tempb\relax
6706       \advance\stanza@count\@ne\fi\next}%
```

```

6707 \next}
6708
6709 %

```

**\setstanzaindents** In the original edmac, `\setstanzavalues{sza}{⟨...⟩}` had to be called to set the indents, and similarly `\setstanzavalues{szp}{⟨...⟩}` to set the penalties. `\setstanzaindents` and `\setstanzapenalties` macros are a convenience to give the user one less thing to worry about (misspelling the first argument).

```

6710 \newcommand*{\setstanzaindents}[1]{\setstanzavalues{sza}{#1}}
6711 \newcommand*{\setstanzapenalties}[1]{\setstanzavalues{szp}{#1}}
6712 %
6713 %

```

**\managestanza@modulo** Since version 0.13, the `stanzaindentsrepetition` counter can be used when the indentation is repeated every *n* verses. The `\managestanza@modulo` is a command which modifies the counter `stanza@modulo`. The command adds 1 to `stanza@modulo`, but if `stanza@modulo` is equal to the `stanzaindentsrepetition` counter, the command restarts it.

```

6714 \newcounter{stanzaindentsrepetition}
6715 \newcount\stanza@modulo
6716
6717 \newcommand*{\managestanza@modulo}[0]{%
6718   \advance\stanza@modulo\@ne%
6719   \ifnum\stanza@modulo>\value{stanzaindentsrepetition}%
6720     \stanza@modulo\@ne%
6721   \fi%
6722 }
6723 %

```

**\stanzaindent** The macro `\stanzaindent`, when called at the beginning of a verse, changes the indentation normally defined for this verse by `\setstanzaindent`. The starred version **\stanzaindent\*** skips the current verse for the repetition of stanza indent.

```

6724 \newcommand{\stanzaindent}[1]{%
6725   \hspace{\dimexpr#1\stanzaindentbase-\parindent\relax}%
6726   \ignorespaces%
6727 }%
6728 \WithSuffix\newcommand\stanzaindent*[1]{%
6729   \stanzaindent{#1}%
6730   \global\advance\stanza@modulo-\@ne%
6731   \ifnum\stanza@modulo=0%
6732     \global\stanza@modulo=\value{stanzaindentsrepetition}%
6733   \fi%
6734   \ignorespaces%
6735 }%
6736 %

```

## XXVIII.5 Numbering stanza

Here, macro for numbering stanza. First, the stanza counter.

```
\thestanza  \newcounter{stanza}
6738 \renewcommand{\thestanza}{%
6739 \textbf{\arabic{stanza}}%
6740 }
6741 %
```

`\ifnumberstanza` Then, macro to activate automatically numbering of stanza.

```
6742 \newif\ifnumberstanza%
6743 %
```

`\@insertstanzanumber` Now, macro called at the first line of of verse of a stanza.

```
6744 \newcommand{\@insertstanzanumber}[0]{%
6745 \ifnumberstanza%
6746 \ifl@pairing%
6747 \ifledRcol%
6748 \stanzanumwrapper{\thestanzaR}%
6749 \else%
6750 \stanzanumwrapper{\thestanzaL}%
6751 \fi%
6752 \else%
6753 \stanzanumwrapper{\thestanza}%
6754 \fi%
6755 \setline{1}%
6756 \fi%
6757 }%
6758 %
```

`\@advancestanzanumber` Also a command to advance the counter of stanza.

```
6759 \newcommand{\@advancestanzanumber}[0]{%
6760 \ifnumberstanza%
6761 \ifl@pairing%
6762 \ifledRcol%
6763 \addtocounter{stanzaR}{1}%
6764 \else%
6765 \addtocounter{stanzaL}{1}%
6766 \fi%
6767 \else%
6768 \addtocounter{stanza}{1}%
6769 \fi%
6770 \fi%
6771 }%
6772 %
```

`\stanzanumwrapper` And finally, the wrapper for stanza number

```
6773 \newcommand{\stanzanumwrapper}[1]{%
6774   \flagstanza{#1}%
6775 }%
6776 %
```

## XXVIII.6 Stanza number in note

Here, the command called when printing stanza number in notes.

```
6777 \newcommand{\printstanza}[0]{%
6778   \ifboolexpr{bool{l@dpairing} or bool{l@dprintingpages} or bool{
6779     l@dprintingcolumns}}{%
6780     \ifledRcol{%
6781       \thestanzaR%
6782     }%
6783     \ifledLcol{%
6784       \thestanzaL%
6785     }%
6786   }%
6787 }
6788 %
```

## XXVIII.7 Main work

`\stanza@line` Now we arrive at the main works. `\stanza@line` sets the indentation for the line and starts a numbered paragraph—each line is treated as a paragraph. `\stanza@hang` sets the hanging indentation to be used if the stanza line requires more than one print line.

If it is known that each stanza line will fit on one print line, it is advisable to set the hanging indentation to zero. `\sza@penalty` places the specified penalty following each stanza line. By default, this facility is turned off so that no penalty is included. However, the user may initiate these penalties to indicate good and bad places in the stanza for page breaking.

```
6789 \newcommandx{\stanza@line}[1][1]{
6790   \ifnum\value{stanzaindentrepetition}=0
6791     \parindent=\csname sza@\number\stanza@count
6792       @\endcsname\stanzaindentbase
6793   \else
6794     \parindent=\csname sza@\number\stanza@modulo
6795       @\endcsname\stanzaindentbase
6796   \managestanza@modulo
6797   \fi
6798   \pstart{#1}\stanza@hang\ignorespaces}
6799 \xdef\stanza@hang{\noexpand\leavevmode\noexpand\startlock
6800   \hangindent\expandafter
6801   \noexpand\csname sza@0@\endcsname\stanzaindentbase}
```

```

6802         \hangafter\@ne}
6803 \def\sza@penalty{\count@\csname szp@\number\stanza@count @\endcsname
6804         \ifnum\count@>\@M\advance\count@-\@M\penalty-\else
6805         \penalty\fi\count@}
6806 %

```

\@startstanza    Now we have the components of the \stanza macro, which appears at the start of a  
                  \stanza    group of lines. This macro initializes the count and checks to see if hanging indentation  
                  \@stopstanza    and penalties are to be included. Hanging indentation suspends the line count, so that  
 \AtEveryStopStanza    the enumeration is by verse line rather than by print line. If the print line count is  
                  \AtEveryStanza    desired, invoke \let\startlock\relax and do the same for \endlock. Here and  
                  \newverse    above we have used \xdef to make the stored macros take up a bit less space, but it also  
                     makes them more obscure to the reader. Lines of the stanza are delimited by ampersands  
                     &. The last line of the stanza must end with \&.

```

6807 \xdef\@startstanza[#1]{%
6808     \noexpand\instanzatrue\expandafter
6809     \begingroup%
6810     \catcode`\noexpand\&\active%
6811     \global\stanza@count\@ne\stanza@modulo\@ne
6812     \noexpand\ifnum\expandafter\noexpand
6813     \csname szp@0@\endcsname=\z@\let\noexpand\stanza@hang\relax
6814     \let\noexpand\endlock\relax\noexpand\else\interlinepenalty
6815     \@M\rightskip\z@ plus 1fil\relax\noexpand\fi\noexpand\ifnum
6816     \expandafter\noexpand\csname szp@0@\endcsname=\z@
6817     \let\noexpand\sza@penalty\relax\noexpand\fi%
6818     \def\noexpand&{%
6819         \noexpand\newverse[] []}%
6820     \def\noexpand\&{\noexpand\@stopstanza}%
6821     \noexpand\@advancestanzanumber%
6822     \noexpand\stanza@line[#1]%
6823     \noexpand\@insertstanzanumber%
6824     \let\par\relax\ignorespaces%No paragraph in verses
6825 }
6826
6827 \newcommandx{\stanza}[1][1,usedefault]{%
6828     \ifboolexpr{not test{\ifdefvoid{\at@every@stanza}} and test{\ifstrempy
6829     {#1}}}%
6830     {\@startstanza[\at@every@stanza]}%
6831     {\@startstanza[#1]}%
6832 }%
6833
6834 \newcommandx{\@stopstanza}[1][1,usedefault]{%
6835     \unskip%
6836     \endlock%
6837     \ifboolexpr{not test{\ifdefvoid{\at@every@stop@stanza}} and test{\
6838     ifstrempy{#1}}}%
6839     {\pend[\at@every@stop@stanza]}%
6840     {\pend[#1]}%

```

```

6839 \endgroup%
6840 \instanzafalse%
6841 }
6842
6843 \newcommand{\AtEveryStopStanza}[1]{%
6844   \ifstrepty{#1}%
6845     {\xdef\at@every@stop@stanza{}}%
6846     {\gdef\at@every@stop@stanza{#1}}%
6847 }%
6848 \def\at@every@stop@stanza{%
6849
6850 \newcommand{\AtEveryStanza}[1]{%
6851   \ifstrepty{#1}%
6852     {\xdef\at@every@stanza{}}%
6853     {\gdef\at@every@stanza{#1}}%
6854 }%
6855 \def\at@every@stanza{%
6856
6857
6858 \newcommand*{\newverse}[2][1,2,usedefault]{%
6859   \unskip%
6860   \endlock\pend[#1]\sza@penalty\global%
6861   \advance\stanza@count\@ne\stanza@line[#2]%
6862   }
6863
6864 %

```

**\flagstanza** Use `\flagstanza[len]{text}` at the start of a line to put *text* a distance *len* before the start of the line. The default for *len* is `\stanzaindentbase`.

```

6865 \newcommand*{\flagstanza}[2][\stanzaindentbase]{%
6866   \hskip -#1\llap{#2}\hskip #1\ignorespaces}
6867
6868 %

```

## XXVIII.8 Restore catcode and penalties

The ampersand & is used to mark the end of each stanza line, except the last, which is marked with `\&`. This means that `\halign` may not be used directly within a stanza line. This does not affect macros involving alignments defined outside `\stanza \&`. Since these macros usurp the control sequence `\&`, the replacement `\ampersand` is defined to be used if this symbol is needed in a stanza. Also we reset the modified category codes and initialize the penalty default.

```

6869 \catcode`\&=\next
6870 \catcode`\@=\body
6871 \setstanzavalues{szp}{0}
6872
6873 %

```

## XXIX Apparatus of Manuscripts

### XXIX.1 User level macro

**\msdata** The user level `\msdata` command only writes the manuscripts data in numbered auxiliary file.

```

6874 \newcommand{\msdata}[1]{%
6875   \leavevmode%
6876   \unless\ifstopmsdata@inserted@%
6877     \stopmsdata%
6878     \led@warning@msdatawithoutstop%
6879   \fi%
6880   \global\stopmsdata@inserted@false%
6881   \unless\ifledRcol%
6882     \protected@write\linenum@out{}{%
6883       \string\@msd{#1}%
6884     }%
6885   \else%
6886     \protected@write\linenum@outR{}{%
6887       \string\@msd{#1}%
6888     }%
6889   \fi%
6890 }%
6891 %

```

**\stopmsdata** The user level `\stopmsdata` command only writes information about the end of manuscripts data in numbered auxiliary file.

```

6892 \newcommand{\stopmsdata}[0]{%
6893   \leavevmode%
6894   \unless\ifledRcol%
6895     \protected@write\linenum@out{}{%
6896       \string\@stopmsd%
6897     }%
6898   \else%
6899     \protected@write\linenum@outR{}{%
6900       \string\@stopmsd%
6901     }%
6902   \fi%
6903   \global\stopmsdata@inserted@true%
6904 }%
6905 %

```

**\ifstopmsdata@inserted@** The `\ifstopmsdata@inserted@` boolean is set to TRUE at every `\stopmsdata` and reset to FALSE at all `\msdata`. It also set to TRUE at every `\beginnumbering`. It is used to automatically insert `\stopmsdata` if forgotten before `\msdata`

```

6906 \newif\ifstopmsdata@inserted@%
6907 %

```

## XXIX.2 Setting macro

Setting macros for the manuscripts apparatus tools is very easy: they just save their argument in an internal macro.

**\setmsdataseries** In which series of notes will be printed the apparatus of manuscripts?

```
6908 \newcommand{\setmsdataseries}[1]{%
6909   \gdef\@msdata@series{#1}%
6910 }%
6911 \def\@msdata@series{A}%
6912 %
```

**\setmsdatalabel** The label for the manuscripts data.

```
6913 \def\ms@data@label{Ms.}%
6914 \newcommand{\setmsdatalabel}[1]{%
6915   \gdef\ms@data@label{#1}%
6916 }%
6917 %
```

## XXIX.3 Counters and lists

**\@msd@c** \@msd@c is a counter incremented at each \@msd read in auxiliary file.

```
6918 \numdef{\@msd@c}{0}
6919 \numdef{\@msd@cR}{0}
6920 %
```

**\@msd@c** \@add@msd@c is a counter incremented at each \@add@msddata, that is at each time we prepare the insertion of manuscripts data footnote.

```
6921 \numdef{\@add@msd@c}{0}%
6922 \numdef{\@add@msd@cR}{0}%
6923 %
```

**\@msdata@list** The \@msdata@list will contain, for each line, the lists of command to be executed to insert the manuscripts apparatus. It will be filled on \@add@msdata and looped on \@insert@msdata, then emptied.

```
6924 \def\@msdata@list{}%
6925 %
```

## XXIX.4 Auxiliary file macros

**\@msd** The \@msd macro is written in the auxiliary file. It just defines three macros by \@msdata macro, which allow us to know the manuscripts data, the line number and the absolute line number where it was called

It also stores the action code 1010 in the list of actions by line.



```

6926 \newcommand{\@msd}[1]{%
6927   \unless\ifledRcol%
6928     \numdef{\@msd@c}{\@msd@c+\@ne}%
6929     \csgdef{\@msdata@\@msd@c @data}{#1}%
6930     \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@c @linenumber}{\the\line@num}%
6931     \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@c @abslinenumber}{\the\absline@num}%
6932     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list%
6933     \xright@appenditem{-1010}\to\actions@list%
6934   \else%
6935     \numdef{\@msd@cR}{\@msd@cR+\@ne}%
6936     \csgdef{\@msdata@\@msd@cR @dataR}{#1}%
6937     \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@cR @linenumberR}{\the\line@numR}%
6938     \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@cR @abslinenumberR}{\the\absline@numR}%
6939     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@numR}\to\actionlines@listR%
6940     \xright@appenditem{-1010}\to\actions@listR%
6941   \fi%
6942 }%
6943 %

```

**\@endmsd** Inserted in the auxiliary file by \stopmsd, the \@stopmsd macro will store in two commands the line number and the absolute line number on which it is called.

```

6944 \newcommand{\@stopmsd}[0]{%
6945   \unless\ifledRcol%
6946     \ifcsundef{\@msdata@\@msd@c @stoplinenumber}{%
6947       \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@c @stopabslinenumber}{\the\absline@num}%
6948       \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@c @stoplinenumber}{\the\line@num}%
6949     }{}%
6950   \else%
6951     \ifcsundef{\@msdata@\@msd@cR @stoplinenumberR}{%
6952       \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@cR @stopabslinenumberR}{\the\absline@numR}%
6953       \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@cR @stoplinenumberR}{\the\line@numR}%
6954     }%
6955     {}%
6956   \fi%
6957 }%
6958 %

```

## XXIX.5 Action macro

**\add@msdata** \add@msdata is executed on each line when action code 1010 is seen. It will not insert immediately the manuscript data footnote, as action code are executed before the line be typeset, and, consequently, could be on the previous page. So it just store the manuscript data footnote to \@msdata@list.

```

6959 \newcommand{\add@msdata}{%
6960   \bgroup%
6961   \normalfont%
6962   \unless\ifledRcol%

```

```

6963 \numgdef{\add@msd@c}{\add@msd@c+\@ne}%
6964 \ifcsdef{@msdata@\add@msd@c @data}{%
6965 \letcs{\@data}{@msdata@\add@msd@c @data}%
6966 \edef\l@d@nums{%
6967 000| % Start page = we don't print it
6968 \csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@c @linenumber}| % Start line number
6969 000| % Start subline number, for now, not used
6970 000| % End page number, we don't print it
6971 \ifnumless{\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@c @stopabslinenumber}}{\csuse{
@lastabsline@forpage@the\page@num}}}%
6972 {\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@c @stoplinenumber}}}%End line number if
in the same page
6973 {\csuse{@lastline@forpage@the\page@num}}}%Otherwiser, last
number of the page
6974 |%
6975 000| % End sub line number, for now, not used
6976 \edfont@info%Font
6977 }%
6978 \@msd@options@fullpagefalse%
6979 \if@firstlineofpage%Try if the data are for the full page. If yes
, will add options to the list.
6980 \unless\if@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspage%
6981 \ifnumless{\csuse{@lastabsline@forpage@the\page@num}}{\csuse{
@msdata@\add@msd@c @stopabslinenumber}+\@ne}%
6982 {%
6983 \numgdef{\@tmp}{\add@msd@c+\@ne}%
6984 \ifcsdef{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumber}%
6985 {\ifnumequal{\csuse{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumber}}{\csuse{
@lastabsline@forpage@the\page@num}}}%
6986 {}%
6987 {\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}%
6988 }%
6989 {\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}%
6990 }%
6991 {}%
6992 \fi%
6993 \fi%
6994 \listxadd{\@msdata@list}{%
6995 \@msd@options@iffullpage%
6996 \noexpand\csuse{v\@msdata@series footnote}{\@msdata@series}{\{
expandonce\l@d@nums}{\ms@data@label}{\expandonce\@data}}}%
6997 \reset@msd@options@iffullpage%
6998 }%
6999 }%
7000 {}%
7001 \else%
7002 \numgdef{\add@msd@cR}{\add@msd@cR+\@ne}%
7003 \ifcsdef{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @dataR}{%
7004 \letcs{\@data}{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @dataR}%
7005 \edef\l@d@nums{%

```

```

7006      000|% Start page = we don't print it
7007      \csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @linenumberR}|% Start line number
7008      000|% Start subline number, for now, not used
7009      000|% End page number, we don't print it
7010      \ifnumless{\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @stopabslinenumberR}}{\
csuse{@lastline@forpageR@the\page@numR}}}%
7011      {\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @stoplinenumberR}}}%End line number
if in the same page
7012      {\csuse{@lastline@forpageR@the\page@numR}}}%Otherwiser, last
number of the page
7013      |%
7014      000|% End sub line number, for now, not used
7015      \edfont@info%Font
7016      }%
7017      \@msd@options@fullpagefalse%
7018      \if@firstlineofpageR%
7019          \unless\if@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspage%
7020              \ifnumless{\csuse{@lastabsline@forpageR@the\page@numR}}{\
csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@c @stopabslinenumberR}+\@one}%
7021              {%
7022                  \numdef{\@tmp}{\add@msd@cR+\@one}%
7023                  \ifcsdef{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumberR}%
7024                      {\ifnumequal{\csuse{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumberR}}{\csuse{
@lastabsline@forpageR@the\page@numR}}}%
7025                      {}%
7026                      {\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}%
7027                  }%
7028                  {\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}%
7029              }%
7030              {}%
7031              \fi%
7032              \fi%
7033              \listxadd{\@msdata@list}{%
7034                  \@msd@options@iffullpage%
7035                  \noexpand\csuse{v\@msdata@series footnote}{\@msdata@series}}{\
expandonce\l@d@nums}{\ms@data@label}{\expandonce\data}}}%
7036              \reset@msd@options@iffullpage%
7037          }%
7038      }%
7039      {}%
7040      \fi%
7041      \egroup%
7042  }%
7043  %

```

**\@insertedfrompreviouspage** The `\if@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspage` boolean is set to TRUE if `reledmac` automatically inserts data from previous page in the first line of a page.

```

7044  \newif\if@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspage%
7045  %

```

`\add@msdata@firstlineofpage` `\add@msdata@firstlineofpage` is called at the first line of every page. It inserts manuscript data which start on one of the previous pages and continue on this page.

```

7046 \newcommand{\add@msdata@firstlineofpage}{%
7047   \bgroup%
7048   \normalfont%
7049   \unless\ifledRcol{%
7050     \ifcsdef{@msdata@\add@msd@c @data}{%
7051       \ifnumless{\the\absline@num-\@ne}{\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@c
@stopabslinenumber}}}%
7052       {%
7053         \global\@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspagetrue%
7054         \letcs{@data}{@msdata@\add@msd@c @data}%
7055         \edef\l@d@nums{%
7056           000| % Start page = we don't print it
7057           \numexpr\the\line@num+\@ne\relax| % Start line number = first line
of the page. As \add@msdata@firstlineofpage is called before line number
has been incremented, we increment it for printing
7058           000| % Start subline number, for now, not used
7059           000| % End page number, we don't print it
7060           \ifnumless{\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@c @stopabslinenumber}}{\csuse{
@lastabsline@forpage@\the\page@num}}}%
7061           {\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@c @stoplinenumber}}}%End line number if
in the same page
7062           {\csuse{@lastline@forpage@\the\page@num}}}%Otherwise, last
number of the page
7063           |%
7064           000| % End sub line number, for now, not used
7065           \edefont@info%Font
7066           }%
7067           \@msd@options@fullpagefalse%
7068           \ifnumless{\csuse{@lastabsline@forpage@\the\page@num}}{\csuse{
@msdata@\add@msd@c @stopabslinenumber}+\@ne}%We will test if the ms data is
for the full page
7069           {%
7070             \numdef{\@tmp}{\add@msd@c+\@ne}%
7071             \ifcsdef{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumber}%
7072             {\ifnumequal{\csuse{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumber}}{\csuse{
@lastabsline@forpage@\the\page@num}}}%
7073             {}%
7074             {\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}%
7075             }%
7076             {\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}%
7077             }%
7078             {}%
7079             \listxadd{\@msdata@list}{%
7080               \@msd@options@iffullpage%
7081               \noexpand\csuse{v\@msdata@series footnote}{\@msdata@series}{\{
expandonce\l@d@nums}{\ms@data@label}{\expandonce\data}}}%
7082               \reset@msd@options@iffullpage%

```

```

7083     }%
7084   }%
7085   {\global\@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspagefalse}%
7086   }{}%
7087   \else%
7088     \ifcsdef{@msdata@add@msd@cR @dataR}{%
7089     \ifnumless{\the\absline@numR-\@ne}{\csuse{@msdata@add@msd@cR
@stopabslinenumberR}}}%
7090     {%
7091     \global\@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspagetrue%
7092     \letcs{\@data}{@msdata@add@msd@cR @dataR}%
7093     \edef\l@d@nums{%
7094     000}% Start page = we don't print it
7095     \numexpr\the\line@numR+\@ne\relax}% Start line number = first
line of the page. As \add@msdata@firstlineofpage is called before line
number has been incremented, we increment it for printing
7096     000}% Start subline number, for now, not used
7097     000}% End page number, we don't print it
7098     \ifnumless{\csuse{@msdata@add@msd@cR @stopabslinenumberR}}{\
csuse{@lastline@forpageR@the\page@numR}}}%
7099     {\csuse{@msdata@add@msd@cR @stoplinenumberR}}}%End line number
if in the same page
7100     {\csuse{@lastline@forpageR@the\page@numR}}}%Otherwise, last
number of the page
7101     |%
7102     000}% End sub line number, for now, not used
7103     \edfont@info%Font
7104     }%
7105     \@msd@options@fullpagefalse%
7106     \ifnumless{\csuse{@lastabsline@forpageR@the\page@numR}}{\csuse{
@msdata@add@msd@cR @stopabslinenumberR}+\@ne}%
7107     {%
7108     \numdef{\@tmp}{\add@msd@cR+\@ne}%
7109     \ifcsdef{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumberR}%
7110     {\ifnumequal{\csuse{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumberR}}{\csuse{
@lastabsline@forpageR@the\page@numR}}}%
7111     {}%
7112     {\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}%
7113     }%
7114     {\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}%
7115     }%
7116     {}%
7117     \listxadd{\@msdata@list}{%
7118     \@msd@options@iffullpage%
7119     \noexpand\csuse{v\@msdata@series footnote}{\@msdata@series}{\
expandonce\l@d@nums}{\ms@data@label}{\expandonce\@data}}}%
7120     \reset@msd@options@iffullpage%
7121     }%
7122   }%
7123   {\global\@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspagefalse}%

```

```

7124 }{}%
7125 \fi%
7126 \egroup%
7127 }%
7128 %

```

## XXIX.6 Inserting footnote

Just before inserting standard insert (familiar and critical footnotes, sidenotes), we call `\insert@msdata` to insert manuscripts data's footnotes.

```

\insert@msdata29 \newcommand{\insert@msdata}{%
7130   \def\do##1{##1}%
7131   \dolistloop{\@msdata@list}%
7132   \global\let\@msdata@list\relax%
7133 }%
7134 %

```

## XXIX.7 Other

`\@msd@options@iffullpage` `\@msd@options@iffullpage` sets some options if the manuscripts data are for all the page. `\reset@msd@options@iffullpage` resets them after the footnote. `\if@msd@options@fullpage` is switch to true in `add@msdata@firstlineofpage` if these option must be inserted.

```

7135 \newif\if@msd@options@fullpage%
7136 \newcommand{\@msd@options@iffullpage}[0]{%
7137   \if@msd@options@fullpage%
7138     \noexpand\toggletrue{nonum@}%
7139     \ifdefvoid{\ms@data@label}%
7140       {\noexpand\toggletrue{nosep@}}%
7141     }%
7142   \fi%
7143 }%
7144 \newcommand{\reset@msd@options@iffullpage}[0]{%
7145   \noexpand\togglefalse{nonum@}%
7146   \noexpand\togglefalse{nosep@}%
7147 }%
7148 %

```

# XXX Arrays and tables

## XXX.1 Preamble: macro as environment

The following is borrowed, and renamed, from the `amsmath` package. See also the CTT thread ‘`eq` and `amstex`’, 1995/08/31, started by Keith Reckdahl and ended definitively by David M. Jones.

Several of the [math] macros scan their body twice. This means we must collect all text in the body of an environment form before calling the macro.

`\@emptytoks` This is actually defined in the `amsgen` package.

```
7149 \newtoks\@emptytoks
7150
7151 %
```

The rest is from `amsmath`.

`\l@denvbody` A token register to contain the body.

```
7152 \newtoks\l@denvbody
7153
7154 %
```

`\addtol@denvbody` `\addtol@denvbody{arg}` adds `arg` to the token register `\l@denvbody`.

```
7155 \newcommand{\addtol@denvbody}[1]{%
7156   \global\l@denvbody\expandafter{\the\l@denvbody#1}}
7157
7158 %
```

`\l@dcollect@body` The macro `\l@dcollect@body` starts the scan for the `\end{env}` command of the current environment. It takes a macro name as argument. This macro is supposed to take the whole body of the environment as its argument. For example, given `cenv#1{...}` as a macro that processes `#1`, then the environment form, `\begin{env}` would call `\l@dcollect@body\cenv`.

```
7159 \newcommand{\l@dcollect@body}[1]{%
7160   \l@denvbody{\expandafter#1\expandafter{\the\l@denvbody}}}%
7161   \edef\processl@denvbody{\the\l@denvbody\noexpand\end{\@currenenv}}}%
7162   \l@denvbody\@emptytoks \def\l@dbegin@stack{b}%
7163   \begingroup
7164     \expandafter\let\csname\@currenenv\endcsname\l@dcollect@@body
7165     \edef\processl@denvbody{\expandafter\noexpand\csname\@currenenv\endcsname}%
7166     \processl@denvbody%
7167   }%
7168
7169 %
```

`\l@dpush@begins` When adding a piece of the current environment's contents to `\l@denvbody`, we scan it to check for additional `\begin` tokens, and add a 'b' to the stack for any that we find.

```
7170 \def\l@dpush@begins#1\begin#2{%
7171   \ifx\end#2\else b\expandafter\l@dpush@begins\fi}
7172
7173 %
```

`\l@dcollect@@body` `\l@dcollect@@body` takes two arguments: the first will consist of all text up to the next `\end` command, and the second will be the `\end` command's argument. If there are any extra `\begin` commands in the body text, a marker is pushed onto a stack by the `\l@dpush@begins` function. Empty state for this stack means we have reached the `\end` that matches our original `\begin`. Otherwise we need to include the `\end` and its argument in the material we are adding to the environment body accumulator.

```

7174 \def\l@dcollect@@body#1\end#2{%
7175   \edef\l@dbegin@stack{\l@dpush@begins#1\begin\end
7176                       \expandafter\@gobble\l@dbegin@stack}%
7177   \ifx\@empty\l@dbegin@stack
7178     \endgroup
7179     \@checkend{#2}%
7180     \addtol@denvironmentbody{#1}%
7181   \else
7182     \addtol@denvironmentbody{#1\end{#2}}%
7183   \fi
7184   \processl@denvironmentbody % A little tricky! Note the grouping
7185 }
7186
7187 %

```

There was a question on CTT about how to use `\collect@body` for a macro taking an argument. The following is part of that thread.

From: Heiko Oberdiek <oberdiek@uni-freiburg.de>  
 Newsgroups: comp.text.tex  
 Subject: Re: Using `\collect@body` with commands that take >1 argument  
 Date: Fri, 08 Aug 2003 09:03:20 +0200

eed132@psu.edu (Evan) wrote:  
 > I'm trying to make a new Latex environment that acts like the  
 > `\colorbox` command that is part of the color package. I looked through  
 > the FAQ and ran across this bit about using the `\collect@body` command  
 > that is part of AMSLaTeX:  
 > <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=cmdasenv>  
 >  
 > It almost works. If I do something like the following:  
 > `\newcommand{\redbox}[1]{\colorbox{red}{#1}}`  
 >  
 > `\makeatletter`  
 > `\newenvironment{redbox}{\collect@body \redbox}{}`

You will get an error message: Command `\redbox` already defined.  
 Thus you must rename either the command `\redbox` or the environment name.

```

> \begin{coloredbox}{blue}
>   Yadda yadda yadda... this is on a blue background...
> \end{coloredbox}

```



> and can't figure out how to make the `\collect@body` take this.

```
> \collect@body \colorbox{red}
> \collect@body {\colorbox{red}}
```

The argument of `\collect@body` has to be one token exactly.

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{color}
\usepackage{amsmath}

\newcommand{\redbox}[1]{\colorbox{red}{#1}}
\makeatletter
\newenvironment{coloredbox}[1]{%
  \def\next@{\colorbox{#1}}%
  \collect@body\next@
}{%

% ignore spaces at begin and end of environment
\newenvironment{coloredboxII}[1]{%
  \def\next@{\mycoloredbox{#1}}%
  \collect@body\next@
}{%
\newcommand{\mycoloredbox}[2]{%
  \colorbox{#1}{\ignorespaces#2\unskip}%
}

% support of optional color model argument
\newcommand\coloredboxIII\endcsname{}
\def\coloredboxIII#1#2{%
  \@coloredboxIII{#1}%
}
\def\@coloredboxIII#1#2{%
  \def\next@{\mycoloredboxIII{#1}{#2}}%
  \collect@body\next@
}
\newcommand{\mycoloredboxIII}[3]{%
  \colorbox{#1}{#2}{\ignorespaces#3\unskip}%
}

\makeatother

\begin{document}
  Black text before
  \begin{coloredbox}{blue}
    Hello World
  \end{coloredbox}
  Black text after

  Black text before
```

```

\begin{coloredboxII}{blue}
  Hello World
\end{coloredboxII}
Black text after

Black text before
\begin{coloredboxIII}{rgb}{0,0,1}
  Hello World
\end{coloredboxIII}
Black text after

\end{document}

Yours sincerely
Heiko <oberdiek@uni-freiburg.de>

```

## XXX.2 Tabular environments

This is based on the work by Herbert Breger in developing `tabmac.tex`.

The original `tabmac.tex` file was void of comments or any explanatory text other than the above notice. The algorithm is Breger's. Peter Wilson have made some cosmetic changes to the original code and reimplemented some things so they are more LaTeX-like. All the commentary are from Peter Wilson, as are any mistake or errors.

However, Maïeul Rouquette has modified code in order to add new features of `eledmac` and `reledmac`.

### XXX.2.1 Disabling and restoring commands

`\l@dtabnoexpands` More no expansion for critical and familiar footnotes in tabular environment.

```

7188 \newcommand*{\l@dtabnoexpands}{%
7189   \let\rtab=0%
7190   \let\ctab=0%
7191   \let\ltab=0%
7192   \let\rtabtext=0%
7193   \let\ltabtext=0%
7194   \let\ctabtext=0%
7195   \let\edbeforetab=0%
7196   \let\edaftertab=0%
7197   \let\edatleft=0%
7198   \let\edatright=0%
7199   \let\edvertline=0%
7200   \let\edvertdots=0%
7201   \let\edrowfill=0%
7202 }
7203
7204 %

```

`\disable@famiarnotes`    Macros to disable and restore familiar notes, to prevent them from printing multiple times in edtabularx and edarrayx environments.

`\restore@famiarnotes`

```

7205 \newcommand{\disable@famiarnotes}{%
7206   \unless\ifnofamiliar%
7207     \def\do##1{%
7208       \csletcs{footnote@@##1}{footnote##1}%
7209       \expandafter\renewcommand \csname footnote##1\endcsname[1]{%
7210         \protected@csxdef{theftnmark##1}{\csuse{thefootnote##1}}%
7211         \csuse{@footnotemark##1}%
7212       }%
7213     }%
7214     \dolistloop{\@series}%
7215   \fi%
7216 }%
7217 \newcommand{\restore@famiarnotes}{%
7218   \unless\ifnofamiliar%
7219     \def\do##1{%
7220       \csletcs{footnote##1}{footnote@@##1}%
7221     }%
7222     \dolistloop{\@series}%
7223   \fi%
7224 }%
7225 %
7226 %

```

`\disable@sidenotes`    The same, for side notes.

`\restore@sidenotes`

```

7227 \newcommand{\disable@sidenotes}{%
7228   \let\@ledrightnote\ledrightnote%
7229   \let\@ledleftnote\ledleftnote%
7230   \let\@ledsidenote\ledsidenote%
7231   \let\ledrightnote\@gobble%
7232   \let\ledleftnote\@gobble%
7233   \let\ledsidenote\@gobble%
7234 }%
7235 \newcommand{\restore@sidenotes}{%
7236   \let\ledrightnote\@ledrightnote%
7237   \let\ledleftnote\@ledleftnote%
7238   \let\ledsidenote\@ledsidenote%
7239 }%
7240 %

```

`\disable@notes`    Disable/restore side and familiar notes.

`\restore@notes`

```

7241 \newcommand{\disable@notes}{%
7242   \disable@sidenotes%
7243   \disable@famiarnotes%
7244 }%
7245 \newcommand{\restore@notes}{%

```

```

7246 \restore@sidenotes%
7247 \restore@familiarnotes%
7248 }%
7249 %

```

**\EDTEXT** We need to be able to modify the `\edtext` macros and also restore their original definitions.

**\xedtext**

```

7250 \let\EDTEXT=\edtext
7251 \newcommand{\xedtext}[2]{\EDTEXT{#1}{#2}}
7252 %

```

**\EDLABEL** We need to be able to modify and restore the `\edlabel` macro.

**\xedlabel**

```

7253 \let\EDLABEL=\edlabel
7254 \newcommand*{\xedlabel}[1]{\EDLABEL{#1}}
7255 %

```

**\EDINDEX** Macros supporting modification and restoration of `\edindex`.

**\xedindex**

**\nulledindex**

```

7256 \let\EDINDEX=\edindex
7257 \newcommand{\xedindex}{\@bsphack%
7258   \@ifnextchar [{\l@d@index}{\l@d@index[\jobname]}}
7259 \newcommand{\nulledindex}[2][\jobname]{\@bsphack\@esphack}
7260
7261 %

```

**\@line@@num** Macro supporting restoration of `\linenum`.

```

7262 \let\@line@@num=\linenum
7263 %

```

**\l@dgobblearg** `\l@dgobbleoptarg[⟨arg⟩]{⟨arg⟩}` replaces these two arguments (first is optional) by `\relax`.

```

7264 \newcommand*{\l@dgobbleoptarg}[2][\relax]%
7265
7266 %

```

**\Relax** `\let\Relax=\relax`

**\NEXT** `\let\NEXT=\next`

```

7269
7270 %

```

**\l@modforedtext** Modify and restore various macros for when `\edtext` is used.  
**\l@drestoreforedtext**

```

7271 \newcommand{\l@modforedtext}{%
7272   \let\edtext\relax
7273   \def\do##1{\global\csletcs{##1footnote}{\l@gobbleoptarg}}%
7274   \dolistloop{\@series}%
7275   \let\edindex\nulledindex
7276   \let\linenum\@gobble}
7277 \newcommand{\l@restoreforedtext}{%
7278   \def\do##1{\global\csletcs{##1footnote}{##1@footnote}}
7279   \dolistloop{\@series}%
7280   \let\edindex\xedndex}
7281 %

```

**\l@dnnullfills** Nullify and restore some column fillers, etc.

```

\l@restorefills
7282 \newcommand{\l@dnnullfills}{%
7283   \def\edlabel##1{%
7284     \def\edrowfill##1##2##3{%
7285     }
7286   \newcommand{\l@restorefills}{%
7287     \def\edrowfill##1##2##3{\@EDROWFILL@{##1}{##2}{##3}}%
7288   }
7289 %
7290 %

```

**\letsforverteilen** Gathers some lets and other code that is common to the *\*verteilen\** macros.

```

7291 \newcommand{\letsforverteilen}{%
7292   \let\edtext\xeddtext
7293   \let\edindex\xedndex
7294   \def\do##1{\global\csletcs{##1footnote}{##1@footnote}}
7295   \dolistloop{\@series}%
7296   \let\linenum\@line@num
7297   \hilfeffskip=\l@dcwidth%
7298   \advance\hilfeffskip by -\wd\hilfeffbox
7299   \def\edlabel##1{\xedlabel{##1}}
7300 %
7301 %

```

**\disablel@dtabfeet** Declarations for using or using `\edtext` inside tabulars. The default at this point is for `\enablel@dtabfeet` `\edtext`.

```

7302 \newcommand\disablel@dtabfeet{\l@modforedtext}%
7303 \newcommand\enablel@dtabfeet{\l@restoreforedtext}%
7304 %

```

### XXX.2.2 Counters, boxes and lengths

**\l@dampcount** `\l@dampcount` is a counter for the & column dividers and `\l@dcolcount` is a counter for the columns.

```

7305 \newcount\l@dampcount
7306 \l@dampcount=1\relax
7307 \newcount\l@dcolcount
7308 \l@dcolcount=0\relax
7309
7310 %

```

```

\hilfsbox Some (temporary) helper items.
\hilfsskip
\Hilfsbox
\hilfscount
7311 \newbox\hilfsbox
7312 \newskip\hilfsskip
7313 \newbox\Hilfsbox
7314 \newcount\hilfscount
7315
7316 %

```

30 columns should be adequate (compared to the original 60). These are the column widths. (Originally these were German spelled numbers e.g., \eins, \zwei, etc).

```

7317 \newdimen\dcoli
7318 \newdimen\dcolii
7319 \newdimen\dcoliii
7320 \newdimen\dcoliv
7321 \newdimen\dcolv
7322 \newdimen\dcolvi
7323 \newdimen\dcolvii
7324 \newdimen\dcolviii
7325 \newdimen\dcolix
7326 \newdimen\dcolx
7327 \newdimen\dcolxi
7328 \newdimen\dcolxii
7329 \newdimen\dcolxiii
7330 \newdimen\dcolxiv
7331 \newdimen\dcolxv
7332 \newdimen\dcolxvi
7333 \newdimen\dcolxvii
7334 \newdimen\dcolxviii
7335 \newdimen\dcolxix
7336 \newdimen\dcolxx
7337 \newdimen\dcolxxi
7338 \newdimen\dcolxxii
7339 \newdimen\dcolxxiii
7340 \newdimen\dcolxxiv
7341 \newdimen\dcolxxv
7342 \newdimen\dcolxxvi
7343 \newdimen\dcolxxvii
7344 \newdimen\dcolxxviii
7345 \newdimen\dcolxxix
7346 \newdimen\dcolxxx
7347 \newdimen\dcolerr % added for error handling

```

7348  
7349 %

**\l@dcwidth** This is a cunning way of storing the columnwidths indexed by the column number \l@dcwidth, like an array. (was \Dimenzuordnung)

```
7350 \newcommand{\l@dcwidth}{\ifcase \the\l@dcwidth \dcoli %???
7351 \or \dcoli \or \dcolii \or \dcoliii
7352 \or \dcoliv \or \dcolv \or \dcolvi
7353 \or \dcolvii \or \dcolviii \or \dcolix \or \dcolx
7354 \or \dcolxi \or \dcolxii \or \dcolxiii
7355 \or \dcolxiv \or \dcolxv \or \dcolxvi
7356 \or \dcolxvii \or \dcolxviii \or \dcolxix \or \dcolxx
7357 \or \dcolxxi \or \dcolxxii \or \dcolxxiii
7358 \or \dcolxxiv \or \dcolxxv \or \dcolxxvi
7359 \or \dcolxxvii \or \dcolxxviii \or \dcolxxix \or \dcolxxx
7360 \else \dcolerr \fi}
7361
7362 %
```

**\stepl@dcwidth** This increments the column counter, and issues an error message if it is too large.

```
7363 \newcommand*\stepl@dcwidth{\advance\l@dcwidth\@ne
7364 \ifnum\l@dcwidth>30\relax
7365 \led@err@TooManyColumns
7366 \fi}
7367
7368 %
```

**\l@dcsetmaxwidth** Sets the column width to the maximum value seen so far.

```
7369 \newcommand{\l@dcsetmaxwidth}{%
7370 \ifdim\l@dcwidth < \wd\hilfsbox
7371 \l@dcwidth = \wd\hilfsbox
7372 \else \relax \fi}
7373
7374 %
```

**\measurecell** Measure (recursively) the width required for a math cell.

```
7375 \def\measurecell #1{%
7376 \ifx #1\ \ifnum\l@dcwidth=0\let\NEXT\relax%
7377 \else\l@dccheckcols%
7378 \l@dcwidth=0%
7379 \let\NEXT\measurecell%
7380 \fi%
7381 \else\setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
7382 \stepl@dcwidth%
7383 \l@dcsetmaxwidth%
7384 \let\NEXT\measurecell%
```

```

7385 \fi\NEXT}
7386
7387 %

```

**\measuretcell** Measure (recursively) the width required for a text cell.

```

7388 \def\measuretcell #1{%
7389   \ifx #1\ \ifnum\l@dc@lcount=0\let\NEXT\relax%
7390   \else\l@dcheckcols%
7391   \l@dc@lcount=0%
7392   \let\NEXT\measuretcell%
7393   \fi%
7394   \else\setbox\hlf@b@x=\hbox{#1}%
7395   \step@dc@lcount%
7396   \l@dsetmaxcolwidth%
7397   \let\NEXT\measuretcell%
7398   \fi\NEXT}
7399
7400 %

```

**\measuremrow** Measure (recursively) the width required for a math row.

```

7401 \def\measuremrow #1{%
7402   \ifx #1\ \let\NEXT\relax%
7403   \else\measuretcell #1\&\&\&%
7404   \let\NEXT\measuremrow%
7405   \fi\NEXT}
7406 %

```

**\measuretrow** Measure (recursively) the width required for a text row.

```

7407 \def\measuretrow #1{%
7408   \ifx #1\ \let\NEXT\relax%
7409   \else\measuretcell #1\&\&\&%
7410   \let\NEXT\measuretrow%
7411   \fi\NEXT}
7412
7413 %

```

**\edtabcolsep** The length \edtabcolsep controls the distance between columns.

```

7414 \newskip\edtabcolsep
7415 \global\edtabcolsep=10pt
7416
7417 %

```

**\variab**<sup>18</sup> \newcommand{\variab}{\relax}

```

7419
7420 %

```



`\l@dccheckcols` Check that the number of columns is consistent.

```

7421 \newcommand*{\l@dccheckcols}{%
7422   \ifnum\l@dcolcount=1\relax
7423   \else
7424     \ifnum\l@dampcount=1\relax
7425     \else
7426       \ifnum\l@dcolcount=\l@dampcount\relax
7427       \else
7428         \l@d@err@UnequalColumns
7429       \fi
7430     \fi
7431     \l@dampcount=\l@dcolcount
7432   \fi}
7433
7434 %

```

`\edfilldimen` A length.

```

7435 \newdimen\edfilldimen
7436 \edfilldimen=0pt
7437
7438 %

```

`\c@addcolcount` A counter to hold the number of a column. We use a roman number so that we can grab the column dimension from `\dcol`. We do not use the `\roman`  $\TeX$  command, because some packages, like `babel` can override it in some specific cases (Greek, for example).

`\theadcolcount`

```

7439 \newcounter{addcolcount}
7440 \renewcommand{\theadcolcount}{\romannumeral \c@addcolcount}
7441 %

```

### XXX.2.3 Tabular typesetting

`\setmcellright` Typeset (recursively) cells of display math right justified.

```

7442 \def\setmcellright #1&{\def\edlabel##1{}%
7443   \let\edindex\nulledindex
7444   \ifx #1\ \ifnum\l@dcolcount=0%\removelastskip
7445     \let\Next\relax%
7446   \else\l@dcolcount=0%
7447     \let\Next=\setmcellright%
7448   \fi%
7449   \else%
7450     \disablel@dtabfeet%
7451     \stepl@dcolcount%
7452     \disable@notes%
7453     \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
7454     \restore@notes%
7455     \letsforverteilen%

```

```

7456         \hskip\hilfsskip$\displaystyle{#1}$%
7457         \hskip\edtabcolsep%
7458         \let\Next=\setmcellright%
7459     \fi\Next}
7460
7461 %

```

**\settcellright** Typeset (recursively) cells of text right justified.

```

7462 \def\settcellright #1&{\def\edlabel##1{}}%
7463     \let\edindex\nulledindex
7464     \ifx #1\\ \ifnum\l@dc@lcount=0%\removelastskip
7465         \let\Next\relax%
7466     \else\l@dc@lcount=0%
7467         \let\Next=\settcellright%
7468     \fi%
7469 \else%
7470     \disablel@dtabfeet%
7471     \stepl@dc@lcount%
7472     \disable@notes%
7473     \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{#1}%
7474     \restore@notes%
7475     \letsforverteilen%
7476     \hskip\hilfsskip#1%
7477     \hskip\edtabcolsep%
7478     \let\Next=\settcellright%
7479 \fi\Next}
7480 %

```

**\setmcellleft** Typeset (recursively) cells of display math left justified.

```

7481 \def\setmcellleft #1&{\def\edlabel##1{}}%
7482     \let\edindex\nulledindex
7483     \ifx #1\\ \ifnum\l@dc@lcount=0 \let\Next\relax%
7484     \else\l@dc@lcount=0%
7485         \let\Next=\setmcellleft%
7486     \fi%
7487 \else \disablel@dtabfeet%
7488     \stepl@dc@lcount%
7489     \disable@notes%
7490     \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
7491     \restore@notes%
7492     \letsforverteilen%
7493     $\displaystyle{#1}$\hskip\hilfsskip\hskip\edtabcolsep%
7494     \let\Next=\setmcellleft%
7495 \fi\Next}
7496
7497 %

```

**\settcellleft** Typeset (recursively) cells of text left justified.

```

7498 \def\settcclleft #1&{\def\edlabel##1{}}%
7499 \let\edindex\nulledindex
7500 \ifx #1\\ \ifnum\l@dcolcount=0 \let\Next\relax%
7501 \else\l@dcolcount=0%
7502 \let\Next=\settcclleft%
7503 \fi%
7504 \else \disablel@dtabfeet%
7505 \stepl@dcolcount%
7506 \disable@notes%
7507 \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{#1}%
7508 \restore@notes%
7509 \letsforverteilen%
7510 #1\hskip\hilfsskip\hskip\edtabcolsep%
7511 \let\Next=\settcclleft%
7512 \fi\Next}
7513 %

```

**\setmcellcenter** Typeset (recursively) cells of display math centered.

```

7514 \def\setmcellcenter #1&{\def\edlabel##1{}}%
7515 \let\edindex\nulledindex
7516 \ifx #1\\ \ifnum\l@dcolcount=0\let\Next\relax%
7517 \else\l@dcolcount=0%
7518 \let\Next=\setmcellcenter%
7519 \fi%
7520 \else \disablel@dtabfeet%
7521 \stepl@dcolcount%
7522 \disable@notes%
7523 \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
7524 \restore@notes%
7525 \letsforverteilen%
7526 \hskip 0.5\hilfsskip$\displaystyle{#1}$\hskip 0.5\hilfsskip%
7527 \hskip\edtabcolsep%
7528 \let\Next=\setmcellcenter%
7529 \fi\Next}
7530 %
7531 %

```

**\settcellcenter** Typeset (recursively) cells of text centered.

```

7532 \def\settcellcenter #1&{\def\edlabel##1{}}%
7533 \let\edindex\nulledindex
7534 \ifx #1\\ \ifnum\l@dcolcount=0 \let\Next\relax%
7535 \else\l@dcolcount=0%
7536 \let\Next=\settcellcenter%
7537 \fi%
7538 \else \disablel@dtabfeet%
7539 \stepl@dcolcount%
7540 \disable@notes%
7541 \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{#1}%

```

```

7542         \restore@notes%
7543         \letsforverteilen%
7544         \hskip 0.5\hlfsskip #1\hskip 0.5\hlfsskip%
7545         \hskip\edtabcolsep%
7546         \let\Next=\settcellcenter%
7547     \fi\Next}
7548
7549 %

```

```

\NEXT50 \let\NEXT=\relax
7551
7552 %

```

**\setmrowright** Typeset (recursively) rows of right justified math.

```

7553 \def\setmrowright #1\{%
7554     \ifx #1& \let\NEXT\relax
7555     \else \centerline{\setmcellright #1&\&\&}
7556         \let\NEXT=\setmrowright
7557     \fi\NEXT}
7558 %

```

**\settroright** Typeset (recursively) rows of right justified text.

```

7559 \def\settroright #1\{%
7560     \ifx #1& \let\NEXT\relax
7561     \else \centerline{\settcclright #1&\&\&}
7562         \let\NEXT=\settroright
7563     \fi\NEXT}
7564
7565 %

```

**\setmrowleft** Typeset (recursively) rows of left justified math.

```

7566 \def\setmrowleft #1\{%
7567     \ifx #1&\let\NEXT\relax
7568     \else \centerline{\setmcellleft #1&\&\&}
7569         \let\NEXT=\setmrowleft
7570     \fi\NEXT}
7571 %

```

**\settrorleft** Typeset (recursively) rows of left justified text.

```

7572 \def\settrorleft #1\{%
7573     \ifx #1& \let\NEXT\relax
7574     \else \centerline{\settcclleft #1&\&\&}
7575         \let\NEXT=\settrorleft
7576     \fi\NEXT}
7577
7578 %

```

```

7579 \def\setmrowcenter #1\{\r%
7580 \ifx #1& \let\NEXT\relax%
7581 \else \centerline{\setmcellcenter #1&\\&\\&}
7582 \let\NEXT=\setmrowcenter
7583 \fi\NEXT}
7584 %

```

```

7585 \def\settrowcenter #1\{\%
7586 \ifx #1& \let\NEXT\relax
7587 \else \centerline{\settcclcenter #1&\\&\\&}
7588 \let\NEXT=\settrowcenter
7589 \fi\NEXT}
7590
7591 %

```

```

7601 \newcommand{\edatleft}[3][\@empty]{%
7602   \ifx#1\@empty
7603     \vbox to 10pt{\vss\hbox{$\left#2\vrule width0pt height #3
7604               depth 0pt \right. $\hss}\vfil}
7605   \else
7606     \vbox to 4pt{\vss\hbox{$#1\left#2\vrule width0pt height #3
7607               depth 0pt \right. $\}\vfil}
7608   \fi}
7609 %

```

```

7610 \newcommand{\edatright}[3][\@empty]{%
7611   \ifx#1\@empty
7612     \vbox to 10pt{\vss\hbox{$\left.\vrule width0pt height #3
7613       depth 0pt \right#2 $\hss\rightleftharpoons$}}

```

```

7614 \else
7615   \vbox to 4pt{\vss\hbox{$\left.\vrule width0pt height #3
7616             depth 0pt \right#2 #1 $\}\vfil}
7617 \fi}
7618
7619 %

```

**\edvertline** `\edvertline{<len>}` vertical line <len> high.

```

7620 \newcommand{\edvertline}[1]{\vbox to 8pt{\vss\hbox{\vrule height #1}\vfil}}
7621
7622 %

```

**\edvertdots** `\edvertdots{<len>}` vertical dotted line <len> high.

```

7623 \newcommand{\edvertdots}[1]{\vbox to 1pt{\vss\vbox to #1%
7624   {\cleaders\hbox{$\m@th\hbox{.}\vbox to 0.5em{ }$}\vfil}}}
7625
7626 %

```

**\l@dtabaddcols** `\l@dtabaddcols{<startcol>}{<endcol>}` adds the widths of the columns <startcol> through <endcol> to `\edfilldimen`. It is a  $\text{\LaTeX}$  style reimplementation of the original `\@add@`.

```

7627 \newcommand{\l@dtabaddcols}[2]{%
7628   \l@dccheckstartend{#1}{#2}%
7629   \ifl@dstartendok
7630     \setcounter{addcolcount}{#1}%
7631     \@whilenum \value{addcolcount}<#2\relax \do
7632       {\advance\edfilldimen by \the \csname dcol\theaddcolcount\endcsname
7633        \advance\edfilldimen by \edtabcolsep
7634        \stepcounter{addcolcount}}%
7635     \advance\edfilldimen by \the \csname dcol\theaddcolcount\endcsname
7636   \fi
7637 }
7638
7639 %

```

**\ifl@dstartendok** `\l@dccheckstartend{<startcol>}{<endcol>}` checks that the values of <startcol> and <endcol> are sensible. If they are then `\ifl@dstartendok` is set TRUE, otherwise it is set FALSE.

```

7640 \newif\ifl@dstartendok
7641 \newcommand{\l@dccheckstartend}[2]{%
7642   \l@dstartendoktrue
7643   \ifnum #1<\@ne
7644     \l@dstartendokfalse
7645     \led@err@LowStartColumn
7646   \fi
7647   \ifnum #2>30\relax
7648     \l@dstartendokfalse

```

```

7649 \led@err@HighEndColumn
7650 \fi
7651 \ifnum #1>#2\relax
7652 \l@dstartendokfalse
7653 \led@err@ReverseColumns
7654 \fi
7655 }
7656
7657 %

```

**\edrowfill** `\edrowfill{<startcol>}{<endcol>}` fill fills columns `<startcol>` to `<endcol>` inclusive with `<fill>` (e.g. `\hrulefill`, `\upbracefill`). This is a  $\TeX$  style reimplementation and generalization of the original `\waklam`, `\Waklam`, `\waklamec`, `\wastricht` and `\wapunktel` macros.

```

7658 \newcommand*{\edrowfill}[3]{%
7659 \l@dtabaddcols{#1}{#2}%
7660 \hb@xt@ \the\l@dcolwidth{\hb@xt@ \the\edfilldimen{#3}\hss}}
7661 \let\@edrowfill=\edrowfill
7662 \def\@EDROWFILL@#1#2#3{\@edrowfill@{#1}{#2}{#3}}
7663
7664 %

```

**\edbeforetab** The macro `\edbeforetab{<text>}{<math>}` puts `<text>` at the left margin before array cell entry `<math>`. Conversely, the macro `\edaftertab{<math>}{<text>}` puts `<text>` at the right margin after array cell entry `<math>`. `\edbeforetab` should be in the first column and `\edaftertab` in the last column. The following macros support these.

**\leftltab** `\leftltab{<text>}` for `\edbeforetab` in `\ltab`.

```

7665 \newcommand{\leftltab}[1]{%
7666 \hb@xt@ \z@{\vbox{\edtabindent%
7667 \moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #1}}\hss}}
7668
7669 %

```

**\leftrtab** `\leftrtab{<text>}{<math>}` for `\edbeforetab` in `\rtab`.

```

7670 \newcommand{\leftrtab}[2]{%
7671 #2\hb@xt@ \z@{\vbox{\edtabindent%
7672 \advance\Hilfsskip by\dcoli%
7673 \moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #1}}\hss}}
7674
7675 %

```

**\leftctab** `\leftctab{<text>}{<math>}` for `\edbeforetab` in `\ctab`.

```

7676 \newcommand{\leftctab}[2]{%
7677 \hb@xt@ \z@{\vbox{\edtabindent\l@dcolcount=\l@dampcount%

```

```

7678 \advance\Hilfsskip by 0.5\dcoli%
7679 \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1{}}%
7680 \disablel@dtabfeet$\displaystyle{#2}$}%
7681 \advance\Hilfsskip by -0.5\wd\hilfsbox%
7682 \moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #1}}\hss}%
7683 #2}
7684
7685 %

```

**\rightctab** `\rightctab{<math>}<math>}{<text>}` for `\edaftertab` in `\ctab`.

```

7686 \newcommand{\rightctab}[2]{%
7687 \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1{}}%
7688 \disablel@dtabfeet#2}\l@dampcount=\l@dcolcount%
7689 #1\hb@xt@{\z@\vbox{\edtabindent\l@dcolcount=\l@dampcount%
7690 \advance\Hilfsskip by 0.5\l@dcolwidth%
7691 \advance\Hilfsskip by -\wd\hilfsbox%
7692 \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1{}}%
7693 \disablel@dtabfeet$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
7694 \advance\Hilfsskip by -0.5\wd\hilfsbox%
7695 \advance\Hilfsskip by \edtabcolsep%
7696 \moveright\Hilfsskip\hbox{ #2}}\hss}%
7697 }
7698
7699 %

```

**\rightltab** `\rightltab{<math>}<math>}{<text>}` for `\edaftertab` in `\ltab`.

```

7700 \newcommand{\rightltab}[2]{%
7701 \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1{}}%
7702 \disablel@dtabfeet#2}\l@dampcount=\l@dcolcount%
7703 #1\hb@xt@{\z@\vbox{\edtabindent\l@dcolcount=\l@dampcount%
7704 \advance\Hilfsskip by\l@dcolwidth%
7705 \advance\Hilfsskip by-\wd\hilfsbox%
7706 \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1{}}%
7707 \disablel@dtabfeet$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
7708 \advance\Hilfsskip by-\wd\hilfsbox%
7709 \advance\Hilfsskip by\edtabcolsep%
7710 \moveright\Hilfsskip\hbox{ #2}}\hss}%
7711 }
7712
7713 %

```

**\rightrtab** `\rightrtab{<math>}<math>}{<text>}` for `\edaftertab` in `\rtab`.

```

7714 \newcommand{\rightrtab}[2]{%
7715 \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1{}}%
7716 \disablel@dtabfeet#2}%
7717 #1\hb@xt@{\z@\vbox{\edtabindent%
7718 \advance\Hilfsskip by-\wd\hilfsbox%

```



```

7719 \advance\Hilfsskip by\edtabcolsep%
7720 \moveright\Hilfsskip\hbox{ #2}\hss}%
7721 }
7722
7723 %

```

**\rtab** `\rtab{<body>}` typesets `<body>` as an array with the entries right justified.

**\edbeforetab** The process is first to measure the `<body>` to get the column widths, and then in a

**\edaftertab** second pass to typeset the body.

```

7724 \newcommand{\rtab}[1]{%
7725 \l@nullfills
7726 \def\edbeforetab##1##2{\lefttab{##1}{##2}}%
7727 \def\edaftertab##1##2{\righttab{##1}{##2}}%
7728 \measurebody{#1}%
7729 \l@drestorefills
7730 \variab
7731 \setmrowright #1\&\%
7732 \enablel@dtabfeet}
7733
7734 %

```

**\measurebody** `\measurebody{<body>}` measures the array `<body>`.

```

7735 \newcommand{\measurebody}[1]{%
7736 \disablel@dtabfeet%
7737 \l@dcolcount=0%
7738 \nullsetzen%
7739 \l@dcolcount=0
7740 \measuremrow #1\&\%
7741 \global\l@dampcount=1}
7742
7743 %

```

**\rtabtext** `\rtabtext{<body>}` typesets `<body>` as a tabular with the entries right justified.

```

7744 \newcommand{\rtabtext}[1]{%
7745 \l@nullfills
7746 \measuretbody{#1}%
7747 \l@drestorefills
7748 \variab
7749 \setthrowright #1\&\%
7750 \enablel@dtabfeet}
7751
7752 %

```

**\measuretbody** `\measuretbody{<body>}` measures the tabular `<body>`.

```

7753 \newcommand{\measuretbody}[1]{%
7754   \disable@notes%
7755   \disablel@dtabfeet%
7756   \l@dcolcount=0%
7757   \nullsetzen%
7758   \l@dcolcount=0
7759   \measuretrrow #1\\&\\%
7760   \restore@notes%
7761   \global\l@dampcount=1}
7762
7763 %

```

**\ltab** Array with entries left justified.

```

\edbeforetab
\edaftertab
7764 \newcommand{\ltab}[1]{%
7765   \l@dnullfills
7766   \def\edbeforetab##1##2{\leftltab{##1}{##2}}%
7767   \def\edaftertab##1##2{\rightltab{##1}{##2}}%
7768   \measuretbody{#1}%
7769   \l@drestorefills
7770   \variab
7771   \setmrowleft #1\\&\\%
7772   \enablel@dtabfeet}
7773
7774 %

```

**\ltabtext** Tabular with entries left justified.

```

7775 \newcommand{\ltabtext}[1]{%
7776   \l@dnullfills
7777   \measuretbody{#1}%
7778   \l@drestorefills
7779   \variab
7780   \settrrowleft #1\\&\\%
7781   \enablel@dtabfeet}
7782
7783 %

```

**\ctab** Array with centered entries.

```

\edbeforetab
\edaftertab
7784 \newcommand{\ctab}[1]{%
7785   \l@dnullfills
7786   \def\edbeforetab##1##2{\leftctab{##1}{##2}}%
7787   \def\edaftertab##1##2{\rightctab{##1}{##2}}%
7788   \measuretbody{#1}%
7789   \l@drestorefills
7790   \variab
7791   \setmrowcenter #1\\&\\%
7792   \enablel@dtabfeet}
7793
7794 %

```

`\ctabtext` Tabular with entries centered.

```

7795 \newcommand{\ctabtext}[1]{%
7796   \l@dnnullfills
7797   \measuretbody{#1}%
7798   \l@drestorefills
7799   \variab
7800   \settrowcenter #1\\&\\%
7801   \enablel@dtabfeet}
7802
7803 %

```

`\spreadtext`<sub>04</sub> `\newcommand{\spreadtext}[1]{%\l@dcolcount=\l@dampcount%`  
`\hb@xt@ \the\l@dcolwidth{\hbox{#1}\hss}}`  
`%`

`\spreadmath`<sub>07</sub> `\newcommand{\spreadmath}[1]{%`  
`\hb@xt@ \the\l@dcolwidth{\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}\hss}}`  
`%`

`\HILFSskip` More helpers.

`\Hilfsskip`  
`\newskip\HILFSskip`  
`\newskip\Hilfsskip`  
`%`

`\EDTABINDENT`<sub>15</sub> `\newcommand{\EDTABINDENT}{%`  
`\ifnum\l@dcolcount=30\let\NEXT\relax\l@dcolcount=0%`  
`\else\step1@dcolcount%`  
`\advance\Hilfsskip by\l@dcolwidth%`  
`\ifdim\l@dcolwidth=0pt\advance\hilfscount\@ne`  
`\else\advance\Hilfsskip by \the\hilfscount\edtabcolsep%`  
`\hilfscount=1\fi%`  
`\let\NEXT=\EDTABINDENT%`  
`\fi\NEXT}%`  
`%`

`\edtabindent` (was `\tabindent`)

```

7825 \newcommand{\edtabindent}{%
7826   \l@dcolcount=0\relax
7827   \Hilfsskip=0pt%
7828   \hilfscount=1\relax
7829   \EDTABINDENT%
7830   \hilfsskip=\hspace%

```

```

7831 \advance\hilfsskip -\Hilfsskip%
7832 \Hilfsskip=0.5\hilfsskip%
7833 }%
7834
7835 %

```

**\EDTAB** (was \TAB)

```

7836 \def\EDTAB #1|#2|{%
7837 \setbox\tabhilfbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
7838 \setbox\tabHilfbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#2}$}%
7839 \advance\tabelskip -\wd\tabhilfbox%
7840 \advance\tabelskip -\wd\tabHilfbox%
7841 \unhbox\tabhilfbox\hskip\tabelskip%
7842 \unhbox\tabHilfbox}%
7843
7844 %

```

**\EDTABtext** (was \TABtext)

```

7845 \def\EDTABtext #1|#2|{%
7846 \setbox\tabhilfbox=\hbox{#1}%
7847 \setbox\tabHilfbox=\hbox{#2}%
7848 \advance\tabelskip -\wd\tabhilfbox%
7849 \advance\tabelskip -\wd\tabHilfbox%
7850 \unhbox\tabhilfbox\hskip\tabelskip%
7851 \unhbox\tabHilfbox}%
7852 %

```

**\tabhilfbox** Further helpers.

**\tabHilfbox**

```

7853 \newbox\tabhilfbox
7854 \newbox\tabHilfbox
7855
7856 %

```

### XXX.2.4 Environments

**edarrayl edarrayc edarrayr** The ‘environment’ forms for \ltab, \ctab and \rtab.

```

7857 \newenvironment{edarrayl}{\l@dcollect@body\ltab}{\}
7858 \newenvironment{edarrayc}{\l@dcollect@body\ctab}{\}
7859 \newenvironment{edarrayr}{\l@dcollect@body\rtab}{\}
7860
7861 %

```

**edtabularl edtabularc edtabularr** The ‘environment’ forms for \ltabtext, \ctabtext and \rtabtext.

```

7862 \newenvironment{edtabularl}{\l@ddcollect@body\ltabtext}{\}
7863 \newenvironment{edtabularc}{\l@ddcollect@body\ctabtext}{\}
7864 \newenvironment{edtabularr}{\l@ddcollect@body\rtabtext}{\}
7865
7866 %

```

## XXXI Quotation's commands

`\initnumbering@quote` This macro, called at the beginning of any numbered section, locally redefines the quotation and quote environments, in order to allow their use inside of numbered sections.

```

\quotation \initnumbering@quote defines quotation environment.
\endquotation
\quote
\endquote
7867 \newcommand{\initnumbering@quote}{
7868   \ifnoquotation@else
7869   \renewcommand{\quotation}{\par\leavevmode%
7870     \parindent=1.5em%
7871     \skipnumbering%
7872     \ifautopar%
7873       \vskip-\parskip%
7874     \else%
7875       \vskip\topsep%
7876     \fi%
7877     \global\leftskip=\leftmargin%
7878     \global\rightskip=\leftmargin%
7879   }
7880   \renewcommand{\endquotation}{\par%
7881     \global\leftskip=0pt%
7882     \global\rightskip=0pt%
7883     \leavevmode%
7884     \skipnumbering%
7885     \ifautopar%
7886       \vskip-\parskip%
7887     \else%
7888       \vskip\topsep%
7889     \fi%
7890   }
7891   \renewcommand{\quote}{\par\leavevmode%
7892     \parindent=0pt%
7893     \skipnumbering%
7894     \ifautopar%
7895       \vskip-\parskip%
7896     \else%
7897       \vskip\topsep%
7898     \fi%
7899     \global\leftskip=\leftmargin%
7900     \global\rightskip=\leftmargin%
7901   }

```

```

7902 \renewcommand{\endquote}{\par%
7903 \global\leftskip=0pt%
7904 \global\rightskip=0pt%
7905 \leavevmode%
7906 \skipnumbering%
7907 \ifautopar%
7908 \vskip-\parskip%
7909 \else%
7910 \vskip\topsep%
7911 \fi%
7912 }
7913 \fi
7914 }
7915 %

```

## XXXII Section's title commands

### XXXII.1 Commands to disable some feature

**\ledsectnotoc** The `\ledsectnotoc` only disables the `\addcontentsline` macro.

```

7916 \newcommand{\ledsectnotoc}{\let\addcontentsline\@gobblethree}
7917 %

```

**\ledsectnomark** The `\ledsectnomark` only disables the `\chaptermark`, `\sectionmark` and `\subsectionmark` macros.

```

7918 \newcommand{\ledsectnomark}{%
7919 \let\chaptermark\@gobble%
7920 \let\sectionmark\@gobble%
7921 \let\subsectionmark\@gobble%
7922 }
7923 %

```

### XXXII.2 General overview

The system of `\eledxxxx` commands to section text work like this:

1. When one of these commands is called, `reledmac` writes to an auxiliary files:
  - The section level.
  - The section title.
  - The side (when `eledpar` is used).
  - The pstart where the command is called.
  - If we have starred version or not.
2. `reledmac` adds the title of the section to pstart, as normal content. This is to enable critical notes.

3. When  $\text{\LaTeX}$  is run a other time, this file is read. That:
  - Adds the `pstart` number to a list of `pstarts` where a sectioning command is used.
  - Defines a command, the name of which contains the `pstart` number, and which calls the normal  $\text{\LaTeX}$  sectioning command.
4. This last command is called when the `pstart` is effectively printed.

### XXXII.3 `\beforeeledchapter` command

We do not define commands for `\eledsection` and related if the `noeledsec` option is loaded. We use `etoolbox` tests and not the `\ifxxx...\else...\fi` structure to prevent problem of expansions with command after the `\ifxxx` which contains `\fi`. As we patch command inside this test, we need to change the category code of `#` character *before* `\notbool` statement, because the second argument is read with the standard catcode (read *The TeXbook* to understand when the catcode's change has effect).

```
7924 \catcode`\#=12
7925 \notbool{@noeled@sec}{%
7926 %
```

`\beforeeledchapter` For technical reasons, not yet solved, page-breaking before chapters can't be made automatically by `eledmac`. Users have to use `\beforeeledchapter`.

```
7927 \ifl@dmemoir
7928 \newcommand\beforeeledchapter{%
7929 \clearforchapter%
7930 }
7931 \else
7932 \newcommand\beforeeledchapter{%
7933 \if@openright%
7934 \cleardoublepage%
7935 \else%
7936 \clearpage%
7937 \fi%
7938 }
7939 \fi
7940 %
```

### XXXII.4 Auxiliary commands

`\print@leftmargin@eledsection` and `\print@rightmargin@eledsection` are added by `reledmac` inside the code of sectioning command, in order to affix lines numbers. They include tests for RTL languages.

```
7941 \def\print@rightmargin@eledsection{%
7942 \if@eled@sectioning%
7943 \begingroup%
```

```

7944 \if@RTL%
7945     \let\llap\rlap%
7946     \let\leftlinenum\rightlinenum%
7947     \let\leftlinenumR\rightlinenumR%
7948     \let\l@drd@ta\l@dld@ta%
7949     \let\l@drsn@te\l@dlsn@te%
7950 \fi%
7951 \hfill\l@drd@ta \csuse{LR}{\l@drsn@te}%
7952 \endgroup%
7953 \fi%
7954 }%
7955
7956 \def\print@leftmargin@eledsection{%
7957     \if@eled@sectioning%
7958         \leavevmode%
7959         \begingroup%
7960         \if@RTL%
7961             \let\rlap\llap%
7962             \let\rightlinenum\leftlinenum%
7963             \let\rightlinenumR\leftlinenumR%
7964             \let\l@dld@ta\l@drd@ta%
7965             \let\l@dlsn@te\l@drsn@te%
7966         \fi%
7967         \l@dld@ta\csuse{LR}{\l@dlsn@te}%
7968         \endgroup%
7969         \fi%
7970 }%
7971
7972 %

```

### XXXII.5 Patching standard commands

`\M@ssect` We have to patch `LATEX`, `book` and `memoir` sectioning commands in order to:

`\@mem@old@ssect`

`\@makechapterhead`

`\@makechapterhead`

`\@makeschapterhead`

`\@ssect`

`\@ssect`

- Disable `\edtext` inside.
- Disable page breaking (for `\chapter`).
- Add line numbers and sidenotes.

Unfortunately, Maïeul Rouquette was not able to try if `memoir` is loaded. That is why `eledmac` tries to define for both standard class and `memoir` class.

```

7973 \AtBeginDocument{%
7974
7975
7976 \pretocmd{\M@ssect}
7977 { \let\old@edtext=\edtext%
7978   \let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma%
7979 }

```



```

7980 {}
7981 {}
7982
7983 \apptocmd{\M@sect}
7984 {\let\edtext=\old@edtext}
7985 {}
7986 {}
7987
7988 \patchcmd{\M@sect}
7989 { #9}
7990 { #9%
7991 \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
7992 }
7993 {}
7994 {}
7995
7996 \patchcmd{\M@sect}
7997 {\hskip #3\relax}
7998 {\hskip #3\relax%
7999 \print@leftmargin@eledsection%
8000 }
8001 {}
8002 {}
8003
8004 \patchcmd{\@mem@old@ssect}
8005 {#5}
8006 {#5%
8007 \print@leftmargin@eledsection%
8008 }
8009 {}
8010 {}
8011
8012 \patchcmd{\@mem@old@ssect}
8013 {\hskip #1}
8014 {\hskip #1%
8015 \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
8016 }
8017 {}
8018 {}
8019
8020
8021
8022 \patchcmd{\scr@startchapter}{\if@openright\cleardoublepage\else\clearpage\fi}{%
8023 \if@eled@sectioning\else%
8024 \ifl@dprintingpages\else%
8025 \if@openright\cleardoublepage\else\clearpage\fi}%No clearpage inside a
8026 \fi%
  
```

\Pages: will keep critical notes from printing on the title page. Here for scrbook.

```

8027 \fi%
8028 }
8029 {}
8030 {}
8031
8032 \patchcmd{\@makechapterhead}
8033   {#1}
8034   {\print@leftmargin@eledsection%
8035     #1%
8036     \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
8037   }
8038   {}
8039   {}
8040
8041 \patchcmd{\@makechapterhead}% For BIDI
8042   {\if@RTL\raggedleft\else\raggedright\fi}%
8043   {\if@eled@sectioning\else%
8044     \if@RTL\raggedleft\else\raggedright\fi%
8045     \fi%
8046   }%
8047   {}%
8048   {}%
8049
8050 \patchcmd{\@makeschapterhead}
8051   {#1}
8052   {\print@leftmargin@eledsection%
8053     #1%
8054     \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
8055   }
8056   {}
8057   {}
8058
8059 \pretocmd{\@sect}
8060   {\let\old@edtext=\edtext
8061     \let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma%
8062   }
8063   {}
8064   {}
8065
8066 \apptocmd{\@sect}
8067   {\let\edtext=\old@edtext}
8068   {}
8069   {}
8070
8071 \pretocmd{\@ssect}
8072   {\let\old@edtext=\edtext%
8073     \let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma%
8074   }
8075   {}
8076   {}

```

```

8077 \apptocmd{\@sect}
8078   {\let\edtext=\old@edtext}
8079   {}
8080   {}
8081   {}
8082
8083 %

```

hyperref also redefines \@sect. That is why, when manipulating arguments, we patch \@sect and the same only if hyperref is not used. If it is, we patch the \NR commands.

```

8084 \ifpackageloaded{nameref}{
8085
8086   \patchcmd{\NR@sect}
8087     {#8}
8088     {#8%
8089       \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
8090     }
8091     {}
8092     {}
8093
8094   \patchcmd{\NR@sect}
8095     {\hskip #3\relax}
8096     {\hskip #3\relax%
8097       \print@leftmargin@eledsection%
8098     }
8099     {}
8100     {}
8101
8102   \patchcmd{\NR@ssect}
8103     {#5}
8104     {#5%
8105       \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
8106     }
8107     {}
8108     {}
8109
8110   \patchcmd{\NR@ssect}
8111     {\hskip #1}
8112     {\hskip #1%
8113       \print@leftmargin@eledsection%
8114     }
8115     {}
8116     {}
8117   }%
8118   {
8119     \patchcmd{\@sect}
8120       {#8}
8121       {#8%
8122         \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
8123       }

```

```

8124 {}
8125 {}
8126
8127 \patchcmd{\@sect}
8128   {\hskip #3\relax}
8129   {\hskip #3\relax%
8130    \print@leftmargin@eledsection%
8131   }
8132 {}
8133 {}
8134
8135 \patchcmd{\@ssect}
8136   {#5}
8137   {#5%
8138    \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
8139   }
8140 {}
8141 {}
8142
8143 \patchcmd{\@ssect}
8144   {\hskip #1}
8145   {\hskip #1%
8146    \print@leftmargin@eledsection%
8147   }
8148 {}
8149 {}
8150 }%
8151 }%
8152 %

```

Close the `\notbool{@noeled@sec}` statement. Also, we have finished patching the commands, using `#` with a catcode equal to 12, so we are restoring the normal catcode for `#`.

```

8153 {}}%
8154 \protect\catcode`\#=6 %Space NEEDS by \catcode
8155 %

```

**\chapter** We patch the `\chapter` command even if the `noeledsec` option is called, because we can use `\chapter` in the optional argument of a `\pstart` in parallel typesetting.

```

8156 \AtBeginDocument{%
8157 \patchcmd{\chapter}{\clearforchapter}{%
8158   \if@eled@sectioning\else%
8159   \ifl@dprintingpages\else%
8160   \clearforchapter%
8161   \fi%
8162   \fi%
8163 }%
8164 {}%
8165 {}%

```

```

8166 \patchcmd{\chapter}{\if@openright\cleardoublepage\else\clearpage\fi}{%
8167   \if@eled@sectioning\else%
8168   \ifl@dprintingpages%
8169     \endgraf%
8170   \else%
8171     \if@openright\cleardoublepage\else\clearpage\fi}%No clearpage inside a
8172     \Pages: will keep critical notes from printing on the title page. Here for
      classical classes
8173   \fi%
8174 \fi%
8175 }%
8176 {}%
8177 {}%
8178 }%
8179 %

```

**\if@eled@sectioning** The boolean \if@eled@sectioning is set to true when a sectioning command is called by a \eledxxx command, and set to false after. It is used to enable/disable line number printing.

```

8180 \newif\if@eled@sectioning%
8181 %

```

We reopen a new \notbool{@noeled@sec} statement, as we will define the \elesection commands.

```

8182 \notbool{@noeled@sec}{%
8183 %

```

## XXXII.6 Main code of \eledxxx commands

**\eled@sectioning@out** \eled@sectioning@out is the output file, to dump the pstarts where a sectioning command is used.

```

8184 \newwrite\eled@sectioning@out
8185 %

```

**\eledchapter** **\eledsection** And now, the user sectioning commands, which write to the file, and also add content as a “normal” line.

```

\eledsubsection
\eledsubsubsection
8186 \newcommand{\eledchapter}[2] [] {%
8187   #2%
8188   \ifl@Rcol%
8189     \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
8190       \string\eled@chapter{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{R}
8191     }%
8192   \else%
8193     \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%

```

```

8194     \string\eled@chapter{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsL}{-}{-}
8195     }%
8196     \fi%
8197 }
8198
8199 \newcommand{\eledsection}[2] [] {%
8200     #2%
8201     \ifledRcol%
8202         \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
8203             \string\eled@section{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{-}{R}
8204         }%
8205     \else%
8206         \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
8207             \string\eled@section{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsL}{-}{-}
8208         }%
8209     \fi%
8210 }
8211
8212 \newcommand{\eledsubsection}[2] [] {%
8213     #2%
8214     \ifledRcol%
8215         \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
8216             \string\eled@subsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{-}{R}
8217         }%
8218     \else%
8219         \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
8220             \string\eled@subsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsL}{-}{-}
8221         }%
8222     \fi%
8223 }
8224 \newcommand{\eledsubsubsection}[2] [] {%
8225     #2%
8226     \ifledRcol%
8227         \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
8228             \string\eled@subsubsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}
8229             }{-}{R}
8230         }%
8231     \else%
8232         \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
8233             \string\eled@subsubsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsL}
8234             }{-}{-}
8235         }%
8236     \fi%
8237 }
8238
8239 \WithSuffix\newcommand\eledchapter*[2] [] {%
8240     #2%
8241     \ifledRcol%

```

```

8241 \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
8242 \string\eled@chapter{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{*}{R}
8243 }%
8244 \else%
8245 \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
8246 \string\eled@chapter{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsL}{*}{L}
8247 }%
8248 \fi%
8249 }
8250
8251 \WithSuffix\newcommand\eledsection*[2][ ]{%
8252 #2%
8253 \ifledRcol%
8254 \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
8255 \string\eled@section{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{*}{R}
8256 }%
8257 \else%
8258 \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
8259 \string\eled@section{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsL}{*}{L}
8260 }%
8261 \fi%
8262 }
8263
8264 \WithSuffix\newcommand\eledsubsection*[2][ ]{%
8265 #2%
8266 \ifledRcol%
8267 \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
8268 \string\eled@subsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{*}{R}
8269 }%
8270 \else%
8271 \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
8272 \string\eled@subsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsL}
8273 }{*}{L}
8274 }%
8275 \fi%
8276 }
8277
8278 \WithSuffix\newcommand\eledsubsubsection*[2][ ]{%
8279 #2%
8280 \ifledRcol%
8281 \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
8282 \string\eled@subsubsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}
8283 }{*}{R}
8284 }%
8285 \else%
8286 \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
8287 \string\eled@subsubsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsL}
8288 }{*}{L}
8289 }%

```

```

8287 \fi%
8288 }
8289 %

```

### XXXII.7 Macros written in the auxiliary file

```

\eled@chapter
\eled@section
\eled@subsection
\eled@subsubsection

```

The sectioning macros, called in the auxiliary file. They have five arguments:

1. Optional arguments of  $\LaTeX$  sectioning command.
2. Mandatory arguments of  $\LaTeX$  sectioning command.
3. Pstart number.
4. Side: R if right, nothing if left.
5. Starred or not.

```

8290 \def\eled@chapter#1#2#3#4#5{%
8291     \ifstrempy{#4}%
8292     {%
8293         \ifstrempy{#1}%
8294         {%
8295             \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma\
chapter{#2}}%
8296             \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\chaptermark
{#2}}%
8297             }%Need for \pairs, because of using parbox.
8298             {%
8299                 \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma\
chapter[#1]{#2}}%
8300                 \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\chaptermark
{#2}}}%Need for \pairs, because of using parbox.
8301             }%
8302             }%
8303             {%
8304                 \ifstrempy{#1}%
8305                 {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma\
chapter*{#2}}}%
8306                 {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma\
chapter*[#1]{#2}}}%Bug in LaTeX!
8307             }%
8308             \listcsgadd{eled@sections#5@0}{#3}%
8309             }
8310 \def\eled@section#1#2#3#4#5{%
8311     \ifstrempy{#4}%
8312     {\ifstrempy{#1}%
8313         {%
8314             \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\section{#2}}%

```



```

8315 \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\sectionmark
      {#2}}%Need for \pairs, because of using parbox.
8316 }%
8317 {%
8318 \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\section[#1]{#2}}%
8319 \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\sectionmark
      {#1}}%Need for \pairs, because of using parbox.
8320 }%
8321 }%
8322 {\ifstrempy{#1}%
8323   {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\section*{#2}}}%
8324   {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\section*{#1}{#2}}}%Bug in LaTeX!
8325 }
8326 \listcsadd{eled@sections#5@@}{#3}%
8327 }
8328 \def\eled@subsection#1#2#3#4#5{%
8329   \ifstrempy{#4}%
8330     {\ifstrempy{#1}%
8331       {%
8332         \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsection{#2}}%
8333         \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\csuse{
      subsectionmark}{#2}}%Need for \pairs, because of using parbox. \csuse in
      case of \subsectionmark is not defined (book)
8334       }%
8335       {%
8336         \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsection[#1]{#2}}%
8337         \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\csuse{
      subsectionmark}{#1}}%Need for \pairs, because of using parbox. \csuse in
      case of \subsectionmark is not defined (book)
8338       }%
8339     }%
8340     {\ifstrempy{#1}%
8341       {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsection*{#2}}}%
8342       {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsection*{#1}{#2}}}%Bug in LaTeX!
8343     }
8344     \listcsadd{eled@sections#5@@}{#3}%
8345   }
8346 \def\eled@subsubsection#1#2#3#4#5{%
8347   \ifstrempy{#4}%
8348     {\ifstrempy{#1}%
8349       {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsubsection{#2}}}%
8350       {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsubsection[#1]{#2}}}%
8351     }%
8352     {\ifstrempy{#1}%
8353       {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsubsection*{#2}}}%
8354       {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsubsection*{#1}{#2}}}%Bug in
      LaTeX!
8355     }
8356     \listcsadd{eled@sections#5@@}{#3}%
8357   }

```

```
8358
8359 %
```

End of the conditional test about noeledsec option.

```
8360 }{}
8361 %
```

## XXXIII Page breaking or no page breaking depending of specific lines

By default, page breaks are automatic. However, the user can define lines which will force page breaks, or prevent page breaks around one specific line. On the first run, the line-list file records the line number of where the page break is being changed (either forced, or prevented). On the next run, page breaks occur either before or after this line, depending on how the user sets the command. The default setting is after the line.

`\normal@page@break` `\normal@page@break` is an etoolbox list which contains the absolute line number of the last line, for each page.

```
8362 \def\normal@page@break{}
8363 %
```

`\l@prev@pb` The `\l@prev@pb` macro is a etoolbox list, which contains the lines in which page breaks occur (before or after). The `\l@prev@nopb` macro is a etoolbox list, which contains the lines with NO page break before or after.

```
8364 \def\l@prev@pb{}
8365 \def\l@prev@nopb{}
8366 %
```

`\ledpb` The `\ledpb` macro writes the call to `\led@pb` in line-list file. The `\ledpbnum` macro writes the call to `\led@pbnum` in line-list file. The `\lednopb` macro writes the call to `\led@nopb` in line-list file. The `\lednopbnum` macro writes the call to `\led@nopbnum` in line-list file.

```
8367 \newcommand{\ledpb}{\write\linenum@out{\string\led@pb}}
8368 \newcommand{\ledpbnum}[1]{\write\linenum@out{\string\led@pbnum{#1}}}
8369 \newcommand{\lednopb}{\write\linenum@out{\string\led@nopb}}
8370 \newcommand{\lednopbnum}[1]{\write\linenum@out{\string\led@nopbnum{#1}}}
8371 %
```

`\led@pb` The `\led@pb` adds the absolute line number in the `\l@prev@pb` list. The `\led@pbnum` adds the argument in the `\l@prev@pb` list. The `\led@nopb` adds the absolute line number in the `\l@prev@nopb` list. The `\led@nopbnum` adds the argument in the `\l@prev@nopb` list.

```

8372 \newcommand{\led@pb}{\listxadd{\l@prev@pb}{\the\absline@num}}
8373 \newcommand{\led@pbnum}[1]{\listxadd{\l@prev@pb}{#1}}
8374 \newcommand{\led@nopb}{\listxadd{\l@prev@nopb}{\the\absline@num}}
8375 \newcommand{\led@nopbnum}[1]{\listxadd{\l@prev@nopb}{#1}}
8376 %

```

**\ledpbsetting** The `\ledpbsetting` macro only changes the value of `\led@pb@macro`, for which the default value is `before`.

**\led@pb@setting**

```

8377 \def\led@pb@setting{before}
8378 \newcommand{\ledpbsetting}[1]{\gdef\led@pb@setting{#1}}
8379 %

```

**\led@check@pb** The `\led@check@pb` and `\led@check@nopb` are called before or after each line. They check if a page break must occur, depending on the current line and on the content of `\l@pb`.

**\led@check@nopb**

```

8380 \newcommand{\led@check@pb}{\xifinlist{\the\absline@num}{\l@prev@pb}{\pagebreak[4]}}
8381 \newcommand{\led@check@nopb}{%
8382   \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{before}{%
8383     \xifinlist{\the\absline@num}{\l@prev@nopb}{%
8384       {\numdef{\abs@prevline}{\the\absline@num-1}}%
8385       \xifinlist{\abs@prevline}{\normal@page@break}%
8386       {\nopagebreak[4]\enlargethispage{\baselineskip}}%
8387     }%
8388   }%
8389 }%
8390 }%
8391 \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{after}{%
8392   \xifinlist{\the\absline@num}{\l@prev@nopb}{%
8393     \xifinlist{\the\absline@num}{\normal@page@break}%
8394     {\nopagebreak[4]\enlargethispage{\baselineskip}}%
8395   }%
8396 }%
8397 }%
8398 }%
8399 }%
8400 }
8401 %

```

## XXXIV Long verse: prevents being separated by a page break

**\iflednopbinverse** The `\lednopbinverse` boolean is set to false by default. If set to true, `reledmac` will automatically prevent page breaks inside verse. The declaration is made at the beginning of the file, because it is used as a package option.

`\check@pb@in@verse` The `\check@pb@in@verse` checks if a verse is broken in two page. If true, it adds:

- The absolute line number of the first line of the verse -1 in the `\led@pb` list, if the page break must occur before the verse.
- The absolute line number of the first line of the verse -1 in the `\led@nopb` list, if the page break must occur after the verse.

```

8402 \newcommand{\check@pb@in@verse}{%
8403   \ifinstanza\iflednopbinverse\ifinserthangingsymbol% Using stanzas and
enabling page breaks in verse control, while on a hanging verse.
8404   \ifnum\page@num=\last@page@num\else%If we have change page
8405     \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{before}{%
8406       \numgdef{\abs@line@verse}{\the\absline@num-1}%
8407       \ledpbnum{\abs@line@verse}%
8408     }{}%
8409     \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{after}{%
8410       \numgdef{\abs@line@verse}{\the\absline@num-1}%
8411       \lednopbnum{\abs@line@verse}%
8412     }{}%
8413   \fi%
8414 \fi\fi\fi%
8415 }
8416 %

```

## XXXV Tools for hyperref package

`\Hy@raisedlink@left` The hyperref package provides a `\Hy@raisedlink` command, to be used to add an anchor to the top of a line and not to the bottom of it.<sup>34</sup>

However, this command disrupts the line breaking mechanism when it is called before any word. This is why `reledmac` defines `\Hy@raisedlink@left` that is called to the left of words, at the beginning of `\edtext` or inside the `\edlabel` commands.<sup>35</sup>

```

8417 \def\Hy@raisedlink@left#1{%
8418   \ifvmode
8419     #1%
8420   \else
8421     \Hy@SaveSpaceFactor
8422     \llap{\smash{%
8423       \begingroup
8424         \let\HyperRaiseLinkLength\@tempdima
8425         \setlength\HyperRaiseLinkLength\HyperRaiseLinkDefault
8426         \HyperRaiseLinkHook
8427       \expandafter\endgroup

```

<sup>34</sup><http://tex.stackexchange.com/a/17138/7712>.

<sup>35</sup>The code is inspired by an answer given by @unbonpetit. Thanks to him. <http://texnique.fr:80/osqa/questions/781/hyraisedlink-perturbe-la-maniere-dont-se-fait-la-coupure-de-ligne/801>.

```

8428 \expandafter\raise\the\HyperRaiseLinkLength\hbox{%
8429 \Hy@RestoreSpaceFactor
8430 #1%
8431 \Hy@SaveSpaceFactor
8432 }%
8433 }}%
8434 \Hy@RestoreSpaceFactor
8435 \penalty\@M\hskip\z@\relax
8436 \fi
8437 }
8438 %

```

## XXXVI Compatibility with eledmac

Here, we define some commands for the eledmac-compat option.

```

8439 \ifeledmaccompat@%
8440
8441 \newcommand{\footnormalX}[1]{\arrangementX[#1]{normal}}%
8442 \newcommand{\footparagraphX}[1]{\arrangementX[#1]{paragraph}}%
8443 \newcommand{\foottwocolX}[1]{\arrangementX[#1]{twocol}}%
8444 \newcommand{\footthreecolX}[1]{\XarrangementX[#1]{threecol}}%
8445
8446 \unless\ifnocritical@
8447 \newcommand{\footnormal}[1]{\Xarrangement[#1]{normal}}%
8448 \newcommand{\footparagraph}[1]{\Xarrangement[#1]{paragraph}}%
8449 \newcommand{\foottwocol}[1]{\Xarrangement[#1]{twocol}}%
8450 \newcommand{\footthreecol}[1]{\Xarrangement[#1]{threecol}}%
8451 \let\hsizetwocol\Xhsizetwocol
8452 \let\hsizethreecol\Xhsizethreecol
8453 \let\bhookXnote\Xbhooknote
8454 \let\boxsymlinenum\Xboxsymlinenum
8455 \let\symlinenum\Xsymlinenum
8456 \let\beforenumberinfootnote\Xbeforenumber
8457 \let\afternumberinfootnote\Xafternumber
8458 \let\beforeXsymlinenum\XbeforeXsymlinenum
8459 \let\afterXsymlinenum\XafterXsymlinenum
8460 \let\inplaceofnumber\Xinplaceofnumber
8461 \let\Xlemmaseparator\lemmaseparator
8462 \let\afterlemmaseparator\Xafterlemmaseparator
8463 \let\beforelemmaseparator\Xbeforelemmaseparator
8464 \let\inplaceoflemmaseparator\Xinplaceoflemmaseparator
8465 \let\txbeforeXnotes\Xtxbeforenotes
8466 \let\afterXrule\Xafterrule
8467 \let\numberonlyfirstinline\Xnumberonlyfirstinline
8468 \let\numberonlyfirstintwolines\Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines
8469 \let\nonumberinfootnote\Xnonumberinfootnote
8470 \let\pstartinfootnote\Xpstart
8471 \let\pstartinfootnoteeverytime\Xpstarteverytime

```

```

8472 \let\onlyXpstart\Xonlypstart
8473 \let\Xnonumberinfootnote\Xnonumber
8474 \let\Xnonbreakableafternumber\Xnonbreakableafternumber
8475 \let\XmaxhXnotes\Xmaxhnotes
8476 \let\XbeforeXnotes\Xbeforenotes
8477 \let\Xboxlinenum\Xboxlinenum
8478 \let\Xboxlinenumalign\Xboxlinenumalign
8479 \let\Xboxstartlinenum\Xboxstartlinenum
8480 \let\Xboxendlinenum\Xboxendlinenum
8481 \let\Xtwolines\Xtwolines
8482 \let\Xmorethantwolines\Xmorethantwolines
8483 \let\Xtwolinesbutnotmore\Xtwolinesbutnotmore
8484 \let\Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage\Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage
8485 \fi
8486
8487 \unless\ifnofamiliar@
8488 \let\XnotesXwidthliketwocolumns\XnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX
8489 \fi
8490 \newcommandX{\parafootsep}[2][1,usedefault]{%
8491 \Xparafootsep[#1]{#2}%
8492 \parafootsepX[#1]{#2}
8493 }%
8494
8495 \newcommandX{\afternote}[2][1,usedefault]{%
8496 \Xafternote[#1]{#2}%
8497 \afternoteX[#1]{#2}%
8498 }%
8499
8500 \unless\ifnoend@
8501 \let\XendXtwolines\Xendtwolines
8502 \let\XendXmorethantwolines\Xendmorethantwolines
8503 \let\XhookXendnote\Xendhooknote
8504 \let\XboxXendlinenum\Xendboxlinenum%
8505 \let\XboxXendlinenumalign\Xendboxlinenumalign%
8506 \let\XboxXendstartlinenum\Xendboxstartlinenum%
8507 \let\XboxXendendlinenum\Xendboxendlinenum%
8508 \let\XendXlemmaseparator\Xendlemmaseparator
8509 \let\XendXbeforelemmaseparator\Xendbeforelemmaseparator
8510 \let\XendXafterlemmaseparator\Xendafterlemmaseparator
8511 \let\XendXinplaceoflemmaseparator\Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator
8512 \fi
8513
8514 \AtBeginDocument{%
8515 \ifdef\lineref{}\let\lineref\edlineref}%
8516 }%
8517
8518
8519 \fi%
8520 %

```

</code>

## Appendix A Things to do when changing versions

### Appendix A.1 Migrating from edmac to ledmac

If you have never used edmac, ignore this section. If you have used edmac and are starting on a completely new document, ignore this section. Only read this section if you are converting an original edmac document to use ledmac.

The package still provides the original `\text` command, but it is (a) deprecated, and (b) its name has been changed<sup>36</sup> to `\critext`; use the `\edtext` macro instead. However, if you do use `\critext` (the new name for `\text`), the following is a reminder.

`\critext` Within numbered paragraphs, footnotes and endnotes are generated by forms of the `\critext` macro:

```
\critext{⟨lemma⟩}⟨commands⟩/
```

The `⟨lemma⟩` argument is the lemma in the main text: `\critext` both prints this as part of the text, and makes it available to the `⟨commands⟩` you specify to generate notes. The `/` at the end terminates the command; it is part of the macro's definition so that spaces after the macro will be treated as significant.

For example:

<code>I saw my friend \critext{Smith}</code>	1 I saw my friend
<code>\Afootnote{Jones C, D.}/</code>	2 Smith on Tuesday.
on Tuesday.	<u>2 Smith]</u> Jones C, D.

The lemma Smith is printed as part of this sentence in the text, and is also made available to the footnote that specifies a variant, Jones C, D. The footnote macro is supplied with the line number at which the lemma appears in the main text.

The `⟨lemma⟩` may contain further `\critext` commands. Nesting makes it possible to print an explanatory note on a long passage together with notes on variants for individual words within the passage. For example:

<code>\critext{I saw my friend</code>	1 I saw my friend
<code>\critext{Smith}{\Afootnote{Jones</code>	2 Smith on Tuesday.
<code>C, D.}/ on Tuesday.}</code>	<u>2 Smith]</u> Jones C, D.
<code>\Bfootnote{The date was</code>	<u>1–2 I saw my friend</u>
<code>July 16, 1954.}</code>	Smith on Tuesday.] The
<code>/</code>	date was July 16, 1954.

However, `\critext` cannot handle overlapping but unnested notes—for example, one note covering lines 10–15, and another covering 12–18; a `\critext` that starts in the `⟨lemma⟩` argument of another `\critext` must end there, too. (The `\lemma` and `\linenum` commands may be used to generate overlapping notes if necessary.)

The second argument of the `\critext` macro, `⟨commands⟩`, is the same as the second argument to the `\edtext` macro.

It is possible to define aliases for `\critext`, which can be easier to type. You can make a single character substitute for `\critext` by saying this:

```
\catcode`\<=\active
```

<sup>36</sup>A name like `\text` is likely to be defined by other  $\text{\LaTeX}$  packages (it certainly is by the AMS packages) and it seems sensible to try and avoid clashes with other definitions.



```
\let<=\critext
```

Then you might say `<{Smith}\variant{Jones}/`. This of course destroys the ability to use `<` in any new macro definitions, so long as it remains in effect; hence it should be used with care.

Changing the character at the end of the command requires more work:

```
\catcode`\<=\active
\def\xtext#1#2>{\critext{#1}{#2}/}
\let<=\xtext
```

This allows you to say `<{Smith}\Afootnote{Jones}>`.

Aliases for `\critext` of the first kind shown here also can't be nested—that is, you can't use the alias in the text that forms the first argument to `\critext`. (See VI p. 117 to find out why.) Aliases of the second kind may be nested without any problem.

If you really have to use `\critext` in any of the tabular or array environments, then `\edtext` must not be used in the same environment. If you use `\critext` in one of these environments then you have to issue the declaration `\usingcritext` beforehand. The declaration `\usingedtext` must be issued to revert to the default assumption that `\edtext` will be used.

## Appendix A.2 Migration from ledmac to eledmac

In `eledmac`, some changes were made in the code to allow easy customization. This may cause problems for people who have already made their own. The next sections explain how to handle this.

If you have created your own series using `\addfootins` and `\addfootinsX`, you must use instead the `\newseries` command (see 6.6.1 p. 33), and remove any `\Xfootnote` command.

If you have customized the `\XXXXXfmt` command, please check whether you can achieve the same by the commands documented for display options (7 p. 33) or `\Xfootnote` options (6.2.2 p. 24). Otherwise please add a new ticket on Github to request a new function for doing this.<sup>37</sup>

If for some reason you do not want to make the modifications to use the new functions of `eledmac`, you can continue using your own `\XXXXXfmt` command, but you must replace:

```
\renewcommand*{XXXXfmt}[3]
```

with

```
\renewcommandx*{XXXXfmt}[4][4=Z]
```

---

<sup>37</sup><https://github.com/maieul/ledmac/issues>

If you do not make that, you will get a spurious [X], where X is series letter.

If you used a `\protect` command inside a `\footnote` command inside a numbered section, you must change the `\protect` to `\noexpand`. Otherwise the command after the `\protect` will be discarded.

### Appendix A.3 Migration to eledmac 1.5.1

The version 1.5.1 corrects a bug in `stanzaindentrepetition` (cf. 9.3 p. 46). This bug had two consequences:

1. `stanzaindentrepetition` did not work when its value was greater than 2.
2. `stanzaindentrepetition` worked wrong when its value was equal to 2.

So, if you used `stanzaindentrepetition` with a value equal to 2, you had to change your `\setstanzaindent`. Explanation:

```
\setcounter{stanzaindentrepetition}{2}
\setstanzaindent{5,1,0}
```

This code, in versions prior to 1.5.1, made the first line have an indentation of 0, the second line of 1, the third verse of 0, the fourth verse of 1 and so forth.

But this code should have instead achieved quite the contrary: the first line would have an indentation of 1, the second line of 0, the third line of 1, the fourth line of 0 and so forth.

So version 1.5.1 corrected this bug. If you want to keep the former presentation, you must change:

```
\setcounter{stanzaindentrepetition}{2}
\setstanzaindent{5,1,0}
```

to:

```
\setcounter{stanzaindentrepetition}{2}
\setstanzaindent{5,0,1}
```

### Appendix A.4 Migration to eledmac 1.12.0

The migration to eledmac 1.12.0 is easy:

- You must first delete all the auxiliary files, then compile your document three times as usual.
- If you have modified `\l@reg`, which is not advisable, you must rename it to `\@nl@reg`.

There is an additional problem. If you have put text into brackets just after `\pstart` or `\pend`, this text will be considered to be an optional argument of `\pstart` or `\pend` (see 5.2.3 p. 18). If so, add a `\relax` between `\pstart`/`\pend` and the first bracket.

The version 1.12.0 also introduce a better way to handle sectional divisions inside numbered text. Please read 16.2 p. 62.

## Appendix A.5 Migration to eledmac 17.1

This version changes the default setting of `\Xpstart`. Henceforth, `pstart` numbers will be printed in footnotes within the section of text where you have called `\numberpstarttrue`.

We do not see any reason to print them in the other sections. However, if you want to print the `pstart` numbers in all of the footnotes, whatever the section, without having to use `\numberpstarttrue`, you can use `\Xpstarteverytime`.

## Appendix A.6 Migration to eledmac 1.21.0

### Appendix A.6.1 `\Xledsetnormalparstuff` and `\ledsetnormalparstuffX`

The `\ledsetnormalparstuff` has been split into two different commands:

- `\Xledsetnormalparstuff` for critical notes;
- `\ledsetnormalparstuffX` for familiar notes.

Both commands can take an optional argument which is the series letter. If you have redefined `\ledsetnormalparstuff` or any of the commands which call them, you must change them accordingly.

### Appendix A.6.2 Endnotes

In any case, delete the `.end` file before the next run.

The previous version of Eledmac had a bug: there were two spaces between the starting page number and the starting line number, but only one space between the ending page number and the ending line number.

As a matter of fact, a spurious space was added after the first `\printnpnum`. This spurious space has been deleted. However, if you want to keep the previous spurious space, you may load the package with the `oldprintnpnumspace` option.

If you have redefined `\endprint`, you must:

- Contact us and ask for the feature that required your hack, in order to avoid such a hack in the future.
- Use the new fifth argument.
- Add `\xdef\@currentseries{#4}` at the beginning of your own command.

## Appendix A.7 Migration to eledmac 1.22.0

The `\ledinnote` command now takes a first optional argument, which is the label for the hyperreference. If you have redefined it, change your redefinition, and check whether you can avoid this redefinition by only redefining `\ledinnotemark`.

## Appendix A.8 Migration to eledmac 1.23.0

You must delete the numbered auxiliary files before compiling with the new version of eledmac.

## Appendix A.9 Migration from eledmac to reledmac

There are many changes in reledmac which require the user to make modifications.

### Appendix A.9.1 Risk of ‘no room for a new’

The risk to obtain a ‘no room for a new something’ error is greater in reledmac than it is in eledmac. See 19.1.3 p. 64 in order to know how to limit it.

### Appendix A.9.2 Multiple indices with memoir

Eledmac and ledmac used the specific indexing tools of the memoir class designed to produce multiple indices. However, eledmac could also use imakeidx or indextools tools independently of the memoir class. This system forced to maintain redundant code. Since reledmac, we use only the imakeidx or indextools tools.

Consequently: Users of memoir are invited to use indextool or imakeidx to produce multiple indices.

### Appendix A.9.3 Deprecated commands and options

The table of deprecated commands and their alternatives follows. Note that the way some commands must be used may have changed. Please read the handbook.

<i>Deprecated command</i>	<i>Replaced with</i>
<code>\addfootins</code>	<code>\newseries</code>
<code>\addfootinsX</code>	<code>\newseries</code>
<code>\critext</code>	<code>\edtext</code>
<code>\falseverse</code>	<code>\newverse</code>
<code>\interparanoteglue</code>	<code>\Xafternote</code> and <code>\afternoteX</code>
<code>\ledchapter</code>	<code>\eledchapter</code>
<code>\ledsection</code>	<code>\eledsection</code>
<code>\ledsetnormalparstuff</code>	<code>\Xledsetnormalparstuff</code> and <code>\ledsetnormalparstuffX</code>
<code>\ledsubsection</code>	<code>\eledsubsection</code>
<code>\ledsubsubsection</code>	<code>\eledsubsubsection</code>
<code>\noeledsec</code>	Package option <code>noeledsec</code>
<code>\noendnotes</code>	Package option <code>noendnotes</code>
<code>\pageparbreak</code>	<code>\ledpb</code>

The `ledsecnolinenumber` option has been removed, because it was related to deprecated commands.

The `oldprintnpnumspace` option has been removed too, because it was related to a historical bug. The `\usingedtext` and `\usingcritext` commands are also deprecated.

**Appendix A.9.4 \renewcommand replaced by command**

Many uses of \renewcommand have been replaced with uses of specific commands. Please read handbook about specific commands.

<i>Deprecated \renewcommand</i>	<i>Replaced with</i>
\@led@extranofeet	\newseries
\apprefprefixmore	\setapprefprefixmore
\apprefprefixsingle	\setapprefprefixsingle
\endstanzaextra	Optional argument of \&
\hangingsymbol	\sethangingsymbol
\ledfootinsdim	\Xmaxhnotes and \maxhnotesX
\parafootftmsep	\Xparafootsep and \parafootsepX
\notenumfont	\Xnotenumfont, \Xendnotenumfont and \notenumfontX
\notefontsetup	\Xnotefontsize, \Xendnotefontsize and \notefontsizeX
\sidenotesep	\setsidenotsep
\startstanzahook	Optional argument of \stanza
\symplinenum	\Xsymplinenum

**Appendix A.9.5 Commands the names of which have been changed**

In order to help the migration from eledmac to reledmac, you may load reledmac with eledmac-compat option. However, it is advised not to, and to change the command names themselves instead. In many cases, you use only a few of them, except the \footparagraph command.

<i>Old command</i>	<i>New command</i>
\footparagraph	\Xarrangement
\footnormal	\Xarrangement
\foottwocol	\Xarrangement
\footthreecol	\Xarrangement
\footparagraphX	\arrangementX
\footnormalX	\arrangementX
\foottwocolX	\arrangementX
\footthreecolX	\arrangementX
\afterlemmaseparator	\Xafterlemmaseparator
\afternote	\Xafternote and \afternoteX
\afternumberinfootnote	\Xafternumber
\afterXrule	\Xafterrule
\afterXsymplinenum	\Xaftersymplinenum
\beforelemmaseparator	\Xbeforelemmaseparator
\beforenumberinfootnote	\Xbeforenumber
\beforeXnotes	\Xbeforenotes
\beforeXsymplinenum	\Xbeforesymplinenum

<i>Old command</i>	<i>New command</i>
<code>\bhookXnote</code>	<code>\Xbhookendnote</code>
<code>\bhookXnote</code>	<code>\Xbhooknote</code>
<code>\boxendlinenum</code>	<code>\Xboxendlinenum</code>
<code>\boxlinenum</code>	<code>\Xboxlinenum</code>
<code>\boxlinenumalign</code>	<code>\Xboxlinenumalign</code>
<code>\boxstartlinenum</code>	<code>\Xboxstartlinenum</code>
<code>\boxsymlinenum</code>	<code>\Xboxsymlinenum</code>
<code>\boxXendlinenum</code>	<code>\Xendboxlinenum</code>
<code>\boxXendlinenumalign</code>	<code>\Xendboxlinenumalign</code>
<code>\boxXendstartlinenum</code>	<code>\boxXendstartlinenum</code>
<code>\letboxXendendlinenum</code>	<code>\Xendletboxendlinenum</code>
<code>\hsizetwocol</code>	<code>\Xhsizetwocol</code>
<code>\hsizethreecol</code>	<code>\Xhsizethreecol</code>
<code>\inplaceoflemmaseparator</code>	<code>\Xinplaceoflemmaseparator</code>
<code>\inplaceofnumber</code>	<code>\Xinplaceofnumber</code>
<code>\lemmaseparator</code>	<code>\Xlemmaseparator</code>
<code>\maxhXnotes</code>	<code>\Xmaxhnotes</code>
<code>\morethantwolines</code>	<code>\Xmorethantwolines</code>
<code>\nonumberinfootnote</code>	<code>\Xnonumber</code>
<code>\notesXwidthliketwocolumns</code>	<code>\noteswidthliketwocolumnsX</code>
<code>\noXlemmaseparator</code>	<code>\Xnolemmaseparator</code>
<code>\numberonlyfirstinline</code>	<code>\Xnumberonlyfirstinline</code>
<code>\numberonlyfirstintwolines</code>	<code>\Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines</code>
<code>\nonbreakableafternumber</code>	<code>\Xnonbreakableafternumber</code>
<code>\onlyXpstart</code>	<code>\Xonlypstart</code>
<code>\parafootsep</code>	<code>\Xparafootsep</code> and <code>\parafootsepX</code>
<code>\pstartinfootnote</code>	<code>\Xpstart</code>
<code>\pstartinfootnoteeverytime</code>	<code>\Xpstarteverytime</code>
<code>\symlinenum</code>	<code>\Xsymlinenum</code>
<code>\twolines</code>	<code>\Xtwolines</code>
<code>\twolinesbutnotmore</code>	<code>\Xtwolinesbutnotmore</code>
<code>\twolinesonlyinsamepage</code>	<code>\Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage</code>
<code>\txtbeforeXnotes</code>	<code>\Xtxtbeforenotes</code>
<code>\XendXafterlemmaseparator</code>	<code>\Xendafterlemmaseparator</code>
<code>\XendXbeforelemmaseparator</code>	<code>\Xendbeforelemmaseparator</code>
<code>\XendXinplaceoflemmaseparator</code>	<code>\Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator</code>
<code>\XendXlemmaseparator</code>	<code>\Xendlemmaseparator</code>
<code>\XendXmorethantwolines</code>	<code>\Xendmorethantwolines</code>
<code>\XendXtwolines</code>	<code>\Xendtwolines</code>
<code>\Xnonumberinfootnote</code>	<code>\Xnonumber</code>
<code>\lineref</code>	<code>\edlineref</code>

### Appendix A.9.6 Endnotes

With *reledmac*, there is now one auxiliary file for every endnotes set (*.Aend*, *.Bend*, *.Cend* etc.). If you have overridden `\doendnotes` (which you would not have done) you must adapt your code.

### Appendix A.9.7 Z Series

The ‘Z’ series of notes has been removed. Only five series are provided now by default: A, B, C, D, E.

### Appendix A.9.8 Internal commands

Users who have overridden internal commands, which is wrong, must adapt according to the following. Or better, they should not override any of such commands and use *reledmac* options instead.

- If you have modified `\Xfootfmt`, note that the fourth argument is now mandatory.
- `\unvxh` has been replaced with `\Xunvxh` and `\unvxhX` with two mandatory arguments.

## Appendix A.10 Migration to *reledmac* 2.1.0

*Reledmac* 2.1.0 fix some bugs when using `\Xbhooknote` and `\bhooknoteX` not in order to execute code at the beginning of each notes, but to insert content of at the beginning of each notes.

People who use these commands to do it, which is not the original idea, must change the following:

1. Horizontal space is no longer automatically added after the content of the `\Xbhooknote/\bhooknoteX` argument. You must include it manually. So instead of `\Xbhooknote{content}`, use `\Xbhooknote{content }.`
2. Indent is no longer automatically added before the content of the `\Xbhooknote/\bhooknoteX` argument. If you want to keep it, add `\indent` in the argument of `\Xbhooknote/\bhooknoteX`.

## Appendix A.11 Migration to *reledmac* 2.1.3

*Reledmac* 2.1.3 fix an historical bug, (style in *ledmac* 0.7!) which doubled the space before the rules of paragraphed familiar footnotes. Consequently, if you use paragraphed familiar footnotes, you should maybe adapt it, playing with `\beforenotesX`.

## Appendix A.12 Migration to *reledmac* 2.3.0

Before *reledmac* 2.3.0, for typesetting verse, any empty line was considered a paragraph inside verses. Counting empty lines this created breaking verse, hanging verses, and also added spurious vertical spaces. Version 2.3.0 disables paragraph in stanza. If you want vertical space, use optional argument of `\stanza` or `\endverse`.

### Appendix A.13 Migration to reledmac 2.4.0

It is not mandatory, but strongly recommended, to change any `\renewcommand{\endashchar}{\langle...}\rangle}` to the use of `\Xlinerangeseparator` or `/` and `\Xendlinerangeseparator` (7.2.3 p. 35).

### Appendix A.14 Migration to reledmac 2.5.0

It is strongly recommended to stop redefining `\printnpnum` and to use the hooks documented in 7.3 p. 38.

`\xlineref` does not print anymore the side flag (R for right side), because it is incompatible with numerical test. Use `\xflagref` to obtain it.

The `\printlines` and `\printendlines` commands take now an eighth argument, which is the side flag. It is strongly recommended to NEVER redefine these two commands and to use the setting commands instead (or to ask for new setting commands if the actual does not answer to your needs). However, if you have done it, just change your redefinition to have a new argument.

It is strongly recommended to stop redefining `\fullstop` and to use `\Xsublinesep` instead.

### Appendix A.15 Migration to reledmac 2.7.0

`\SErefonlypage` (introduced in reledmac 2.5.0) added an parenthesis after the page number. This was just an error, linked to a bad imitation of `\SErefwithpage`. That has been deleted. And so, the `\XendafterpagenumberSErefonlypage` to set it was also deleted.

`\rigidbalance` is split to two new commands: `\Xrigidbalance` for critical footnotes and `\rigidbalanceX` for familiar footnotes. If you have redefined it — but why should you have ? —, you should split your single redefinition in two redefinitions.

### Appendix A.16 Migration to reledmac 2.7.2

`\Xhsize` is already defined in the `floatrow` package. It becomes `\Xwidth`, and, consequently, `\hsizeX` becomes `\widthX`.

The ancient names are temporarily maintained as aliases.

### Appendix A.17 Migration to reledmac 2.8.0

Reledmac 2.8.0 fix spurious indents for paragraphed critical and familiar footnotes in `ledgroup` and `minipage`. You can re-establish the indent with `\Xparinden` and `\parindentX`.

### Appendix A.18 Migration to reledmac 2.13.1

Reledmac 2.5.0 added a bug, which makes the right flag to be printed on the right side of critical footnotes, even if not explicitly requested by using `\Xlineflag`.



Version 2.13.1 solves this issue. Please use `\Xlineflag` if you want to add the right flag.

## References

- [Bre96] Herbert Breger. `tabmac`. October 1996. (Available from CTAN in `macros/plain/contrib/tabmac`)
- [Bur01] John Burt. ‘Typesetting critical editions of poetry’. *TUGboat*, **22**, 4, pp 353–361, December 2001. (Code available from CTAN in `macros/latex/contrib/poemscol`)
- [Eck03] Matthias Eckermann. *The Parallel-Package*. April 2003. (Available from CTAN in `macros/latex/contrib/parallel`)
- [Fai03] Robin Fairbairns. *footmisc—a portmanteau package for customising footnotes in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. February 2003. (Available from CTAN in `macros/latex/contrib/footmisc`)
- [LW90] John Lavagnino and Dominik Wujastyk. ‘An overview of edmac: a PLAIN TeX format for critical editions’. *TUGboat*, **11**, 4, pp. 623–643, November 1990. (Code available from CTAN in `macros/plain/contrib/edmac`)
- [Lüc03] Uwe Lück. ‘ednotes—critical edition typesetting with LaTeX’. *TUGboat*, **24**, 2, pp. 224–236, 2003. (Code available from CTAN in `macros/latex/contrib/ednotes`)
- [Sul92] Wayne G. Sullivan. *The file edstanzas.doc*. June 1992. (Available from CTAN in `macros/plain/contrib/edmac`)
- [Wil02] Peter Wilson. *The memoir class for configurable typesetting*. November 2002. (Available from CTAN in `macros/latex/contrib/memoir`)
- [Wil04] Peter Wilson and Maïeul Rouquette. *Parallel typesetting for critical editions: the eledpar package*. December 2004. (Available from CTAN in `macros/latex/contrib/ledmmac`)

## Index

### Symbols

<code>\&amp;</code>	46
<code>\@EDROWFILL@</code>	1
<code>\@adv</code>	1
<code>\@advancestanzanumber</code>	1
<code>\@beforeinsertofthisedtext</code>	1
<code>\@doclearpage</code>	1
<code>\@doreinfeetX</code>	1
<code>\@edindex@hyperref</code>	1
<code>\@edrowfill@</code>	1
<code>\@edtext@level</code>	1
<code>\@emptytoks</code>	1

\@endmsd .....	1
\@fnpos .....	1
\@footnotemark .....	1
\@footnotetext .....	1
\@getfirstseries .....	1
\@gobblefive .....	1
\@gobblefour .....	1
\@gobblethree .....	1
\@h .....	1
\@hangingsymbol .....	1
\@iiiminipage .....	1
\@insertstanzaumber .....	1
\@k .....	1
\@l@dttempcnta .....	1
\@l@dttempcntb .....	1
\@lab .....	1
\@led@testifnofoot .....	1
\@lemma .....	1
\@line@num .....	1
\@lock .....	1
\@lopL .....	1
\@lopR .....	1
\@makechapterhead .....	1
\@makeschapterhead .....	1
\@mem@extranofeet .....	1
\@mem@old@ssect .....	1
\@mpfnpos .....	1
\@msd .....	1
\@msd@c .....	1
\@msd@options@iffullpage .....	1
\@msdata@list .....	1
\@nl .....	1
\@nl@reg .....	1
\@opXfeet .....	1
\@pend .....	1
\@pendR .....	1
\@ref .....	1
\@ref@reg .....	1
\@ref@reg@parse .....	1
\@sect .....	1
\@series .....	1
\@set .....	1
\@sidenotesep .....	1
\@ssect .....	1
\@startstanza .....	1
\@stopstanza .....	1
\@sw .....	1
\@tag .....	1
\@wredindex .....	1
\@xloop .....	1

\@xympar	1
CLASSarticle	64
CLASSbook	64, 320
CLASSmemoir	185, 186, 242, 243, 273, 320, 340, 397, 401
CLASSscrbook	401
COMMAND\*footnote	66
COMMAND\...\@footnotemark...	188
COMMAND\...d@ta	140
COMMAND\<hook	
@<series	231
COMMAND\<hookname	
<pseudoserries	233
COMMAND\<type	
footfmt	176
COMMAND\@@line	168
COMMAND\@MM	156, 398
COMMAND\@Rlineflag	275, 398
COMMAND\@Serefprefix	254
COMMAND\@Serefprefixmore	254
COMMAND\@add@	310
COMMAND\@adv	102
COMMAND\@apprefprefixmore	254
COMMAND\@apprefprefixsingle	254
COMMAND\@beforeinsertofthisedtext	123
COMMAND\@bsphack	245
COMMAND\@doclearpage	242, 243, 391, 401
COMMAND\@doreinfeetX	401
COMMAND\@dprintingcolumns	398
COMMAND\@edindex@hyperref	275, 276
COMMAND\@edtext@level	120
COMMAND\@esphack	245
COMMAND\@fnpos	206
COMMAND\@footnotemark	186, 391, 401
COMMAND\@footnotetext	186, 187, 391
COMMAND\@gobble	118, 119, 226
COMMAND\@gobblefive	228, 400
COMMAND\@gobblefour	397
COMMAND\@gobblethree	390
COMMAND\@h	171
COMMAND\@hangingsymbol	280
COMMAND\@iiiminipage	266, 267, 390, 401
COMMAND\@iiiminpage	266
COMMAND\@l	396
COMMAND\@l@dtempcnta	143, 144, 151
COMMAND\@l@dtempcntb	144
COMMAND\@l@reg	396
COMMAND\@lab	98, 244, 247, 250, 390
COMMAND\@ldunboxmpfoot	268
COMMAND\@led@extranofeet	341
COMMAND\@ledinnote@command	271, 272

COMMAND\@lemma	123, 125
COMMAND\@lock	93, 280
COMMAND\@lopL	391
COMMAND\@lopR	391
COMMAND\@makecol	239, 242, 401
COMMAND\@mpfnpos	206
COMMAND\@msd	288
COMMAND\@msd@c	288
COMMAND\@msd@options@iffullpage	294
COMMAND\@msdata@list	288, 289
COMMAND\@nl	98, 99, 101–103, 112, 247, 390, 391
COMMAND\@nl@reg	99, 338, 391, 396
COMMAND\@opXfeet	391
COMMAND\@opfeetX	401
COMMAND\@opxtrafeeti	401
COMMAND\@page	101, 247
COMMAND\@pend	391
COMMAND\@pendR	391
COMMAND\@ref	99, 108–110, 113, 118
COMMAND\@ref@later	110, 114
COMMAND\@ref@reg	109, 391
COMMAND\@ref@reg@parsearg	110
COMMAND\@reinserts	239, 240, 242, 401
COMMAND\@secondoftwo	66
COMMAND\@sect	323
COMMAND\@series	229
COMMAND\@set	103
COMMAND\@sidenotesep	264
COMMAND\@stopmsd	289
COMMAND\@sw	110, 126, 129, 130
COMMAND\@tag	120, 121, 124
COMMAND\@tempcnta	79
COMMAND\@tempcntb	79
COMMAND\@toksa	84
COMMAND\@toksb	84
COMMAND\@xloop	152
COMMAND\@xympar	258, 401
COMMAND\Aendnote	15, 24
COMMAND\Afootfmt	156
COMMAND\Afootgroup	156
COMMAND\Afootnote	8, 15, 23, 24, 27, 121, 163, 185, 207, 221, 400
COMMAND\Afootstart	156
COMMAND\AtEveryPend	18, 48, 135, 398, 399, 401
COMMAND\AtEveryPstart	18, 48, 398, 399, 401, 404
COMMAND\AtEveryStanza	48, 405
COMMAND\AtEveryStopStanza	48, 405
COMMAND\Bendnote	15, 23
COMMAND\Bfootnote	8, 15, 185, 207, 221
COMMAND\Centering	42
COMMAND\Cfootnote	185

COMMAND\Columns	79, 160
COMMAND\Dfootnote	185
COMMAND\Efootnote	185
COMMAND\Gls	58
COMMAND\Hy@raisedlink	332
COMMAND\Hy@raisedlink@left	332
COMMAND\LTR	42
COMMAND\NR	323
COMMAND\Pages	79, 240, 241
COMMAND\ProcessOptionsX	70
COMMAND\RL	41
COMMAND\RaggedLeft	42
COMMAND\RaggedRight	42
COMMAND\SEonlypage	252, 403
COMMAND\Seref	52–54, 252, 254, 404
COMMAND\Serefonlypage	52–54, 344, 403
COMMAND\Serefwithpage	52–54, 252, 254, 344, 403, 405
COMMAND\Stanza	396
COMMAND\Waklam	311
COMMAND\X@doreinfeet	240, 401
COMMAND\XR@prefix	257
COMMAND\XR@test	257
COMMAND\XR@test@mac	257
COMMAND\XR@test@mac@test	257
COMMAND\XXXXXXfmt	337
COMMAND\XXXXXXfmt	337
COMMAND\Xafterlemmaseparator	39, 341
COMMAND\Xafternote	43, 340, 341
COMMAND\Xafternumber	37, 341
COMMAND\Xafterrule	44, 208, 341, 396, 399
COMMAND\Xaftersymlinenum	37, 341
COMMAND\Xarrangement	34, 66, 156, 157, 231, 341
COMMAND\Xarrangement@footparagraph	161
COMMAND\Xarrangement@normal	157
COMMAND\Xarrangement@paragraph	161
COMMAND\Xbeforeinserting	42
COMMAND\Xbeforelemmaseparator	39, 341
COMMAND\Xbeforenotes	43, 207, 341, 396, 399
COMMAND\Xbeforenumber	35, 37, 341
COMMAND\Xbeforesymlinenum	37, 341
COMMAND\Xbhookendnote	342
COMMAND\Xbhookgroup	43, 403, 404
COMMAND\Xbhooknote	41, 342, 343, 401, 402
COMMAND\Xboxendlinenum	38, 342, 400
COMMAND\Xboxlinenum	37, 38, 342
COMMAND\Xboxlinenumalign	38, 342, 400
COMMAND\Xboxstartlinenum	38, 342, 400
COMMAND\Xboxsymlinenum	38, 342
COMMAND\Xcolalign	42, 399
COMMAND\Xdo@feet	239, 391, 401

COMMAND\Xend	228
COMMAND\XendXafterlemmaseparator	342
COMMAND\XendXbeforelemmaseparator	342
COMMAND\XendXinplaceoflemmaseparator	342
COMMAND\XendXlemmaseparator	342
COMMAND\XendXmorethantwolines	342
COMMAND\XendXtwolines	342
COMMAND\Xendafterenumber	37, 402
COMMAND\Xendafterlemmaseparator	39, 342
COMMAND\Xendafternote	45, 404
COMMAND\Xendafternumber	39
COMMAND\Xendafterpagenumbe	405
COMMAND\Xendafterpagenumber	38, 53
COMMAND\XendafterpagenumberSErefonlypage	344
COMMAND\Xendaftersymlinenum	37, 39, 402
COMMAND\Xendahookinplaceofnumber	39, 402
COMMAND\Xendahooklinenumber	39, 402
COMMAND\Xendbeforelemmaseparator	39, 342
COMMAND\Xendbeforelinenumber	39
COMMAND\Xendbeforenumber	37, 402
COMMAND\Xendbeforepagenumber	38, 53, 54
COMMAND\XendbeforepagenumberSErefonlypage	53
COMMAND\Xendbeforesymlinenum	37, 39, 402
COMMAND\Xendbhookinplaceofnumber	39, 402
COMMAND\Xendbhooklinenumber	39, 402
COMMAND\Xendbhooknote	41
COMMAND\Xendboxendlinenum	38, 400
COMMAND\Xendboxlinenum	38, 342, 398
COMMAND\Xendboxlinenumalign	38, 342, 400
COMMAND\Xendboxstartlinenum	38, 400
COMMAND\Xendboxsymlinenum	38, 402
COMMAND\Xendhangindent	41, 402, 404
COMMAND\Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator	24, 40, 342
COMMAND\Xendinplaceofnumber	37, 401
COMMAND\Xendinsertsep@	214
COMMAND\Xendlemmadisablefontselection	40
COMMAND\Xendlemmafont	40, 403
COMMAND\Xendlemmaseparator	25, 39, 342
COMMAND\Xendletboxendlinenum	342
COMMAND\Xendlineflag	54
COMMAND\Xendlineprefixmore	38, 54
COMMAND\Xendlineprefixsingle	38, 54
COMMAND\Xendlinerangeseparator	35, 54, 344, 402
COMMAND\Xendmorethantwolines	24, 36, 54, 342, 399, 400
COMMAND\Xendnonumber	36, 401
COMMAND\Xendnote	210, 226–228, 399
COMMAND\Xendnotefontsize	40, 341
COMMAND\Xendnotenumfont	39, 40, 341
COMMAND\Xendnotes	213
COMMAND\Xendnumberonlyfirstinline	35, 402

COMMAND\Xendnumberonlyfirstintwolines	35, 402
COMMAND\Xendparagraph	45, 396
COMMAND\Xendsep	45
COMMAND\Xendsublinesep	37, 54
COMMAND\Xendsymlinenum	35, 402
COMMAND\Xendtwolines	24, 36, 54, 342, 399, 400
COMMAND\Xendtwolinesbutnotmore	36, 54, 399, 400
COMMAND\Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage	36, 54, 399, 400
COMMAND\Xendwrapcontent	41, 405
COMMAND\Xendwraplemma	41, 405
COMMAND\Xfootfmt	343
COMMAND\Xfootgroup	160
COMMAND\Xfootins	159
COMMAND\Xfootnote	51, 56, 120, 337, 393, 397, 399, 403, 405
COMMAND\Xfootstarts	160
COMMAND\Xhangindent	41, 402
COMMAND\Xhsize	344, 403, 404
COMMAND\Xsizethreecol	42, 44, 342
COMMAND\Xsizetwocol	42, 44, 233, 342
COMMAND\Xinplaceoflemmaseparator	24, 39, 342
COMMAND\Xinplaceofnumber	37, 342, 399, 400
COMMAND\Xinsertparafootsep	166, 168
COMMAND\Xledsetnormalparstuff	339, 340, 399
COMMAND\Xlemmadisablefontselection	40
COMMAND\Xlemmafnt	40, 403
COMMAND\Xlemmaseparator	39, 234, 236, 239, 342
COMMAND\Xlineflag	53, 344, 345, 405
COMMAND\Xlinerrangeseparator	35, 53, 344, 402
COMMAND\Xmaxhnotes	44, 64, 66, 341, 342, 396, 398
COMMAND\Xmorethantwolines	24, 35, 36, 53, 342, 398
COMMAND\Xnoindent	402
COMMAND\Xnolemmaseparator	39, 239, 342
COMMAND\Xnonbreakableafternumber	37, 342, 394
COMMAND\Xnonumber	36, 342
COMMAND\Xnonumberinfootnote	342
COMMAND\Xnotefontsize	40, 341
COMMAND\Xnotefontsize@(<s>	166, 170, 171
COMMAND\Xnotenunfont	40, 341
COMMAND\Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns	45, 397
COMMAND\Xnumberonlyfirstinline	35, 95, 233, 234, 236, 342, 393, 398
COMMAND\Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines	35, 342, 393
COMMAND\Xonlypstart	36, 342, 393, 398
COMMAND\Xparafootsep	43, 96, 341, 342, 405
COMMAND\Xparafootsep@series	166
COMMAND\Xparinden	344
COMMAND\Xparindent	41, 399, 402, 404
COMMAND\Xprenotes	43, 208, 405
COMMAND\Xprenotes@	159, 208, 393
COMMAND\Xpstart	36, 339, 342, 393, 398
COMMAND\Xstarteverytime	36, 339, 342, 398



COMMAND\Xragged	43
COMMAND\Xrigidbalance	168, 344, 403
COMMAND\Xstanza	36, 48
COMMAND\Xstanzaseparator	36
COMMAND\Xsublinesep	21, 37, 53, 344
COMMAND\Xsublinesepside	21, 37
COMMAND\Xsymlinenum	35, 43, 341, 342, 400
COMMAND\Xtoendnotes	25, 227
COMMAND\Xtwolines	24, 35, 36, 53, 181, 182, 233, 342, 398
COMMAND\Xtwolinesappref	233
COMMAND\Xtwolinesbutnotmore	36, 53, 342, 399
COMMAND\Xtwolinesbutnotmoreappref	233
COMMAND\Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage	36, 53, 342, 399
COMMAND\Xtxtbeforenotes	43, 342, 405
COMMAND\Xunvxh	164, 343
COMMAND\Xwidth	44, 344, 404
COMMAND\Xwrapcontent	41, 405
COMMAND\Xwraplemma	41, 42, 405
COMMAND\&	341
COMMAND\absline@num	92, 142
COMMAND\accent	119
COMMAND\actionlines@list	93, 143
COMMAND\actions@list	93
COMMAND\add@inserts	93, 150
COMMAND\add@inserts@next	150
COMMAND\add@msd@	288
COMMAND\add@msdata	288, 289
COMMAND\add@msdata@firstlineofpage	292
COMMAND\add@msddata	288
COMMAND\add@penalties	141, 151
COMMAND\addcontentsline	318
COMMAND\addfootins	337, 340
COMMAND\addfootinsX	337, 340
COMMAND\addtoenotes	227
COMMAND\advancelabel@refs	246
COMMAND\advanceline	21, 22, 95, 102, 115, 401
COMMAND\advancepageno	239
COMMAND\affixlin@num	264
COMMAND\affixline@num	144, 147, 148, 391
COMMAND\affixpstart@num	148
COMMAND\afterXrule	341
COMMAND\afterXsymlinenum	341
COMMAND\afterenumber	37
COMMAND\aftergroup	118, 122
COMMAND\afterlemmaseparator	341
COMMAND\afternote	341
COMMAND\afternoteX	43, 340, 341
COMMAND\afternumberinfootnote	341
COMMAND\afterruleX	44, 396, 399
COMMAND\applabel	52, 247–249, 399, 405

COMMAND\appref	51–54, 252, 254, 403, 404
COMMAND\apprefprefixmore	52, 341
COMMAND\apprefprefixsingle	52, 341
COMMAND\apprefwithpage	52–54, 252, 254, 400, 403
COMMAND\arrangementX	34, 66, 189, 231, 341
COMMAND\arrangementX@normal	194
COMMAND\article	14
COMMAND\at@every@pend	135
COMMAND\autopar	17, 133, 136, 137, 204, 392, 394, 395, 399
COMMAND\ballast	65
COMMAND\ballast@count	141, 151
COMMAND\baselineskip	34, 162, 166
COMMAND\beforeXnotes	341
COMMAND\beforeXsymlinenum	341
COMMAND\beforeedchapter	10, 62, 319
COMMAND\beforeinsertingX	42
COMMAND\beforelemmaseparator	341
COMMAND\beforenotesX	43, 343, 395, 396, 399
COMMAND\beforenumberinfootnote	341
COMMAND\begin	295, 296
COMMAND\beginnumbering	16, 18, 19, 80, 83, 92, 96, 97, 112, 136, 210, 287, 393, 396, 400, 401
COMMAND\bf	393
COMMAND\bfseries	40, 393
COMMAND\bhookXnote	342
COMMAND\bhookgroupX	43, 403
COMMAND\bhooknoteX	41, 343, 401, 402
COMMAND\body	281
COMMAND\bodyfootmarkA	32
COMMAND\book	14
COMMAND\boxXendlinenum	342
COMMAND\boxXendlinenumalign	342
COMMAND\boxXendstartlinenum	342
COMMAND\boxendlinenum	342
COMMAND\boxlinefootnote	178
COMMAND\boxlinenum	342
COMMAND\boxlinenumalign	342
COMMAND\boxstartlinenum	342
COMMAND\boxsymlinenum	342
COMMAND\break	34, 164
COMMAND\brokenpenalty	151
COMMAND\centering	42
COMMAND\ch@ck@l@ck	391
COMMAND\ch@cksub@l@ck	147, 391
COMMAND\chapter	61, 320, 324, 396, 399, 401, 405
COMMAND\chaptermark	318
COMMAND\check@pb@in@verse	332
COMMAND\colalignX	42, 399
COMMAND\collect@body	296
COMMAND\color	405
COMMAND\colorbox	66

COMMAND\columns	45
COMMAND\columnwidth	162, 397
COMMAND\command names	233
COMMAND\copyright	119
COMMAND\correct@Xfootins@box	398
COMMAND\correct@footinsX@box	398
COMMAND\count	170
COMMAND\critex	392
COMMAND\critext	125, 336, 337, 340
COMMAND\csize	71, 128
COMMAND\ctab	311, 312, 316
COMMAND\ctabtext	316
COMMAND\dccl	305
COMMAND\def	68
COMMAND\detokenize	128
COMMAND\dimen	170
COMMAND\dimexpr	44
COMMAND\discretionary	163
COMMAND\displaywidowpenalty	151
COMMAND\do@actions	141–143, 391
COMMAND\do@actions@fixedcode	391
COMMAND\do@actions@next	142, 143
COMMAND\do@ballast	141, 142, 151
COMMAND\do@feetX	401
COMMAND\do@insidelinehook	394
COMMAND\do@line	93, 117, 134, 137, 140, 141, 150, 151, 280, 391, 392, 394, 396
COMMAND\do@linehook	391
COMMAND\do@lockoff	94
COMMAND\do@lockon	94
COMMAND\dodoreintrafeet	390
COMMAND\doendnotes	25, 214, 343, 400
COMMAND\doendnotesbysection	25, 214, 228, 400
COMMAND\doinsidelinehook	22, 397
COMMAND\dolinehook	22, 397
COMMAND\doreintrafeeti	401
COMMAND\doreintrafeetii	401
COMMAND\doxtrafeet	239, 390
COMMAND\doxtrafeeti	401
COMMAND\doxtrafeetii	401
COMMAND\dummy@ref	118
COMMAND\edaftertab	61, 311, 312
COMMAND\edatleft	60, 309
COMMAND\edatright	60, 61, 309
COMMAND\edbforetab	61, 311
COMMAND\edfilldimen	310
COMMAND\edfont@info	124
COMMAND\edgls	58, 271
COMMAND\edgls...	404
COMMAND\edindex	56–58, 270, 271, 274, 276, 300, 394, 397, 398, 401, 402
COMMAND\edindexlab	57

- COMMAND\edlabel 50–52, 54, 119, 244, 246, 247, 249, 250, 257, 271, 300, 332, 390, 393–395, 398, 403
- COMMAND\edlabelE . . . . . 52, 249
- COMMAND\edlabelS . . . . . 52, 249
- COMMAND\edlabelSE . . . . . 52
- COMMAND\edlineref . . . . . 50, 244, 342, 398, 400, 403
- COMMAND\edmakelabel . . . . . 51, 52, 257
- COMMAND\edpageref . . . . . 50, 244, 249, 257
- COMMAND\edrowfill . . . . . 311
- COMMAND\edtabcolsep . . . . . 304
- COMMAND\edtext . . . . . 6, 23, 24, 26–29, 45, 50–52, 56, 59, 66, 93, 108–110, 113, 117–125,  
127–129, 131, 247, 248, 251, 300, 301, 320, 332, 336, 337, 340, 390, 392, 394, 396–400, 405
- COMMAND\edtext@level . . . . . 400
- COMMAND\edtextlater . . . . . 111
- COMMAND\edvertdots . . . . . 61, 310
- COMMAND\edvertline . . . . . 61, 310
- COMMAND\elechapter . . . . . 62
- COMMAND\eled@sectioning@out . . . . . 325
- COMMAND\eledchapter . . . . . 62, 340, 397, 401
- COMMAND\eledchapter\* . . . . . 62
- COMMAND\eledmac@error . . . . . 390
- COMMAND\eledsection . . . . . 6, 15, 62, 118, 139, 319, 340, 399
- COMMAND\eledsection\* . . . . . 62
- COMMAND\eledsubsection . . . . . 62, 340
- COMMAND\eledsubsection\* . . . . . 62
- COMMAND\eledsubsubsection . . . . . 62, 340
- COMMAND\eledsubsubsection\* . . . . . 62
- COMMAND\eledxxx . . . . . 10, 62, 325, 396
- COMMAND\eledxxxx . . . . . 318
- COMMAND\elesection . . . . . 325
- COMMAND\else . . . . . 270, 319
- COMMAND\empty . . . . . 79, 145, 146, 244
- COMMAND\end . . . . . 295, 296
- COMMAND\end@lemmas . . . . . 118
- COMMAND\endashchar . . . . . 45, 174
- COMMAND\endgraf . . . . . 134, 166, 204
- COMMAND\endlock . . . . . 21, 94, 116, 285
- COMMAND\endminipage . . . . . 266, 267, 390, 401
- COMMAND\endmsdata . . . . . 31
- COMMAND\endnotes . . . . . 399, 403
- COMMAND\endnumbering . . . . . 16, 19, 80, 82, 83, 391, 400
- COMMAND\endprint . . . . . 210, 213, 228, 339
- COMMAND\endstanzaextra . . . . . 341
- COMMAND\endsub . . . . . 21, 94, 114
- COMMAND\endverse . . . . . 343
- COMMAND\everypar . . . . . 136
- COMMAND\extensionchars . . . . . 64, 80
- COMMAND\externaldocument . . . . . 54, 257
- COMMAND\f@x@l@cks . . . . . 391
- COMMAND\falseverse . . . . . 340, 394, 396
- COMMAND\fi . . . . . 319

COMMAND\firstlinenum	19, 144, 392
COMMAND\firstsublinenum	19, 392
COMMAND\fix@page	99, 101, 391
COMMAND\flag@end	113, 124, 396
COMMAND\flag@end@later	114
COMMAND\flag@start	113, 124, 396, 397
COMMAND\flag@start@later	114
COMMAND\flagstanza	49
COMMAND\floatingpenalty	156, 398
COMMAND\flush@notes	151, 152
COMMAND\fnpos	206, 395
COMMAND\footfmt	155, 158
COMMAND\footfmt...	189
COMMAND\footfootmarkA	32
COMMAND\footfudgefactor	164
COMMAND\footfudgefiddle	65, 162, 390
COMMAND\footgroup	155
COMMAND\footins	159
COMMAND\footnormal	232, 341, 390
COMMAND\footnormalX	341
COMMAND\footnote	32, 65, 185–187, 338, 391
COMMAND\footnote@lang	175
COMMAND\footnoteA	16, 32
COMMAND\footnoteB	16
COMMAND\footnoteC	23
COMMAND\footnoteE	32
COMMAND\footnoteX	8, 224, 226, 405
COMMAND\footnoteX@reading	226
COMMAND\footnoteXmk	238
COMMAND\footnote⟨X⟩	119
COMMAND\footnotelang@lua	154
COMMAND\footnotelang@poly	155
COMMAND\footnoteoption@	154, 402
COMMAND\footnoterule	170
COMMAND\footnotesize	40
COMMAND\footparagraph	162, 232, 341, 396
COMMAND\footparagraphX	199, 341, 396
COMMAND\footplitskips	391, 398
COMMAND\footstart	155, 159, 170
COMMAND\footstrut	166
COMMAND\footthreecol	341
COMMAND\footthreecolX	341, 400
COMMAND\foottwocol	341
COMMAND\foottwocolX	341, 400
COMMAND\foreignlanguage	41
COMMAND\fullstop	45, 344
COMMAND\get@edindex@hyperref	275
COMMAND\get@edindex@ledinnote@command	272
COMMAND\get@fnmark	187
COMMAND\get@index@command	395

COMMAND\get@linelistfile	391
COMMAND\get@thisfootnote	193
COMMAND\getline@num	141, 142
COMMAND\gl@p	85
COMMAND\global	99
COMMAND\globaldefs	99
COMMAND\gls	58, 278
COMMAND\hangindentX	41, 399, 402
COMMAND\hangingsymbol	341, 392
COMMAND\hbox	163, 164
COMMAND\hfill	395
COMMAND\hidenumbering	22, 107, 399
COMMAND\hidenumberingonleftpage	22, 107, 405
COMMAND\hidenumberingonrightpage	22, 107, 405
COMMAND\hline	58
COMMAND\hrulefill	311
COMMAND\hsize	34, 159, 162–164, 170, 173, 205, 391, 397
COMMAND\hsizeX	344, 403, 404
COMMAND\hsizethreecol	342
COMMAND\hsizethreecolX	42, 44
COMMAND\hsizetwocol	342
COMMAND\hsizetwocolX	42, 44
COMMAND\hyperlinkR	275
COMMAND\hyperlinkformat	275
COMMAND\hyperlinkformatR	275
COMMAND\if@RTL	72
COMMAND\if@edtext@	397, 400
COMMAND\if@eled@sectioning	325
COMMAND\if@firstlineofpage	72
COMMAND\if@firstlineofpageR	72
COMMAND\if@msd@options@fullpage	294
COMMAND\if@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspage	291
COMMAND\if@nobreak	135
COMMAND\if@noneed@Footnote	113
COMMAND\ifXnote@	79
COMMAND\ifbypage@	85
COMMAND\ifbypage@R	85
COMMAND\ifbypstart@	85
COMMAND\ifbypstart@R	85
COMMAND\iffirst@linenum@out@	111, 112
COMMAND\ifindtl@innote	80
COMMAND\ifindtl@notenumber	80
COMMAND\ifinserthangingsymbol	280
COMMAND\ifinstanza	280
COMMAND\ifstwofollowinglines	182
COMMAND\ifl@d@Xmorethantwolines	179, 398
COMMAND\ifl@d@Xtwolines	179
COMMAND\ifl@d@dash	179
COMMAND\ifl@d@elin	179
COMMAND\ifl@d@esl	179

COMMAND\ifl@d@pnum	179
COMMAND\ifl@d@ssub	179
COMMAND\ifl@dend@X	226
COMMAND\ifl@dmemoir	390
COMMAND\ifl@dpaging	397
COMMAND\ifl@dpairing	79, 392
COMMAND\ifl@dprintingpages	398
COMMAND\ifl@dskipnumber	145
COMMAND\ifl@dstartendok	310
COMMAND\ifl@imakeidx	72
COMMAND\ifledRcol	79, 392
COMMAND\ifledRcol@	79, 396
COMMAND\iflemmacommand@	397
COMMAND\ifnoend@	215
COMMAND\ifnoledgroup@	270
COMMAND\ifnoteschanged@	95
COMMAND\ifnumberedpar@	132
COMMAND\ifnumbering	80, 83
COMMAND\ifnumberingR	79, 392
COMMAND\ifnumberline	123, 145
COMMAND\ifpst@rted	392
COMMAND\ifpst@rtedL	81
COMMAND\ifseriesbefore	230
COMMAND\ifstopmsdata@inserted@	287
COMMAND\ifsublines@	92, 104
COMMAND\iftrue	400
COMMAND\ifvmode	246
COMMAND\ifxxx	319
COMMAND\ignorespaces	121
COMMAND\imki@wrindexentry	72
COMMAND\immediate	111, 112, 209
COMMAND\indent	18, 136, 343
COMMAND\index	277, 278
COMMAND\indtl@wrindexentry	72
COMMAND\initnumbering@quote	317, 401
COMMAND\initnumbering@reg	391
COMMAND\initnumbering@sectcmd	401
COMMAND\inplaceoflemmaseparator	342
COMMAND\inplaceofnumber	342
COMMAND\insert	123, 149, 155, 158, 189
COMMAND\insert@Xtxtbeforenotes	153
COMMAND\insert@count	108, 113, 121
COMMAND\insert@countR	121
COMMAND\insert@msdata	288, 294
COMMAND\inserthangingsymbol	395
COMMAND\insertlines@list	93, 108, 109
COMMAND\insertparafootsepX	203
COMMAND\inserts@list	117, 133, 150, 163
COMMAND\interAfootnotelinepenalty	392
COMMAND\interfootnotelinepenalty	392

COMMAND\interlinepenalty	156
COMMAND\interparanoteglue	340
COMMAND\justifying	42
COMMAND\l@advance@parledegroupp@beforenormalnotes	401
COMMAND\l@d@@wrindexhyp	397
COMMAND\l@d@add	126
COMMAND\l@d@end	210, 226
COMMAND\l@d@nums	121, 124–126, 179
COMMAND\l@d@section	210
COMMAND\l@d@set	103, 115
COMMAND\l@dampcount	301
COMMAND\l@dbfnote	187, 391
COMMAND\l@dcheckstartend	310
COMMAND\l@dchset@num	103
COMMAND\l@dcolcount	301, 303
COMMAND\l@dcollect@@body	296
COMMAND\l@dcollect@body	295
COMMAND\l@dcsnote	396
COMMAND\l@dcsnotetext	140, 262
COMMAND\l@dcsnotetext@l	140, 262
COMMAND\l@dcsnotetext@r	140, 262
COMMAND\l@ddodoreinxtrafeet	240, 390
COMMAND\l@ddoxtrafeet	240, 390
COMMAND\l@demptyd@ta	392
COMMAND\l@dend@close	209
COMMAND\l@dend@open	209
COMMAND\l@dend@stuff	210
COMMAND\l@denvbody	295
COMMAND\l@dfeetbeginmini	390
COMMAND\l@dfeetendmini	390
COMMAND\l@dgetline@margin	392
COMMAND\l@dgetlock@disp	392
COMMAND\l@dgetref@num	250, 251
COMMAND\l@dgetsidenote@margin	258, 392
COMMAND\l@dgobbeloptarg	397
COMMAND\l@dgobblearg	397
COMMAND\l@dgobbleoptarg	300
COMMAND\l@dlabel@parse	250, 251
COMMAND\l@dld@ta	144, 146
COMMAND\l@dlp@rbox	263
COMMAND\l@dlsn@te	392
COMMAND\l@dlsnote	396
COMMAND\l@dmake@labels	246, 247, 257
COMMAND\l@dmake@labelsR	257
COMMAND\l@dnumpstartsL	81, 392
COMMAND\l@dp@rsefootspec	180
COMMAND\l@dpush@begins	296
COMMAND\l@drd@ta	144, 146
COMMAND\l@dref@undefined	250
COMMAND\l@drsn@te	392



COMMAND\l@drsnote	396
COMMAND\l@dtabaddcols	310
COMMAND\l@dtabnoexpands	390
COMMAND\l@dumboxmpfoot	401
COMMAND\l@dunboxmpfoot	392
COMMAND\l@dzeropenalties	392, 397
COMMAND\l@pb	331
COMMAND\l@prev@nopb	330
COMMAND\l@prev@pb	330
COMMAND\l@reg	338
COMMAND\label	18, 52, 54, 57, 245, 251
COMMAND\label@refs	244
COMMAND\labelstarttrue	18, 393
COMMAND\labelref@list	244, 247
COMMAND\language	163
COMMAND\last@page@num	391
COMMAND\lastbox	136
COMMAND\lastskip	114
COMMAND\leavevmode	18, 136
COMMAND\led@check@nopb	331
COMMAND\led@check@pb	331
COMMAND\led@nopb	330, 332
COMMAND\led@nopbnum	330
COMMAND\led@pb	330, 332
COMMAND\led@pb@macro	331
COMMAND\led@pbnum	330
COMMAND\led@reinit@index@fornote	278
COMMAND\led@set@index@fornote	277
COMMAND\ledRflag	275
COMMAND\ledchapter	340, 394
COMMAND\ledfootinsdim	341
COMMAND\ledinnernote	54, 260, 396, 405
COMMAND\ledinnote	273, 339, 400
COMMAND\ledinnotemark	56, 339, 399
COMMAND\ledleftnote	55, 260
COMMAND\ledlinenum	91, 392
COMMAND\ledllfill	141
COMMAND\ledlsnotefontsetup	405
COMMAND\ledlsnotesep	55
COMMAND\ledlsnotewidth	55
COMMAND\lednopb	63, 330
COMMAND\lednopbinverse	331
COMMAND\lednopbinversetrue	48, 63
COMMAND\lednopbnum	330
COMMAND\ledouternote	54, 260, 396, 405
COMMAND\ledpb	63, 330, 340
COMMAND\ledpbnum	330
COMMAND\ledpbsetting	63, 331, 402
COMMAND\ledrightnote	55, 260
COMMAND\ledrsnotefontsetup	405

COMMAND\ledrsnotesep	55
COMMAND\ledrsnotewidth	55
COMMAND\ledsection	340
COMMAND\ledsectnomark	318
COMMAND\ledsectnotoc	318
COMMAND\ledsetnormalparstuff	339, 340, 399
COMMAND\ledsetnormalparstuff@common	204
COMMAND\ledsetnormalparstuffX	339, 340, 399
COMMAND\ledsidenote	55, 260, 262
COMMAND\ledsubsection	340
COMMAND\ledsubsubsection	340
COMMAND\ledxxx	396
COMMAND\left	60
COMMAND\leftctab	311
COMMAND\leftheadline	91
COMMAND\leftlinenum	20, 90, 390, 392
COMMAND\leftltab	311
COMMAND\leftnoteupfalse	55
COMMAND\leftpstartnum	148
COMMAND\leftrtab	311
COMMAND\leftsidenote	262
COMMAND\leftskip	159, 162, 164
COMMAND\lemma	3, 24, 26–29, 117, 120–122, 124, 125, 127, 336, 392, 393, 400, 401, 403
COMMAND\lemmaseparator	342
COMMAND\let	27, 46, 119, 123, 226, 285, 390
COMMAND\letboxXendendlinenum	342
COMMAND\line	168, 171
COMMAND\line@list	93, 109, 124
COMMAND\line@list@stuff	80, 96, 97, 112, 390, 392
COMMAND\line@list@version	99
COMMAND\line@margin	87, 146, 258
COMMAND\line@num	92, 94, 144, 390
COMMAND\line@set	125, 126
COMMAND\lineation	20, 86
COMMAND\linebreak	34
COMMAND\linenum	24, 26, 27, 51, 52, 117, 125, 249, 251, 257, 336, 404
COMMAND\linenum@out	111, 244, 247
COMMAND\linenumberlist	19, 20, 79, 145, 146, 390
COMMAND\linenumberstyle	22, 90, 390
COMMAND\linenumincrement	19, 392
COMMAND\linenummargin	20, 87, 258
COMMAND\linenumr@p	90, 390, 392
COMMAND\linenumrep	90, 392
COMMAND\linenumsep	20, 55, 91, 259
COMMAND\linerangesep@	238
COMMAND\lineref	244, 249, 257, 342, 398
COMMAND\list@clear	84
COMMAND\list@clearing@reg	392
COMMAND\list@create	84
COMMAND\lock@disp	89

COMMAND\lock@off	106
COMMAND\lock@on	105
COMMAND\lockdisp	21, 89
COMMAND\loop	152, 281
COMMAND\ltab	311, 312, 316
COMMAND\ltabtext	316
COMMAND\m@mmf@prepare	186
COMMAND\makeatletter	140
COMMAND\makehboxoffhboxes	165, 166
COMMAND\makeindex	56, 274
COMMAND\makelabel	257
COMMAND\managestanza@modulo	282
COMMAND\marginpar	54, 65, 258, 391
COMMAND\marginparwidth	55, 259
COMMAND\markboth	140
COMMAND\mathchardef	281
COMMAND\maxXnotes	342
COMMAND\maxhnotesX	44, 66, 341, 395, 396, 398–400
COMMAND\maxlinesinpar@list	96
COMMAND\measurebody	313
COMMAND\measuretbody	313
COMMAND\memorybreak	19
COMMAND\morenoexpands	66, 117, 119
COMMAND\morethantwolines	342
COMMAND\mpfnpos	206, 395
COMMAND\mpnormalfootgroup	391
COMMAND\mpnormalvfootnote	391
COMMAND\msdata	31, 287, 288
COMMAND\multfootsep	32, 185
COMMAND\multiplefootnotemarker	185
COMMAND\musixtex	396
COMMAND\n@num	392, 399
COMMAND\n@num@ref	399
COMMAND\new@line	112, 391
COMMAND\new@series	119
COMMAND\newcommand	27, 68, 185, 247
COMMAND\newcommandx	27
COMMAND\newhookarg@specific	238
COMMAND\newhookcommand@series	233, 234, 399
COMMAND\newhookcommand@series@reload	234
COMMAND\newhookcommand@toggle@reload	233, 397
COMMAND\newhooktoggle@series	233, 399
COMMAND\newhooktoggle@specific	238
COMMAND\newif	399
COMMAND\newline	34
COMMAND\newlinechar	227
COMMAND\newseries	33, 337, 340, 341
COMMAND\newseries@	218, 219, 231
COMMAND\newverse	48, 49, 340, 396
COMMAND\next	281

COMMAND\next@action	97
COMMAND\next@actionline	97
COMMAND\next@insert	150
COMMAND\nl@regR	99
COMMAND\no@expands	66, 119, 124, 226, 390
COMMAND\noXlemmaseparator	342
COMMAND\nobreak	179
COMMAND\nocritical	219
COMMAND\noeledsec	62, 340
COMMAND\noendnotes	340
COMMAND\noexpand	338
COMMAND\nofamiliar	236
COMMAND\noindent	18, 136, 402
COMMAND\noindentX	402
COMMAND\nomk@	238
COMMAND\nonbreakableafternumber	342
COMMAND\nonumberinfootnote	342
COMMAND\normal@footnotemarkX	189
COMMAND\normal@page@break	330
COMMAND\normal@pars	204
COMMAND\normalbfnoteX	392
COMMAND\normalbodyfootmarkX	189
COMMAND\normalfootfmt	46, 159, 166, 175, 210, 404
COMMAND\normalfootfmtX	190, 191
COMMAND\normalfootfootmarkX	191
COMMAND\normalfootgroup	160
COMMAND\normalfootgroupX	191
COMMAND\normalfootnoterule	156
COMMAND\normalfootstart	159, 162
COMMAND\normalfootstartX	191
COMMAND\normalvfootnote	158
COMMAND\normalvfootnoteX	189
COMMAND\notbool	319
COMMAND\notfontsetup	341
COMMAND\notfontsizeX	40, 341
COMMAND\notenumfont	341
COMMAND\notenumfontX	40, 341
COMMAND\notesXwidthliketwocolumns	342
COMMAND\noteswidthliketwocolumnsX	45, 342, 397, 399
COMMAND\num@lines	132, 151
COMMAND\numberlinefalse	19
COMMAND\numberlinetrue	19
COMMAND\numberonlyfirstinline	231, 342
COMMAND\numberonlyfirstintwolines	342
COMMAND\numberpstartfalse	18
COMMAND\numberpstarttrue	18, 36, 339, 393, 401
COMMAND\numberstanza	36
COMMAND\numberstanzafalse	48
COMMAND\numberstanzatrue	48
COMMAND\numlabfont	20, 45, 91

COMMAND\one@line	132
COMMAND\onehalfspacing	402
COMMAND\onlyXpstart	342
COMMAND\onlysideX	225
COMMAND\page@action	94, 104
COMMAND\page@start	94, 392
COMMAND\pagecontents	94
COMMAND\pagelinesep	56
COMMAND\pageno	239
COMMAND\pageparbreak	340
COMMAND\pageref	52, 249
COMMAND\par	26, 34, 136, 204
COMMAND\par@line	132, 151
COMMAND\para@footgroup	163
COMMAND\para@footgroupX	202
COMMAND\para@footsetup	162, 390
COMMAND\para@footsetupX	200, 390, 397
COMMAND\para@vfootnoteX	201
COMMAND\parafootfmt	165, 166, 404
COMMAND\parafootfmtX	202
COMMAND\parafootftm	168
COMMAND\parafootftmX	203
COMMAND\parafootftmsepp	341
COMMAND\parafootsep	342, 395, 400
COMMAND\parafootsepX	43, 96, 341, 342, 405
COMMAND\parafootstart	162
COMMAND\parafootstartX	200
COMMAND\paravfootnote	163, 166
COMMAND\parfillskip	165
COMMAND\parindent	402
COMMAND\parindentX	41, 344, 402, 404
COMMAND\parshape	65
COMMAND\parskip	136
COMMAND\pausenumbering	19, 83, 97, 98, 137, 395, 397, 404
COMMAND\penalty	165
COMMAND\pend	2, 6, 17–20, 22, 62, 63, 115, 117, 120, 126, 132–137, 148, 149, 338, 395, 396, 405
COMMAND\preXnotes	399, 405
COMMAND\prenotesX	44, 209, 399
COMMAND\prepare@Xprenotes	207
COMMAND\prev@nopb	330
COMMAND\prev@pb	330
COMMAND\prevlineX	95
COMMAND\prevpageX@num	96
COMMAND\print@Xfootnoterule	399
COMMAND\print@Xnotes	240, 241
COMMAND\print@Xnotes@forpages	398
COMMAND\print@eledsection	139
COMMAND\print@footnoteXrule	399
COMMAND\print@leftmargin@eledsection	319
COMMAND\print@lemma	175

COMMAND\print@line	138
COMMAND\print@notesX@forpages	398
COMMAND\print@rightmargin@eledsection	319
COMMAND\printendlines	215, 254, 344, 390, 392
COMMAND\printlinefootnote	176, 178, 398
COMMAND\printlinefootnotearea	178, 179, 398
COMMAND\printlinefootnotenumbers	176
COMMAND\printlines	159, 174, 179, 180, 215, 254, 344, 390, 392, 398, 403
COMMAND\printnpnum	339, 344
COMMAND\printpstart	175
COMMAND\protect	119, 338
COMMAND\providecommand	185, 390
COMMAND\pstart	2, 6, 17–20, 22, 61–63, 103, 115, 120, 126, 132–136, 139, 149, 324, 338, 392–394, 396, 397, 399–401, 404, 405
COMMAND\pstartinfootnote	342
COMMAND\pstartinfootnoteeverytime	342
COMMAND\pstartnum	148
COMMAND\pstartref	50, 244, 250, 395
COMMAND\pstarts	393
COMMAND\raggedX	43
COMMAND\raggedleft	42
COMMAND\raggedright	42
COMMAND\raw@text	132, 133
COMMAND\rbracket	39, 45
COMMAND\read@linelist	96, 98
COMMAND\ref	52, 54, 57
COMMAND\refformated@	254
COMMAND\refformatedwithpage	254
COMMAND\relax	18, 103, 123, 142, 150, 285, 300, 338
COMMAND\renewcommand	65, 341, 344
COMMAND\reset@msd@options@iffullpage	294
COMMAND\resetprevline@	95
COMMAND\resetprevpage@	96
COMMAND\resumenumbering	19, 80, 83, 97, 98, 137, 392, 396, 397, 404
COMMAND\right	60
COMMAND\rightctab	312
COMMAND\rightlinenum	20, 90, 390, 392
COMMAND\rightltab	312
COMMAND\rightnoteupfalse	55
COMMAND\rightrtab	312
COMMAND\rightrightnote	262
COMMAND\rightrightskip	159, 162, 164, 165
COMMAND\rightrightstartnum	148
COMMAND\rigidbalance	168, 170, 171, 344, 403
COMMAND\rigidbalanceX	168, 344, 403
COMMAND\robustify	35
COMMAND\roman	305, 403
COMMAND\rtab	311–313, 316
COMMAND\rtabtext	313, 316
COMMAND\sameword	27–29, 111, 126–128, 131, 398, 400, 402, 405

COMMAND\sameword@inedtext	127, 128
COMMAND\saweword	127
COMMAND\scriptsize	91
COMMAND\section	61, 392
COMMAND\section@num	80
COMMAND\sectionmark	318
COMMAND\select@lemmafont	45, 46, 153
COMMAND\series	218, 219
COMMAND\series@	219
COMMAND\seriesatbegin	33, 230, 399
COMMAND\seriesatend	33, 230, 399
COMMAND\set@Xtxtbeforenotes	152
COMMAND\set@line	124
COMMAND\set@line@action	94, 104
COMMAND\setSErefonlypageprefixmore	53, 254, 404
COMMAND\setSErefonlypageprefixsingle	53, 254, 404
COMMAND\setSErefprefixmore	53
COMMAND\setSErefprefixsingle	53
COMMAND\setapprefprefixmore	53, 341
COMMAND\setapprefprefixsingle	53, 341, 403
COMMAND\setcommand@series	232
COMMAND\sethangingsymbol	48, 280, 341, 402
COMMAND\sethangingsymbol	46
COMMAND\setistwofollowinglines	182
COMMAND\setl@dlprbox	263
COMMAND\setline	21, 22, 95, 99, 103, 115, 119, 134, 401
COMMAND\setlinenum	22, 99, 103, 115, 390
COMMAND\setmsdatalabel	32
COMMAND\setmsdataseries	32
COMMAND\setprintendlines	215, 216, 392
COMMAND\setprintlines	180, 182, 215, 392
COMMAND\setsidenotesep	55
COMMAND\setsidenotsep	341
COMMAND\setstanzaindent	282
COMMAND\setstanzaindents	47, 282, 338
COMMAND\setstanzapenalties	282
COMMAND\setstanzavalues	282
COMMAND\settoggle@series	231, 393, 397
COMMAND\showlemma	118, 390, 391
COMMAND\showwordrank	30, 128
COMMAND\sidenote@margin	391
COMMAND\sidenotemargin	55, 391, 396
COMMAND\sidenotesep	341
COMMAND\sidepstartnumtrue	18
COMMAND\skip	159
COMMAND\skipnumbering	22, 106, 107, 116, 392, 399, 400
COMMAND\skipnumbering@reg	399
COMMAND\small	40
COMMAND\special	12
COMMAND\splitmaxdepth	156, 170

COMMAND\splitoff	168
COMMAND\splittopskip	156, 170, 171
COMMAND\stanza	21, 22, 48, 49, 285, 341, 343, 402
COMMAND\stanza@hang	284
COMMAND\stanza@line	284
COMMAND\stanzaindent	47, 282, 398
COMMAND\stanzaindent*	47
COMMAND\stanzaindentbase	281
COMMAND\stanzanumwrapper	49
COMMAND\startlock	21, 94, 116, 285
COMMAND\startstanzahook	341
COMMAND\startsub	21, 94, 114
COMMAND\stopmsd	289
COMMAND\stopmsdata	31, 287
COMMAND\strip@pt	162
COMMAND\strutbox	170
COMMAND\sub@action	94, 104
COMMAND\sub@lock	93
COMMAND\sub@off	102, 247
COMMAND\sub@on	102, 247
COMMAND\subline@num	92, 94
COMMAND\sublinenum@rep	390
COMMAND\sublinenumberstyle	22, 90, 390
COMMAND\sublinenumincrement	19
COMMAND\sublinenumr@p	90, 390, 392
COMMAND\sublinenumrep	90, 392
COMMAND\sublineref	50, 244, 250
COMMAND\subsectionmark	318
COMMAND\sw@inthisedtext	121
COMMAND\sw@list@inedtext	124, 131
COMMAND\symlinenum	342
COMMAND\symplinenum	341
COMMAND\sza@penalty	284
COMMAND>tag	398
COMMAND\text	336
COMMAND\text<language>	41
COMMAND\textcolor	66
COMMAND\textheight	66
COMMAND\the	390
COMMAND\thefootnoteA	32
COMMAND\thefootnoteX	394
COMMAND\thelabidx	276
COMMAND\thepage	99
COMMAND\thepstart	18
COMMAND\thepstartL	393
COMMAND\thepstartR	393
COMMAND\thestanza	48
COMMAND>this@line@list@version	111
COMMAND>thisfootnote	193
COMMAND\threecolfootfmt	171, 404



COMMAND\threecolfootfmtX	198
COMMAND\threecolfootgroup	170
COMMAND\threecolfootgroupX	198
COMMAND\threecolfootsetup	170
COMMAND\threecolfootsetupX	197
COMMAND\threecolvfootnote	170
COMMAND\threecolvfootnoteX	198
COMMAND\toendnotes	25, 213, 405
COMMAND\twocolfootfmt	404
COMMAND\twocolfootfmtX	196
COMMAND\twocolfootgroupX	196
COMMAND\twocolfootsetupX	195
COMMAND\twocolvfootnoteX	196
COMMAND\twolines	231, 342
COMMAND\twolines@A	231
COMMAND\twolines@B	231
COMMAND\twolines@C	231
COMMAND\twolinesbutnotmore	342
COMMAND\twolinesonlyinsamepage	342
COMMAND\txtbeforeXnotes	342
COMMAND\unhbox	163
COMMAND\unpenalty	165, 166
COMMAND\unskip	165
COMMAND\unvxh	165, 343
COMMAND\unvxhX	343
COMMAND\upbracefill	311
COMMAND\usingcritext	337, 340
COMMAND\usingdtext	337, 340
COMMAND\vAfootnote	156
COMMAND\variant	27
COMMAND\ vbox	134, 136, 164, 168, 206
COMMAND\vfootnote	155, 159, 163, 170
COMMAND\vl@dbfnote	187, 391
COMMAND\vl@disnote	262
COMMAND\vl@dlsnote	262
COMMAND\vl@dosnote	262
COMMAND\vl@drsnote	262
COMMAND\vnumfootnoteX	392
COMMAND\vsizer	44, 66
COMMAND\vsplit	151
COMMAND\waklam	311
COMMAND\waklamec	311
COMMAND\wapunktel	311
COMMAND\wastricht	311
COMMAND\widthX	44, 344, 404
COMMAND\wrap@edcrossref	249, 397
COMMAND\wrapcontentX	41, 405
COMMAND\wrapped@bodyfootmarkX	204
COMMAND\wrapped@footfootmarkX	203
COMMAND\x...	51

COMMAND\edef	84, 285
COMMAND\xflagref	51, 250, 344, 403
COMMAND\xleft@appenditem	85, 118
COMMAND\xlineref	51, 344, 403
COMMAND\xpageref	51
COMMAND\xpstartref	51, 395
COMMAND\xr	54
COMMAND\xright@appenditem	84, 85
COMMAND\xsublineref	51
COMMAND\xxref	51, 251, 257, 395, 398, 405
COMMAND\zz@@@	390
ENVIRONMENTastanza	403
ENVIRONMENTedarrayc	316
ENVIRONMENTedarrayl	316
ENVIRONMENTedarrayr	316
ENVIRONMENTedtabularc	316
ENVIRONMENTedtabularl	316
ENVIRONMENTedtabularr	316
ENVIRONMENTledgroup	71, 268, 344, 403
ENVIRONMENTledgroupsized	269
PACKAGE(r)(e)ledmac	33
PACKAGEEledmac	11, 68, 94, 273, 339, 340, 398, 399
PACKAGEEledpar	399
PACKAGEEtoolbox	71
PACKAGEParallel	346
PACKAGEREledmac	343, 344
PACKAGEamsgen	295
PACKAGEamsmath	294, 295
PACKAGEbabel	41, 67, 305, 403
PACKAGEbiblatex	64
PACKAGEbidi	41, 42, 72, 402
PACKAGEccaption	79
PACKAGEcolor	66
PACKAGEedmac	1, 6, 10, 12, 13, 68, 179, 185, 245, 282, 336, 346, 390
PACKAGEedstanza	1, 13, 280
PACKAGEeledmac	1, 10, 13–16, 57, 185, 270, 273, 298, 320, 333, 337, 339–341, 394, 396, 398
PACKAGEeledpar	79, 156, 318, 346, 392, 396–398
PACKAGEetex	402
PACKAGEetoolbox	84, 126, 219, 231, 239, 262, 319, 330
PACKAGEfloatrow	64, 344
PACKAGEfootmisc	32, 67, 185, 346
PACKAGEgeometry	14
PACKAGEglossaries	58, 278, 403
PACKAGEhandout	397
PACKAGEhyperlink	226
PACKAGEhyperref	51, 120, 203, 204, 245, 275, 323, 332, 395–397, 404
PACKAGEifluatex	71
PACKAGEifxetex	71
PACKAGEimakeidx	56, 65, 71, 72, 270, 273, 274, 340, 394–396, 398
PACKAGEindextols	277

PACKAGEindextool	340
PACKAGEindextools	56, 65, 72, 80, 270, 273, 274, 277, 340, 398, 403
PACKAGEinputenc	128
PACKAGEledarab	67
PACKAGEledmac	1, 10, 13, 14, 67, 84, 273, 336, 337, 340, 343
PACKAGEledpar	67
PACKAGEMemoir	71, 274, 340, 346, 397
PACKAGEMorewrites	65
PACKAGEMusixtex	396
PACKAGEperpage	403
PACKAGEpolyglossia	39, 67, 122, 155, 175, 403
PACKAGERagged2e	42, 71
PACKAGEreledmac	1, 2, 10–12, 14–16, 18, 19, 22–24, 26–28, 30, 32, 33, 35, 38, 41–46, 48, 49, 51, 52, 54, 56–58, 62–69, 85, 88, 93, 95, 98, 99, 101, 111, 119, 123, 126, 149, 157, 159, 164, 185, 210, 219, 223, 224, 231, 239, 249, 252, 257, 274, 291, 298, 318, 319, 331, 332, 340, 341, 343, 344, 401, 404
PACKAGEreledpar	1, 4, 6, 8, 15, 18, 45, 51, 53, 54, 63, 64, 67, 69, 79, 85, 96, 101, 121, 123, 157, 160, 205, 206, 219, 225, 238, 240, 241, 270, 280, 402, 403, 405
PACKAGESuffix	71
PACKETabmac	1, 13, 346
PACKAGEuninormalize	28
PACKAGExargs	27, 71
PACKAGExkeyval	69, 238
PACKAGEX	4, 54, 257, 404
PACKAGEXref	257
PACKAGEXstring	71, 275

## A

\absline@num	1
Abu Kamil Shuja' b. Aslam	13
\actionlines@list	1
\actions@list	1
\add@inserts	1
\add@inserts@next	1
\add@msdata	1
\add@msdata@firstlineofpage	1
\add@penalties	1
\addtol@denbody	1
Adelard II	13
\advancelabel@refs	1
\advanceline	1, 21
\advancepageno	1
\Aendnote	24
\affixline@num	1
\affixpstart@num	1
\affixside@note	1
\Afootnote	24
\afternoteX	43
\afterruleX	44
\ampersand	1, 49

<code>\applabel</code>	1, 52
<code>\appref</code>	1, 52
<code>\apprefwithpage</code>	1, 52
<code>\arrangementX</code>	1, 34
<code>\arrangementX@normal</code>	1
<code>\arrangementX@threecol</code>	1
<code>\arrangementX@twocol</code>	1
<code>\at@every@pend</code>	1
<code>\AtEveryPend</code>	1, 18
<code>\AtEveryPstart</code>	1, 18
<code>\AtEveryStanza</code>	1
<code>\AtEveryStopStanza</code>	1
<code>\autopar</code>	1, 17

**B**

<code>\ballast</code>	65
<code>\ballast@count</code>	1
Beeton, Barbara Ann Neuhaus Friend	18
<code>\beforeeledchapter</code>	1
<code>\beforeinsertingX</code>	42
<code>\beforenotesX</code>	43
<code>\beginnumbering</code>	1, 16
<code>\Bendnote</code>	24
<code>\Bfootnote</code>	24
<code>\bhookgroupX</code>	43
<code>\bhooknoteX</code>	41
<code>\bodyfootmarkA</code>	32
<code>\boxfootnotenumbers</code>	1
Bredon, Simon	13
Breger, Herbert	13, 298
Brey, Gerhard	13
Busard, Hubert L. L.	13
<code>\bypage@false</code>	1
<code>\bypage@true</code>	1
<code>\bypstart@false</code>	1
<code>\bypstart@true</code>	1

**C**

<code>\c@addcolcount</code>	1
<code>\c@ballast</code>	1
<code>\c@firstlinenum</code>	1
<code>\c@firstsublinenum</code>	1
<code>\c@labidx</code>	1
<code>\c@linenumincrement</code>	1
<code>\c@sublinenumincrement</code>	1
<code>\Cendnote</code>	24
<code>\Cfootnote</code>	24
<code>\ch@ck@l@ck</code>	1
<code>\ch@cksub@l@ck</code>	1
<code>\chapter</code>	1

<code>\check@pb@in@verse</code> .....	1
Chester, Robert of .....	13
Claassens, Geert H. M. ....	13
<code>\colalignX</code> .....	42
Copernicus, Nicolaus .....	13
<code>\critext</code> .....	336
<code>\ctab</code> .....	1
<code>\ctabtext</code> .....	1

## D

Dekker, Dirk-Jan .....	66
<code>\Dendnote</code> .....	24
<code>\Dfootnote</code> .....	24
<code>\disable@familiarnotes</code> .....	1
<code>\disable@notes</code> .....	1
<code>\disable@sidenotes</code> .....	1
<code>\disablel@dtabfeet</code> .....	1
<code>\do@actions</code> .....	1
<code>\do@actions@fixedcode</code> .....	1
<code>\do@actions@next</code> .....	1
<code>\do@ballast</code> .....	1
<code>\do@feetX</code> .....	1
<code>\do@insidelinehook</code> .....	1
<code>\do@line</code> .....	1
<code>\do@linehook</code> .....	1
<code>\do@lockoff</code> .....	1
<code>\do@lockoffL</code> .....	1
<code>\do@lockon</code> .....	1
<code>\do@lockonL</code> .....	1
<code>\doedindexlabel</code> .....	1
<code>\doendnotes</code> .....	1, 25
<code>\doendnotesbysection</code> .....	1, 25
<code>\doinsidelinehook</code> .....	1, 22
<code>\dolinehook</code> .....	1, 22
<code>\dosplits</code> .....	1
Downes, Michael .....	65, 163, 165
<code>\doxtrafeet</code> .....	1
<code>\dummy@edtext</code> .....	1
<code>\dummy@edtext@showlemma</code> .....	1
<code>\dummy@ref</code> .....	1

## E

<code>\edaftertab</code> .....	1, 61, 311
<code>edarrayc</code> (environment) .....	58
<code>edarrayl</code> (environment) .....	58
<code>edarrayr</code> (environment) .....	58
<code>\edatleft</code> .....	1, 60
<code>\edatright</code> .....	1, 60
<code>\edbeforetab</code> .....	1, 61, 311
<code>\edfilldimen</code> .....	1

<code>\edfont@info</code>	1
<code>\EDINDEX</code>	1
<code>\edindex</code>	1, 55
<code>\edindexlab</code>	1, 57
<code>\EDLABEL</code>	1
<code>\edlabel</code>	1, 50
<code>\edlabelE</code>	1, 52
<code>\edlabelS</code>	1, 52
<code>\edlabelSE</code>	1, 52
<code>\edlineref</code>	1, 50
<code>\edmakelabel</code>	1, 51
<code>\edpageref</code>	1, 50
<code>\edrowfill</code>	1, 59
<code>\EDTAB</code>	1
<code>\edtabcolsep</code>	1, 59
<code>\EDTABINDENT</code>	1
<code>\edtabindent</code>	1
<code>\EDTABtext</code>	1
<code>edtabularc (environment)</code>	58
<code>edtabularl (environment)</code>	58
<code>edtabularr (environment)</code>	58
<code>\EDTEXT</code>	1
<code>\edtext</code>	1, 23
<code>\edvertdots</code>	1, 61
<code>\edvertline</code>	1, 61
<code>\Eendnote</code>	24
<code>\Efootnote</code>	24
<code>\eled@chapter</code>	1
<code>\eled@section</code>	1
<code>\eled@sectioning@out</code>	1
<code>\eled@subsection</code>	1
<code>\eled@subsubsection</code>	1
<code>\eledchapter</code>	1
<code>\eledchapter*</code>	1
<code>\eledsection</code>	1
<code>\eledsection*</code>	1
<code>\eledsubsection</code>	1
<code>\eledsubsection*</code>	1
<code>\eledsubsubsection</code>	1
<code>\eledsubsubsection*</code>	1
<code>\enablel@dtabfeet</code>	1
<code>\end@lemmas</code>	1
<code>\endashchar</code>	1
<code>\endline@num</code>	1
<code>\endlock</code>	1, 21
<code>\endminipage</code>	1
<code>\endnumbering</code>	1, 16
<code>\endpage@num</code>	1
<code>\endprint</code>	1
<code>\endquotation</code>	1

<code>\endquote</code>	1
<code>\endsub</code>	1, 21
<code>\endsubline@num</code>	1
environments:	
<code>edarrayc</code>	58
<code>edarrayl</code>	58
<code>edarrayr</code>	58
<code>edtabularc</code>	58
<code>edtabularl</code>	58
<code>edtabularr</code>	58
<code>ledgroup</code>	49
<code>ledgroupsize</code>	49
<code>minipage</code>	49
<code>Euclid</code>	13
<code>\extensionchars</code>	1, 64

## F

<code>\f@x@l@cks</code>	1
Fairbairns, Robin	32
<code>\first@linenum@out@false</code>	1
<code>\first@linenum@out@true</code>	1
<code>\firstlinenum</code>	1, 19
<code>\firstseriesX@</code>	1
<code>\firstsublinenum</code>	1, 19
<code>\firstXseries@</code>	1
<code>\fix@page</code>	1
<code>\flag@end</code>	1
<code>\flag@end@later</code>	1
<code>\flag@start</code>	1
<code>\flag@start@later</code>	1
<code>\flagstanza</code>	1, 49
<code>\flush@notes</code>	1
<code>\fnpos</code>	1, 33
Folkerts, Menso	13
<code>\footfootmarkA</code>	32
<code>\footfudgefiddle</code>	1, 65
<code>\footnote</code>	1
<code>\footnoteA</code>	32
<code>\footnoteB</code>	32
<code>\footnoteC</code>	32
<code>\footnoteD</code>	32
<code>\footnoteE</code>	32
<code>\footnotelang@lua</code>	1
<code>\footnotelang@poly</code>	1
<code>\footnoteoptions@</code>	1
<code>\footsplitskips</code>	1
<code>\fullstop</code>	1

## G

Gädeke, Nora	13
--------------	----

<code>\get@edindex@hyperref</code> .....	1
<code>\get@edindex@ledinnote@command</code> .....	1
<code>\get@fnmark</code> .....	1
<code>\get@fnmarkX</code> .....	1
<code>\get@index@command</code> .....	1
<code>\get@linelistfile</code> .....	1
<code>\get@sw@txt</code> .....	1
<code>\get@thisfootnote</code> .....	1
<code>\get@thisfootnoteX</code> .....	1
<code>\getline@num</code> .....	1
<code>\gl@p</code> .....	1

## H

<code>\h@num</code> .....	1
<code>\hangindentX</code> .....	41
<code>\hidenumbering</code> .....	1, 22
<code>\hidenumberingonleftpage</code> .....	1, 22
<code>\hidenumberingonrightpage</code> .....	1
<code>\Hilfsbox</code> .....	1
<code>\hilfsbox</code> .....	1
<code>\hilfscount</code> .....	1
<code>\HILFSskip</code> .....	1
<code>\Hilfsskip</code> .....	1
<code>\hilfsskip</code> .....	1
<code>\hsizethreecolX</code> .....	42
<code>\hsizetwocolX</code> .....	42
<code>\Hy@raisedlink@left</code> .....	1
<code>\hyperlinkformat</code> .....	1
<code>\hyperlinkformatR</code> .....	1
<code>\hyperlinkR</code> .....	1

## I

<code>\if@addsw</code> .....	1
<code>\if@edindex@fornote@true</code> .....	1
<code>\if@edtext@secondarg@</code> .....	1
<code>\if@eled@sectioning</code> .....	1
<code>\if@firstlineofpage</code> .....	1
<code>\if@led@nofoot</code> .....	1
<code>\if@ledgroup</code> .....	1
<code>\if@lemmacommand@</code> .....	1
<code>\if@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspage</code> .....	1
<code>\if@noeled@sec</code> .....	1
<code>\if@noneed@Footnote</code> .....	1
<code>\if@RTL</code> .....	1
<code>\ifautopar@pause</code> .....	1
<code>\ifbypage@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifbypage@R</code> .....	1
<code>\ifbypstart@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifbypstart@R</code> .....	1
<code>\ifeledmaccompat@</code> .....	1



<code>\iffirst@linenum@out@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifindtl@innote</code> .....	1
<code>\ifindtl@notenumber</code> .....	1
<code>\ifinserthangingsymbol</code> .....	1
<code>\ifinstanza</code> .....	1
<code>\ifl@d@dash</code> .....	1
<code>\ifl@d@elin</code> .....	1
<code>\ifl@d@esl</code> .....	1
<code>\ifl@d@pnum</code> .....	1
<code>\ifl@d@ssub</code> .....	1
<code>\ifl@d@Xmorethantwoline</code> .....	1
<code>\ifl@d@Xtwoline</code> .....	1
<code>\ifl@dend@X</code> .....	1
<code>\ifl@dhidenumber</code> .....	1
<code>\ifl@dmemoir</code> .....	1
<code>\ifl@dpaging</code> .....	1
<code>\ifl@dpairing</code> .....	1
<code>\ifl@dprintingcolumns</code> .....	1
<code>\ifl@dprintingpages</code> .....	1
<code>\ifl@dskipnumber</code> .....	1
<code>\ifl@dskipversenumber</code> .....	1
<code>\ifl@dstartendok</code> .....	1
<code>\ifl@imakeidx</code> .....	1
<code>\ifl@indextools</code> .....	1
<code>\ifledfinal</code> .....	1, 64
<code>\ifledgroupnotesL@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifledgroupnotesR@</code> .....	1
<code>\iflednopbinverse</code> .....	1
<code>\ifledRcol</code> .....	1
<code>\ifledRcol@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifnocritical@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifnoend@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifnofamiliar@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifnoledgroup@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifnoquotation@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifnoteschanged@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifnumberedpar@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifnumbering</code> .....	1
<code>\ifnumberingR</code> .....	1
<code>\ifnumberline</code> .....	1
<code>\ifnumberstanza</code> .....	1
<code>\ifparapparatus@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifparledgroup</code> .....	1
<code>\ifpst@rtedL</code> .....	1
<code>\ifseriesbefore</code> .....	1
<code>\ifsidepstartnum</code> .....	1
<code>\ifstopmsdata@inserted@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifsublines@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifwidthliketwocolumns</code> .....	1
<code>\ifXendinsertsep@</code> .....	1

<code>\ifxindy@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifxindyhyperref@</code> .....	1
<code>\initnumbering@quote</code> .....	1
<code>\initnumbering@reg</code> .....	1
<code>\insert@count</code> .....	0, 1
<code>\insert@msdata</code> .....	1
<code>\insert@Xtxtbeforenotes</code> .....	1
<code>\inserthangingymbol</code> .....	1
<code>\insertlines@list</code> .....	1
<code>\insertparafootsepX</code> .....	1
<code>\inserts@list</code> .....	1

## J

Jayaditya .....	13
-----------------	----

## K

Kabelschacht, Alois .....	152
---------------------------	-----

## L

<code>\l@advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes</code> .....	1
<code>\l@d@add</code> .....	1
<code>\l@d@nums</code> .....	1
<code>\l@d@section</code> .....	1
<code>\l@d@set</code> .....	1
<code>\l@d@Xend</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dampcount</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dbfnote</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcheckcols</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcheckstartend</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dchset@num</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcolcount</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcollect@body</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcollect@body</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcolwidth</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcsnote</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcsnotetext</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcsnotetext@l</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcsnotetext@r</code> .....	1
<code>\l@ddodoreinextrafeet</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dedbeginmini</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dedendmini</code> .....	1
<code>\l@emptyd@ta</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dend@close</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dend@open</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dend@stuff</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dend@Xfalse</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dend@Xtrue</code> .....	1
<code>\l@denbody</code> .....	1
<code>\l@desnote</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dfambeginmini</code> .....	1

<code>\l@dfamendmini</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dfeetbeginmini</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dfeetendmini</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dgetline@margin</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dgetlock@disp</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dgetref@num</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dgetsidenote@margin</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dobblearg</code> .....	1
<code>\l@disnote</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dlabel@parse</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dld@ta</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dlp@rbox</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dlsn@te</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dlsnote</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dmake@labels</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dmodforedtext</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dnullfills</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dnumpstartsL</code> .....	1
<code>\l@doldold@footnotetext</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dp@rsefootspec</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dparsedendline</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dparsedendpage</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dparsedendsub</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dparsedstartline</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dparsedstartpage</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dparsedstartsub</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dpush@begins</code> .....	1
<code>\l@drd@ta</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dref@undefined</code> .....	1
<code>\l@drestorefills</code> .....	1
<code>\l@drestoreforedtext</code> .....	1
<code>\l@drp@rbox</code> .....	1
<code>\l@drsn@te</code> .....	1
<code>\l@drsnote</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dsetmaxcolwidth</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dskipnumberfalse</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dskipnumbertrue</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dtabaddcols</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dtabnoexpands</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dunboxmpfoot</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dunhbox@line</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dzeropenalties</code> .....	1
<code>\label</code> .....	52
<code>\labelpstartfalse</code> .....	1
<code>\labelpstarttrue</code> .....	1, 18
<code>\labelref@list</code> .....	1
<code>\labelrefsparseline</code> .....	1
<code>\labelrefsparsesubline</code> .....	1
<code>\last@page@num</code> .....	1
Lavagnino, John .....	12

<code>\led@check@nopb</code>	1
<code>\led@check@pb</code>	1
<code>\led@err@AutoparNotNumbered</code>	1
<code>\led@err@edtextoutsidepstart</code>	1
<code>\led@err@EdtextWithoutFootnote</code>	1
<code>\led@err@FootnoteNotInSecondArgEdtext</code>	1
<code>\led@err@HighEndColumn</code>	1
<code>\led@err@LineationInNumbered</code>	1
<code>\led@err@LowStartColumn</code>	1
<code>\led@err@ManyLeftnotes</code>	1
<code>\led@err@ManyRightnotes</code>	1
<code>\led@err@ManySidenotes</code>	1
<code>\led@err@NumberingNotStarted</code>	1
<code>\led@err@NumberingShouldHaveStarted</code>	1
<code>\led@err@NumberingStarted</code>	1
<code>\led@err@NumberingWithoutPstart</code>	1
<code>\led@err@PendNoPstart</code>	1
<code>\led@err@PendNotNumbered</code>	1
<code>\led@err@PstartInPstart</code>	1
<code>\led@err@PstartNotNumbered</code>	1
<code>\led@err@ReverseColumns</code>	1
<code>\led@err@toendnotes@outsidenumbering</code>	1
<code>\led@err@TooManyColumns</code>	1
<code>\led@err@UnequalColumns</code>	1
<code>\led@error@fail@patch@@docclearpage</code>	1
<code>\led@error@fail@patch@@iiiminipage</code>	1
<code>\led@error@fail@patch@@makecol</code>	1
<code>\led@error@fail@patch@@reinserts</code>	1
<code>\led@error@fail@patch@endminipage</code>	1
<code>\led@error@ImakeidxAfterEledmac</code>	1
<code>\led@error@IndextoolsAfterEledmac</code>	1
<code>\led@mess@NotesChanged</code>	1
<code>\led@mess@SectionContinued</code>	1
<code>\led@nopb</code>	1
<code>\led@nopbnum</code>	1
<code>\led@pb</code>	1
<code>\led@pb@setting</code>	1
<code>\led@pbnum</code>	1
<code>\led@reinit@index@fornote</code>	1
<code>\led@set@index@fornote</code>	1
<code>\led@toksa</code>	1
<code>\led@toksb</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@AppLabelOutSecondArgEdtext</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadAction</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadAdvancelineLine</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadAdvancelineSubline</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadLineation</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadLinenummargin</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadLockdisp</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadSetline</code>	1

<code>\led@warn@BadSetlinenum</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadSidenotemargin</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadSublockdisp</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@DuplicateLabel</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@LineFileObsolete</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@NoIndexFile</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@NoLineFile</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@NoMarginpars</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@RefUndefined</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@SeriesStillExist</code>	1
<code>\led@warning@hsizeX@deprecated</code>	1
<code>\led@warning@msdatawithoutstop</code>	1
<code>\led@warning@preXnotes@deprecated</code>	1
<code>\led@warning@Xhsize@deprecated</code>	1
<code>ledgroup (environment)</code>	49
<code>ledgroupsize (environment)</code>	49
<code>\ledinnernote</code>	1, 54
<code>\ledinnote</code>	1
<code>\ledinnotehyperpage</code>	1
<code>\ledinnotemark</code>	1
<code>\ledleftnote</code>	1, 55
<code>\ledlinenum</code>	1
<code>\ledllfill</code>	1
<code>\ledlsnotefontsetup</code>	1, 55
<code>\ledlsnotesep</code>	1, 55
<code>\ledlsnotewidth</code>	1, 55
<code>\lednopb</code>	1, 63
<code>\lednopbinversetrue</code>	63
<code>\lednopbnum</code>	1
<code>\ledouternote</code>	54
<code>\ledouterote</code>	1
<code>\ledpb</code>	1, 63
<code>\ledpbnum</code>	1
<code>\ledpbsetting</code>	1, 63
<code>\ledrightnote</code>	1, 55
<code>\ledrlfill</code>	1
<code>\ledrsnotefontsetup</code>	1, 55
<code>\ledrsnotesep</code>	1, 55
<code>\ledrsnotewidth</code>	1, 55
<code>\ledsectnomark</code>	1
<code>\ledsectnotoc</code>	1
<code>\ledsetnormalparstuff@common</code>	1
<code>\ledsetnormalparstuffX</code>	1
<code>\ledsidenote</code>	1, 55
<code>\leftctab</code>	1
<code>\leftlinenum</code>	1, 20
<code>\leftltab</code>	1
<code>\leftnoteupfalse</code>	55
<code>\leftpstartnum</code>	1
<code>\leftrtab</code>	1

Leibniz .....	13
\lemma .....	<u>1</u> , 26
\letsforverteilen .....	<u>1</u>
\line@list .....	<u>1</u>
\line@list@stuff .....	<u>1</u>
\line@list@version .....	<u>1</u>
\line@margin .....	<u>1</u>
\line@num .....	<u>1</u>
\line@set .....	<u>1</u>
\lineation .....	<u>1</u> , 20
\linenum .....	<u>1</u> , 26
\linenum@out .....	<u>1</u>
\linenumberlist .....	<u>1</u> , 19
\linenumberstyle .....	<u>1</u> , 22
\linenumincrement .....	<u>1</u> , 19
\linenummargin .....	<u>1</u> , 20
\linenumr@p .....	<u>1</u>
\linenumrep .....	<u>1</u>
\linenumsep .....	<u>1</u> , 20
\linerrangesep@ .....	<u>1</u>
\list@clear .....	<u>1</u>
\list@clearing@reg .....	<u>1</u>
\list@create .....	<u>1</u>
\lock@disp .....	<u>1</u>
\lock@off .....	<u>1</u>
\lock@on .....	<u>1</u>
\lockdisp .....	<u>1</u> , 21
Lorch, Richard .....	13
\ltab .....	<u>1</u>
\ltabtext .....	<u>1</u>
Luecking, Dan .....	70

## M

\m@mmf@check .....	<u>1</u>
\m@mmf@prepare .....	<u>1</u>
\M@sect .....	<u>1</u>
\makehboxofhboxes .....	<u>1</u>
\managestanza@modulo .....	<u>1</u>
\maxhnotesX .....	44
Mayer, Gyula .....	13
\measurebody .....	<u>1</u>
\measurecell .....	<u>1</u>
\measuremrow .....	<u>1</u>
\measuretbody .....	<u>1</u>
\measuretcell .....	<u>1</u>
\measuretrow .....	<u>1</u>
Middleton, Thomas .....	13, 92
minipage (environment) .....	49
Mittelbach, Frank .....	12
\morenoexpands .....	<u>1</u> , 66

\mpfnpos	1, 33
\mpnormalfootgroup	1
\mpnormalfootgroupX	1
\mpnormalvfootnote	1
\mpnormalvfootnoteX	1
\mppara@footgroupX	1
\mppara@vfootnoteX	1
\mpparafootgroup	1
\mpparavfootnote	1
\mpthreecolfootgroup	1
\mpthreecolfootgroupX	1
\mpthreecolfootsetup	1
\mpthreecolfootsetupX	1
\mptwocolfootgroup	1
\mptwocolfootgroupX	1
\mptwocolfootsetup	1
\mptwocolfootsetupX	1
\msdata	1, 31
\multfootsep	1, 32
\multiplefootnotemarker	1

## N

\n@num	1
\n@num@stanza	1
\new@line	1
\newhookarg@specific	1
\newhookcommand@series	1
\newhookcommand@series@reload	1
\newhooktoggle@series	1
\newhooktoggle@series@reload	1
\newhooktoggle@specific	1
\newseries@	1
\newverse	1
\NEXT	1
\no@expands	1
\noeledsec	62
\nomk@	1
\normal@footnotemarkX	1
\normal@page@break	1
\normal@pars	1
\normalbfnoteX	1
\normalbodyfootmarkX	1
\normalfootfmt	1
\normalfootfmtX	1
\normalfootfootmarkX	1
\normalfootgroup	1
\normalfootgroupX	1
\normalfootnoterule	1
\normalfootnoteruleX	1
\normalfootstart	1

<code>\normalfootstartX</code>	1
<code>\normalvfootnote</code>	1
<code>\normalvfootnoteX</code>	1
<code>\notefontsizeX</code>	40
<code>\notenumfontX</code>	40
<code>\noteschanged@false</code>	1
<code>\noteschanged@true</code>	1
<code>\noteswidthliketwocolumnsX</code>	45
<code>\nulledindex</code>	1
<code>\nullsetzen</code>	1
<code>\num@lines</code>	1
<code>\numberedpar@false</code>	1
<code>\numberedpar@true</code>	1
<code>\numberingfalse</code>	1
<code>\numberingtrue</code>	1
<code>\numberlinefalse</code>	19
<code>\numberlinetrue</code>	19
<code>\numberpstartfalse</code>	1, 18
<code>\numberpstarttrue</code>	1, 18
<code>\numberstanzafalse</code>	48
<code>\numberstanzatrue</code>	48
<code>\numlabfont</code>	1, 45

## O

<code>\old@hsize</code>	1
<code>\one@line</code>	1
<code>optionauxdir</code>	15, 405
<code>optioncontinuousnumberingwithcolumns</code>	404
<code>optioninnnote</code>	403
<code>optioninnote</code>	403
<code>optionlinrangesep</code>	238
<code>optionnocritical</code>	403
<code>optionnoeledsec</code>	324, 405
<code>optionnoend</code>	403
<code>optionnopenalties</code>	65
<code>optionnotenumber</code>	403

## P

<code>\page@action</code>	1
<code>\page@num</code>	1
<code>\pagelinesep</code>	1, 56
<code>\pageno</code>	1
<code>\pageref</code>	52
<code>\par@line</code>	1
<code>\para@footgroupX</code>	1
<code>\para@footsetup</code>	1
<code>\para@footsetupX</code>	1
<code>\para@vfootnoteX</code>	1
<code>\parafootfmt</code>	1
<code>\parafootfmtX</code>	1



<code>\parafootgroup</code> .....	1
<code>\parafootsepX</code> .....	43
<code>\parafootstart</code> .....	1
<code>\parafootstartX</code> .....	1
<code>\paravfootnote</code> .....	1
<code>\parindentX</code> .....	41
<code>\pausenumbering</code> .....	1, 18
<code>\pend</code> .....	1, 16
Plato of Tivoli .....	13
<code>\postbodyfootmark</code> .....	1
<code>\prebodyfootmark</code> .....	1
<code>\prenotesX</code> .....	44
<code>\prepare@edindex@fornote</code> .....	1
<code>\prepare@prenotesX</code> .....	1
<code>\prepare@Xprenotes</code> .....	1
<code>\prev@nopb</code> .....	1
<code>\prev@pb</code> .....	1
<code>\prevpage@num</code> .....	1
<code>\print@eledsection</code> .....	1
<code>\print@footnoteXrule</code> .....	1
<code>\print@leftmargin@eledsection</code> .....	1
<code>\print@lemma</code> .....	1
<code>\print@line</code> .....	1
<code>\print@notesX</code> .....	1
<code>\print@rightmargin@eledsection</code> .....	1
<code>\print@Xfootnoterule</code> .....	1
<code>\print@Xnotes</code> .....	1
<code>\printendlines</code> .....	1
<code>\printlineendnote</code> .....	1
<code>\printlineendnotearea</code> .....	1
<code>\printlinefootnote</code> .....	1
<code>\printlinefootnotearea</code> .....	1
<code>\printlinefootnotenumbers</code> .....	1
<code>\printlines</code> .....	1
<code>\printnpnum</code> .....	1
<code>\printpstart</code> .....	1
<code>\printsymlineendnotearea</code> .....	1
<code>\printsymlinefootnotearea</code> .....	1
<code>\printXafternumber</code> .....	1
<code>\printXbeforenumber</code> .....	1
<code>\pstart</code> .....	1, 16
<code>\pstarteref</code> .....	1
<code>\pstartnum</code> .....	1
<code>\pstartref</code> .....	50

## Q

<code>\quotation</code> .....	1
<code>\quote</code> .....	1

## R

<code>\raggedX</code>	43
<code>\raw@text</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\rbracket</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\read@linelist</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\ref</code>	52
<code>\ref@reg@later</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\Relax</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\reledmac@error</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\reledmac@warning</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\removehboxes</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\reset@msd@options@iffullpage</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\resetprevline@</code>	<u>1</u> , 95
<code>\resetprevpage@</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\resetprevpage@num</code>	96
<code>\restore@familiarnotes</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\restore@notes</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\restore@sidenotes</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\resumenumbering</code>	<u>1</u> , 18
<code>\rightctab</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\rightlinenum</code>	<u>1</u> , 20
<code>\rightltab</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\rightnoteupfalse</code>	55
<code>\rightrtab</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\rightstartnum</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\rigidbalance</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\rigidbalanceX</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\rtab</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\rtabtext</code>	<u>1</u>

## S

Sacrobosco	13
<code>\sameword</code>	<u>1</u> , 27
<code>\sameword@inedtext</code>	<u>1</u>
Schöpf, Rainer	12
<code>\section@num</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\select@@lemmafонт</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\select@lemmafонт</code>	<u>1</u> , 45
<code>\SEref</code>	<u>1</u> , 52
<code>\SErefonlypage</code>	52
<code>\SErefwithpage</code>	<u>1</u> , 52
<code>\series</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\seriesatbegin</code>	<u>1</u> , 33
<code>\seriesatend</code>	<u>1</u> , 33
<code>\set@line</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\set@line@action</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\set@Xtxtbeforenotes</code>	<u>1</u>
<code>\setapprefprefixmore</code>	52
<code>\setapprefprefixsingle</code>	52
<code>\setcommand@series</code>	<u>1</u>

<code>\sethangingsymbol</code>	1, 48
<code>\setistwofollowinglines</code>	1
<code>\setl@dlp@rbox</code>	1
<code>\setl@drpr@box</code>	1
<code>\setline</code>	1, 21
<code>\setlinenum</code>	1, 22
<code>\setmcellcenter</code>	1
<code>\setmcellleft</code>	1
<code>\setmcellright</code>	1
<code>\setmrowcenter</code>	1
<code>\setmrowleft</code>	1
<code>\setmrowright</code>	1
<code>\setmsdatalabel</code>	1, 32
<code>\setmsdataseries</code>	1, 32
<code>\setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@</code>	1
<code>\setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@</code>	1
<code>\setprintendlines</code>	1
<code>\setprintlines</code>	1
<code>\setSErefonlypageprefixmore</code>	53
<code>\setSErefonlypageprefixsingle</code>	53
<code>\setSErefprefixmore</code>	53
<code>\setSErefprefixsingle</code>	53
<code>\setsidenotessep</code>	55
<code>\setstanzaindents</code>	1, 46
<code>\setstanzapenalties</code>	1, 47
<code>\setstanzavalues</code>	1
<code>\settccllcenter</code>	1
<code>\settccllleft</code>	1
<code>\settccllright</code>	1
<code>\settoggle@series</code>	1
<code>\settrowcenter</code>	1
<code>\settrowleft</code>	1
<code>\settrowright</code>	1
<code>\setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@</code>	1
<code>\setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@</code>	1
<code>\showlemma</code>	1, 64
<code>\showwordrank</code>	1, 30
<code>\sidenote@margin</code>	1
<code>\sidenotemargin</code>	1, 55
<code>\sidepstartnumtrue</code>	18
<code>\skip@lockoff</code>	1
<code>\skipnumbering</code>	1, 22
<code>\splitoff</code>	1
<code>\spreadmath</code>	1, 59
<code>\spreadtext</code>	1, 59
<code>\stanza</code>	1, 46
<code>\stanza@count</code>	1
<code>\stanza@hang</code>	1
<code>\stanza@line</code>	1
<code>\stanzaindent</code>	1, 47

<code>\stanzaindent*</code>	1, 47
<code>\stanzaindentbase</code>	1, 46
<code>\stanzanumwrapper</code>	1, 49
<code>\startlock</code>	1, 21
<code>\startsub</code>	1, 21
<code>\stepl@dcolcount</code>	1
<code>\stopmsdata</code>	1, 31
<code>\strip@szacnt</code>	1
<code>\sub@action</code>	1
<code>\sub@lock</code>	1
<code>\sub@off</code>	1
<code>\sub@on</code>	1
<code>\subline@num</code>	1
<code>\sublinenumberstyle</code>	1, 22
<code>\sublinenumincrement</code>	1, 19
<code>\sublinenumr@p</code>	1
<code>\sublinenumrep</code>	1
<code>\sublineref</code>	1, 50
<code>\sublines@false</code>	1
<code>\sublines@true</code>	1
<code>\sublock@disp</code>	1
<code>\sublockdisp</code>	1
Sullivan, Wayne	12, 13, 65, 79, 83, 163, 165, 244, 280
<code>\sza@penalty</code>	1

## T

<code>\tabHilfbox</code>	1
<code>\tabhilfbox</code>	1
<code>\theadcolcount</code>	1
<code>\theadtext</code>	1
<code>\theendpageline</code>	1
<code>\thefootnoteA</code>	32
Theodosius	13
<code>\thepageline</code>	1
<code>\thepstart</code>	1, 18
<code>\thestanza</code>	1, 48
<code>\thestartpageline</code>	1
<code>\this@line@list@version</code>	1
<code>\threecolfootfmt</code>	1
<code>\threecolfootfmtX</code>	1
<code>\threecolfootgroup</code>	1
<code>\threecolfootgroupX</code>	1
<code>\threecolfootsetup</code>	1
<code>\threecolfootsetupX</code>	1
<code>\threecolvfootnote</code>	1
<code>\threecolvfootnoteX</code>	1
<code>\toendnotes</code>	25
<code>\toendnotes*</code>	1
<code>\twocolfootfmt</code>	1
<code>\twocolfootfmtX</code>	1

<code>\twocolfootgroup</code> .....	1
<code>\twocolfootgroupX</code> .....	1
<code>\twocolfootsetup</code> .....	1
<code>\twocolfootsetupX</code> .....	1
<code>\twocolvfootnote</code> .....	1
<code>\twocolvfootnoteX</code> .....	1

## U

<code>\unvxhX</code> .....	1
----------------------------	---

## V

Vamana .....	13
<code>\variab</code> .....	1
<code>\vbfnoteX</code> .....	1
<code>\vl@dbfnote</code> .....	1
<code>\vl@dcsnote</code> .....	1
<code>\vl@disnote</code> .....	1
<code>\vl@dlsnote</code> .....	1
<code>\vl@dosnote</code> .....	1
<code>\vl@drsnote</code> .....	1
<code>\vnumfootnoteX</code> .....	1

## W

Whitney, Ron .....	12
<code>\widthX</code> .....	44
<code>\wrap@edcrossref</code> .....	1
<code>\wrapcontentX</code> .....	41
<code>\wrapped@bodyfootmarkX</code> .....	1
<code>\wrapped@footfootmarkX</code> .....	1
Wujastyk, Dominik .....	12

## X

<code>\X@doreinfeet</code> .....	1
<code>\Xafterlemmaseparator</code> .....	39
<code>\Xafternote</code> .....	43
<code>\Xafternumber</code> .....	37
<code>\Xafterrule</code> .....	44
<code>\Xaftersymmlinenumber</code> .....	37
<code>\Xarrangement</code> .....	1, 34
<code>\Xarrangement@normal</code> .....	1
<code>\Xarrangement@paragraph</code> .....	1
<code>\Xarrangement@threecol</code> .....	1
<code>\Xarrangement@twocol</code> .....	1
<code>\Xbeforeinserting</code> .....	42
<code>\Xbeforelemmaseparator</code> .....	39
<code>\Xbeforenotes</code> .....	43
<code>\Xbeforenumber</code> .....	35, 37
<code>\Xbeforesymmlinenumber</code> .....	37
<code>\Xbhookgroup</code> .....	43
<code>\Xbhooknote</code> .....	41

<code>\Xboxlinenum</code> .....	37
<code>\Xboxlinenumalign</code> .....	38
<code>\Xboxsymlinenum</code> .....	38
<code>\Xcolalign</code> .....	42
<code>\Xdo@feet</code> .....	1
<code>\xedindex</code> .....	1
<code>\xedlabel</code> .....	1
<code>\xedtext</code> .....	1
<code>\Xendafterrenumber</code> .....	37
<code>\Xendafterlemmaseparator</code> .....	39
<code>\Xendafternote</code> .....	45
<code>\Xendafterpagenumber</code> .....	38
<code>\Xendaftersymlinenum</code> .....	37
<code>\Xendahookinplaceofnumber</code> .....	39
<code>\Xendahooklinenum</code> .....	39
<code>\Xendbeforelemmaseparator</code> .....	39
<code>\Xendbeforenumber</code> .....	37
<code>\Xendbeforepagenumber</code> .....	38
<code>\Xendbeforesymlinenum</code> .....	37
<code>\Xendbhookinplaceofnumber</code> .....	39
<code>\Xendbhooklinenum</code> .....	39
<code>\Xendbhooknote</code> .....	41
<code>\Xendboxendlinenumalign</code> .....	38
<code>\Xendboxlinenum</code> .....	38
<code>\Xendboxlinenumalign</code> .....	38
<code>\Xendboxstartlinenumalign</code> .....	38
<code>\Xendboxsymlinenum</code> .....	38
<code>\Xendhangindent</code> .....	41
<code>\Xendinplaceofflemmaseparator</code> .....	40
<code>\Xendinplaceofnumber</code> .....	37
<code>\Xendlemmadisablefontselection</code> .....	40
<code>\Xendlemmafont</code> .....	40
<code>\Xendlemmaseparator</code> .....	39
<code>\Xendlineprefixmore</code> .....	38
<code>\Xendlineprefixsingle</code> .....	38
<code>\Xendlinerangeseparator</code> .....	35
<code>\Xendmorethantwolines</code> .....	36
<code>\Xendnonumber</code> .....	36
<code>\Xendnotefontsize</code> .....	40
<code>\Xendnotenumfont</code> .....	40
<code>\Xendnumberonlyfirstinline</code> .....	35
<code>\Xendnumberonlyfirstintwolines</code> .....	35
<code>\Xendparagraph</code> .....	45
<code>\Xendsep</code> .....	45
<code>\Xendsublinesep</code> .....	37
<code>\Xendsymlinenum</code> .....	35
<code>\Xendtwolines</code> .....	36
<code>\Xendtwolinesbutnotmore</code> .....	36
<code>\Xendwrapcontent</code> .....	41
<code>\xflagref</code> .....	1

\Xhangindent	41
\Xsizethreecol	42
\Xsizetwocol	42
\Xinplaceoflemmaseparator	39
\Xinplaceofnumber	37
\Xinsertparafootsep	1
\Xledsetnormalparstuff	1
\xleft@appenditem	1
\Xlemmadisablefontselection	40
\Xlemmafont	40
\Xlemmaseparator	39
\Xlinangeseparator	35
\xlineref	1, 51
\Xmaxhnotes	44
\Xmorethantwolines	35
\Xnolemmaseparator	1, 39
\Xnonbreakableafternumber	37
\Xnonumber	36
\Xnotefontsize	40
\Xnotenumfont	40
\Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns	45
\Xnumberonlyfirstinline	35
\Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines	35
\Xonlypstart	36
\xpageref	1, 51
\Xparafootsep	43
\Xparindent	41
\Xprenotes	1, 43
\Xprenotes@	1
\Xpstart	36
\Xpstarteverytime	36
\xpstartref	1, 51
\XR@test	1
\XR@test@mac	1
\XR@test@mac@test	1
\Xragged	43
\xright@appenditem	1
\Xrigidbalance	1
\Xstanza	36
\Xstanzaseparator	36
\xsublineref	1, 51
\Xsublinesep	37
\Xsymlinenum	35
\Xtoendnotes	25
\Xtwolines	35
\Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage	36
\Xtxtbeforenotes	43
\Xunvxh	1
\Xwidth	44
\Xwrapcontent	41

<code>\Xwrapendlemma</code> .....	41
<code>\Xwraplemma</code> .....	41
<code>\xxref</code> .....	<u>1</u> , 51

**Z**

<code>\zz@@@</code> .....	<u>1</u>
---------------------------	----------



## Change History

v0.1.0.	
General: First public release	1
v0.2.0.	
\ifl@dmemoir: Added \ifl@dmemoir for memoir class having been used	71
\morenoexpands: Added \l@dtabnoexpands to \no@expands	119
\reledmac@error: Added \eledmac@error and replaced error messages	72
General: Added tabmac code, and extended indexing	1
v0.2.1.	
\@lab: Removed page setting from \@lab	247
\doxtrafeet: Renamed \doxtrafeet to \l@ddoxtrafeet	239
\edlabel: Tweaked \edlabel to get correct page numbers	245
\l@ddodoreinxtrafeet: Renamed \dodoreinxtrafeet to \l@ddodoreinxtrafeet	240
\morenoexpands: Removed some \lets from \no@expands. These were in edmac but Peter Wilson feels that they should not have been as they disabled page/line refs in a footnotes	119
\zz@@@: Minor change to \zz@@@	244
General: Added text about normal labeling	52
Bug fixes and match with mempatch v1.8	1
Major changes to insert code when memoir is loaded	242
v0.2.2.	
\footfudgefiddle: Added \footfudgefiddle	162
\line@list@stuff: Added initial write of page number in \line@list@stuff	112
\para@footsetup: Added \footfudgefiddle to \para@footsetup	162
\para@footsetupX: Added \footfudgefiddle to \para@footsetupX	200
General: Improved paragraph footnotes	1
New Dekker example	1
Used \providecommand for \@gobblethree to avoid clash with the amsfonts package	78
v0.3.0.	
\@lab: Replaced \the\line@num by \linenumr@p\line@num in \@lab, and similar for sub-lines	247
\@nl@reg: Added a bunch of code to \@nl for handling \setlinenum	99
\ledlinenum: Added \linenumr@p and \sublinenum@rep to \leftlinenum and \rightlinenum	91
\linenumberlist: Added \linenumberlist mechanism	79
\printendlines: Added \linenumr@p and \sublinenumr@p to \printendlines	217
\printlines: Added \linenumr@p and \sublinenumr@p to \printlines	184
\sublinenumr@p: Added \linenumberstyle and \sublinenumberstyle	90
General: Includes edstanza and more	1
v0.3.1.	
General: Not released. Added remarks about the parallel package	1
v0.4.0.	
\@iiiminipage: Modified kernel \@iiiminipage and \endminipage to cater for critical footnotes	267
\Xarrangement@normal: Added minpage footnote setup to \footnormal	158
\edtext: Added \showlemma to \edtext	120
\l@dfeetendmini: Added \l@dfeetbeginmini, \l@dfeetendmini and all their supporting code	266

\mpnormalfootgroup: Added \mpnormalfootgroup	160
\mpnormalvfootnote: Added \mpnormalvfootnote	158
\showlemma: Added \showlemma	78
General: Added final/draft options	69
Added ledgroup environment	268
Added ledgroupsize environment	269
Added minipage, etc., support	1
v0.4.1.	
\Xdo@feet: Changed \Xdo@feet code for easier extensions	239
\edindex: Let eledmac take advantage of memoir's indexing	274
\print@Xnotes: Added \@opXfeet	240
General: Added code for changing \@doclearpage	242
Not released. Minor editorial improvements and code tweaks	1
Only change \@footnotetext and \@footnotemark if memoir not used	186
v0.5.0.	
\@footnotetext: Enabled regular \footnote in numbered text	186
\@xympar: Eliminated \marginpar disturbance	258
General: Added left and right side notes	258
Added sidenotes, familiar footnotes in numbered text	1
v0.5.1.	
\affixline@num: Changed \affixline@num to cater for sidenotes	144
\l@getsidenote@margin: Added \sidenotemargin and \sidenote@margin	258
General: Added moveable side note	258
Fixed right line numbers killed in v0.5	1
Only change \hsize in ledgroupsize environment otherwise page number can be in wrong place	269
v0.6.0.	
\@lopR: Added \@pend, \@pendR, \@lopL and \@lopR in anticipation of parallel processing	101
\@nl@reg: Added \fix@page to \@nl	99
Extended \@nl to include the page number	99
\fix@page: Added \last@page@num and \fix@page	101
\get@thisfootnote: Changed \l@dbfnote and \v1@dbfnote as originals could give incorrect markers in the footnotes	187
\new@line: Extended \new@line to output page numbers	112
General: Fixed long paragraphs looping	1
Fixed minor typos	1
Prepared for eledpar package	1
v0.7.0.	
\@nl@reg: Added \@nl@reg	99
\@ref@reg: Added \@ref@reg	109
\affixline@num: Added skipnumering to \affixline@num	144
\do@actions@fixedcode: Added \do@actions@fixedcode	143
\do@actions@next: Added number skipping to \do@actions	142
\do@insidelinehook: Added \do@linehook for use in \do@line	140
\endnumbering: Changed \endnumbering for eledpar	82
\fix@l@cks: Added \ch@cksub@l@ck, \ch@ck@l@ck and \fix@l@cks	147
\footplitskips: Added \footplitskips for use in many footnote styles	156
\get@linelistfile: Added \get@linelistfile	98
\initnumbering@reg: Added \initnumbering@reg	81

\l@advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes: Added \l@dunboxmpfoot containing some common code .....	268
\l@dcsnotetext@r: Added \l@emptyd@ta .....	140
\l@dgetline@margin: Added \l@dgetline@margin .....	87
\l@dgetlock@disp: Added \l@dgetlock@disp .....	89
\l@dgetsidenote@margin: Added \l@dgetsidenote@margin .....	258
\l@dnumpstartsL: Added \l@dnumpstartsL, \ifl@dpairing and \ifpst@rted for/from eledpar .....	79
\l@drsn@te: Added \l@dlsn@te and \l@drsn@te for use in \do@line .....	141
\l@dzeropenalties: Added \l@dzeropenalties .....	135
\ledlinenum: Added \ledlinenum for use by \leftlinenum and \rightlinenum ..	91
\line@list@stuff: Deleted \page@start from \line@list@stuff .....	112
\list@clearing@reg: Added \list@clearing@reg .....	98
\n@num: Added \n@num .....	106
\normalbfnoteX: Removed extraneous space from \normalbfnoteX .....	192
\resumenumbering: Changed \resumenumbering for eledpar .....	83
\setprintendlines: Added \setprintendlines for use by \printendlines ...	215
\setprintlines: Added \setprintlines for use by \printlines .....	180
\skipnumbering: Added \skipnumbering and supports .....	116
\sublinenumincrement: Added \firstlinenum, \linenumincrement, \firstsublinenum and \linenumincrement .....	88
\sublinenumr@p: Using \linenumrep instead of \linenumr@p .....	90
Using \sublinenumrep instead of \sublinenumr@p .....	90
\vnumfootnoteX: Removed extraneous space from \vnumfootnoteX .....	194
General: eledmac having been available for 2 years, deleted the commented out original edmac texts .....	1
Maïeul Rouquette new maintainer .....	1
Made macros of all messages .....	72
Replaced all \interAfootnotelinepenalty, etc., by just \interfootnotelinepenalty .....	1
Tidying up for eledpar and ledarab packages .....	1
v0.8.0.	
General: Bug on endnotes fixed: in a // text, all endnotes will print and be placed at the ends of columns () .....	1
v0.8.1.	
General: Bug on \edtext ; \critex ; \lemma fixed: we can now us non-switching commands .....	1
v0.9.0.	
General: No more ledpatch. All patches are now in the main file. ....	1
v0.9.1.	
General: Fix some bugs linked to integrating ledpatch on the main file. ....	1
v0.10.0.	
General: Corrections to \section and other titles in numbered sections .....	1
v0.11.0.	
General: Makes it possible to add a symbol on each verse's hanging, as in French typography. Redefines the command \hangingsymbol to define the character. ...	1
v0.12.0.	
\l@dnumpstartsL: Added \ifledRcol and \ifnumberingR for/from eledpar ....	79
General: For compatibility with eledpar, possibility to use \autopar on the right side. ...	1
Possibility to number \pstart. ....	18

Possibility to number the pstart with the commands <code>\numberpstarttrue</code> .	1
v0.12.1.	
General: Don't number <code>\pstarts</code> of stanza.	1
The numbering of <code>\pstarts</code> restarts on each <code>\beginnumbering</code> .	1
v0.13.0.	
<code>\managestanza@modulo</code> : New <code>stanzaindentsrepetition</code> counter to repeat stanza indents every $n$ verses.	282
General: New <code>stanzaindentsrepetition</code> counter to repeat stanza indents every $n$ verses.	46
New <code>stanzaindentsrepetition</code> counter: to repeat stanza indents every $n$ verses.	1
v0.13.1.	
General: <code>\thepstartL</code> and <code>\thepstartR</code> use now <code>\bfseries</code> and not <code>\bf</code> , which is deprecated and makes conflicts with memoir class.	1
v0.14.0.	
<code>\edlabel</code> : Tweaked <code>\edlabel</code> to get correct line number if the command is first element of a paragraph.	245
General: Tweaked <code>\edlabel</code> to get correct line number if the command is first element of a paragraph.	1
v0.15.0.	
<code>\affixline@num</code> : Line numbering can be disabled.	145
<code>\ifinserthangingsymbol</code> : New management of <code>hangingsymbol</code> insertion, preventing undesirable insertions.	280
<code>\printlines</code> : Line numbering can be reset at each <code>pstart</code> .	183
General: Line numbering can be reset at each <code>pstart</code> .	85
Possibility to print <code>\pstart</code> number inside.	18
v0.17.0.	
<code>\ifinserthangingsymbol</code> : New new management of <code>hangingsymbol</code> insertion, preventing undesirable insertions.	280
v1.0.0.	
<code>\morenoexpands</code> : Change to be compatible with new features	119
General: <code>\lemma</code> can contain commands.	26
Debug in lineation command	20
New generic commands to customize footnote display.	33, 230
Options <code>nonum</code> and <code>nosep</code> in <code>\Xfootnote</code> .	24
Options of <code>\Xfootnotes</code> .	154
Possibility to have commands in sidenotes.	55
Some compatibility break with <code>eledmac</code> . Change of name: <code>eledmac</code> .	1
v1.0.1.	
General: Correction on <code>\Xnumberonlyfirstinline</code> with lineation by <code>pstart</code> or by page.	35
v1.1.0.	
<code>\Xprenotes</code> : New skip <code>\Xprenotes@</code>	208
<code>\settoggle@series</code> : <code>\settoggle@series</code> switch the global value of the toggle, not only the local value.	231
General: Add <code>\labelpstarttrue</code> .	18
Add <code>\Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines</code>	35
Add <code>\Xpstart</code> and <code>\Xonlypstart</code>	36
New hook to add arbitrary code at the beginning of the notes	41
New options for block of notes.	43
New package option: <code>parapparatus</code> .	1
New tools to change order of series	230
Sectioning commands.	61

v1.2.0.	
<code>\Xprenotes</code> :	Debug in familiar footnotes (bug introduced by v1.1). . . . . 208
<code>\endquote</code> :	Compatibility of <code>\ledchapter</code> with the <i>memoir</i> class. . . . . 317
v1.3.0.	
<code>\endquote</code> :	<i>Quotation</i> and quote environment inside numbered sections. . . . . 317
v1.4.0.	
<code>\edtext</code> :	Compatibility of <code>\edtext</code> with the right-to-left direction (with Polyglossia). 120
<code>\ledsetnormalparstuffX</code> :	Direction of footnotes with polyglossia. . . . . 204
<code>\newseries@</code> :	Remembers the language of the lemma, in order to create a correct direction for the footnote separator. . . . . 221
<code>\rbracket</code> :	Switch the right bracket to a left bracket when the lemma is RTL (needs polyglossia or LuaTeX). . . . . 175
General:	Compatibility with LuaTeX of RTL notes. . . . . 1
v1.4.1.	
<code>\affixside@note</code> :	Remove spurious spaces. . . . . 264
<code>\endquote</code> :	New option <i>noquotation</i> . . . . . 317
<code>\get@thisfootnote</code> :	Compatibility of standard footnotes with <code>eledmac</code> when these footnotes contain any commands. . . . . 187
<code>\labelrefsparsesubline</code> :	Fix bug with <code>\edlabel</code> . . . . . 246
v1.4.2.	
General:	Debug with some special classes. . . . . 1
v1.4.3.	
General:	Add <code>\Xnonbreakableafternumber</code> . . . . . 37
Spurious space after familiar footnotes.	. . . . . 1
v1.4.4.	
General:	Label inside familiar footnotes. . . . . 1
v1.4.5.	
General:	Bug with <code>komasscript</code> + <code>eledpar</code> + <code>chapter</code> . . . . . 1
v1.4.6.	
General:	Bug with <i>memoir</i> class introduced by 1.4.5. . . . . 1
v1.4.7.	
<code>\endquote</code> :	Compatibility of sectioning commands with <code>\autopar</code> . . . . . 317
v1.4.8.	
General:	Corrects a bug with parallel texts introduced by 1.1. . . . . 1
v1.4.9.	
<code>\normalbfnoteX</code> :	Allow to redefine <code>\thefootnoteX</code> with <code>alph</code> when some packages are loaded. . . . . 192
v1.5.0.	
<code>\do@insidelinehook</code> :	Added <code>\do@insidelinehook</code> for use in <code>\do@line</code> . . . . . 140
<code>\edindex</code> :	Compatibility with <code>imakeidx</code> package, and possibility to use multiple index with <code>\edindex</code> . . . . . 274
General:	Correct indexing when the call is made in critical notes. . . . . 270
v1.5.1.	
<code>\managestanza@modulo</code> :	Correct <code>stanzaindentsrepetition</code> counter . . . . . 282
<code>\normalvfootnoteX</code> :	Fix bug with normal familiar footnotes when mixing RTL and LTR text. . . . . 189
v1.6.0.	
<code>\newverse</code> :	Add <code>\falseverse</code> macro. . . . . 285
v1.6.1.	
<code>\AtEveryPstart</code> :	Spurious space in <code>\pstart</code> . . . . . 133

\ifinserthangingsymbol: Hang verse is now not automatically flush right. . . . .	280
\l@dunhbox@line: Move the call to \inserthangingsymbol to allow use \hfill inside. . . . .	137
\pend: Spurious space in \pend. . . . .	134
General: Corrects a false hanging verse when a verse is exactly the length of a line. . . . .	1
v1.7.0.	
General: New features for managing page breaks. . . . .	63
v1.8.0.	
\endquote: Correction of sectioning commands in parallel texts. . . . .	317
\get@index@command: Debug \get@index@command and compatibility with hyperref package. . . . .	273
\newhookcommand@series@reload: Debug \beforenotesX and \maxnotesX which did not work. . . . .	234
\prevpage@num: Correct \parafootsep when using with ledgroup. . . . .	168
General: Compatibility with parledgroup option ofeledpar package. . . . .	1
If imakeidx and hyperref are loaded, adds hyperref in the index. . . . .	270
v1.8.1.	
General: Debug endnotes when more than one series is used (change the position where tools for endnotes are defined). . . . .	209
v1.8.2.	
General: Debug compatibility problem with hebrew option of babel package. . . . .	1
v1.8.3.	
General: Fixes spurious spaces added by v1.7.0. . . . .	1
v1.8.5.	
General: Debug indexing in right column, witheledpar. . . . .	270
v1.9.0.	
\doxtrafeet: Add \fnpos to choice the order of footnotes. . . . .	239
\l@dfeetendmini: Add \mpfnpos to choice the order of footnotes in minipage / ledgroup. . . . .	266
v1.10.0.	
\endquote: Correction of sectioning commands in parallel texts. . . . .	317
General: Add \pstartref and \xpstartref to refer to a pstart number (extension of \edlabel). . . . .	1
v1.10.1.	
General: Compatibility with cleveref. . . . .	1
v1.10.2.	
General: Compatibility of stanza with v1.8a of babel-greek. . . . .	1
v1.10.3.	
General: Debug of cross-referencing. . . . .	1
v1.10.4.	
General: Debug of critical notes in edtabular environment. . . . .	1
v1.10.5.	
General: Debug of \pausenumbering. . . . .	1
Debug of \xxref. . . . .	1
v1.10.6.	
General: Debug of interaction between \autopar and \pausenumbering. . . . .	1
v1.11.0.	
General: Add hooks to disable the font selection for lemma in footnote. . . . .	40
v1.11.1.	
General: Correct a bug when a critical note starts with plus or minus. . . . .	1

## v1.12.0.

\@nl@reg: To ensure compatibility with \musixtex, \@l becomes \@1. Consequently, \@l@reg becomes \@nl@reg. . . . .	99
\AtEveryPstart: New optional argument for \pstart, to execute code before it. . .	133
\edindex: Use correctly default index when imakeidx is loaded. . . . .	274
\endquote: \ledxxx sectioning commands are deprecated and replaced by \eledxxx commands. . . . .	317
\initnumbering@reg: \beginnumbering is defined only on eledmac, not on eledpar. .	81
\l@dgetsidenote@margin: \sidenotemargin is now directly defined in eledmac to be able to manage eledpar. . . . .	258
\l@disnote: \l@dlsnote, \l@drsnote and \l@dcsnote defined only one time, in eledmac, including needs for eledpar case. . . . .	260
\l@dnumpstartsL: Add \ifledRcol@ for eledpar . . . . .	79
\l@dunhbox@line: \do@line is split in more little commands. . . . .	138
\newhookcommand@series@reload: Debug \beforenotesX and \maxhnotesX which did not work when called after \footparagraphX. . . . .	234
Debug \Xbeforenotes and \Xmaxhnotes which did not work when called after \footparagraph. . . . .	234
\pend: New optional argument for \pend, to execute code after it. . . . .	134
\stanza: &can have an optional argument: content to be printed after. . . . .	285
\Stanza can have an optional argument: content to be printed before. . . . .	285
Add \newverse macro, \falseverse deprecated. . . . .	285
General: Add \ledinnernote and \ledouternote commands. . . . .	54
Add \Xendparagraph and related settings. . . . .	45
Add hyperlink to crossref (needs hyperref package). . . . .	50
Compatibility with musixtex. . . . .	1
Debug eledmac sectioning command after using \resumenumbering. . . . .	1
Ensure that imakeidx is loaded <i>before</i> eledmac . . . . .	270
New hooks: \Xafterrule and \afterruleX . . . . .	44
New options for ragged-paragraph notes . . . . .	43
New sectioning commands. . . . .	61
Optional arguments for \pstart and \pend. . . . .	18

## v1.12.1.

\wrap@edcrossref: Fix spurious spaces. . . . .	249
--	-----

## v1.12.2.

\l@dunhbox@line: Fix a bug with critical notes at the tops of pages (added by v12.0.0)	137
--	-----

## v1.12.3.

\flag@end: \flag@start and \flag@end are now defined only one time for eledmac and eledpar . . . . .	113
\flag@start send a error message when a \edtext is done without insert (note)	113
\reledmac@error: Replaced error messages . . . . .	72
General: Add macros for new messages since v0.7 . . . . .	72
Correct bug with side and familiar notes in tabular environments. . . . .	1
Debug \eledxxx with some paper size . . . . .	1
Debug \ledinnernote and \ledouternote commands in the top of pages. . . . .	54
Debug left and right notes (bugs added by 1.12.0) . . . . .	1
Underline lemma in \eledxxx when using draft mode. . . . .	1

## v1.12.4.

General: Debug spurious page breaks before \chapter (bug added in 1.12.0) . . . . .	1
---	---

v1.12.5.	
\@edindex@hyperref: Debug \edindex when hyperref is not loaded	275
\@ssect: Debug \eledchapter in parallel with memoir	320
\doinsidelinehook: Added \dolinehook and \doinsidelinehook	140
\endnumbering: Allow to mix parallel columns and normal text when using	
\pausenumbering	82
\l@dgobblearg: \l@dgobblearg becomes \l@dgobbeloptarg	300
\l@drestoreforedtext: Debug optional arguments of \Xfootnote in tabular context	300
\resumenumbering: Debug \resumenumbering	83
v1.12.7.	
\wrap@edcrossref: \wrap@edcrossref is now robust	249
v1.12.8.	
\flag@end: \flag@start do not send a error message when a \edtext is done	
without insert (note) but have a endnote	113
v1.13.0.	
\newhooktoggle@series@reload: Add \newhookcommand@toggle@reload	233
\para@footsetupX: In \para@footsetupX, use \columnwidth instead of \hsize	200
\settoggle@series: \settoggle@series can take an optional arguments to reload	
series setup.	231
General: Add \Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns and \noteswidthliketwocolumnsX	45
Added widthliketwocolumns option	69
v1.13.1.	
\thepstart: Add \l@dzeropenalties in \pstart	133
General: Coming back of page and line breaking penalties's management, deleted by	
error in v0.17.	1
Debug quotation environment inside of a \pstart preceded by a sectioning command.	1
v1.13.2.	
\l@dnumpstartsL: Add \ifl@dpadding for \eledpar	79
General: Fix bug with normal footnotes, added by v1.13.0.	1
v1.13.3.	
General: Fix extra spaces with paragraphed footnotes, added by v1.13.0.	1
v1.13.4.	
General: Fix bug with index when memoir class is used without hyperref	1
v1.14.0.	
\edindex: Let \eledmac take advantage of \imakeidx even when memoir class is used	274
General: Debug spurious characters before endnotes.	209
Delete previous override of \l@d@wrindexhyp at the beginning of a document	
when hyperref is not loaded.	277
Move gobbling command	78
Provide \@gobblefour	78
v1.14.1.	
\@ssect: Debug sectioning commands when using both handout and hyperref	
package.	323
v1.14.2.	
\@ssect: Debug \edtext after starred sectioning commands when using memoir class.	320
v1.15.0.	
\@edtext@level: New boolean \if@edtext@.	120
\arrangementX@threecol: Correct bug with paragraphed familiar footnotes setting.	199
\endsub: Restore subline feature (disabled by mistake in v1.8.0).	114
\if@lemmacommand@: New boolean \iflemmacommand@.	125



General: Fix bug with footnotes layout when using some options of the geometry package (bug add by v1.13.0). . . . .	1
New commands <code>\AtEveryPstart</code> and <code>\AtEveryPend</code> . . . . .	18
New tools to prevent ambiguous references in lemma . . . . .	27
v1.15.1.	
<code>\line@list@stuff</code> : Revert modification of 1.5.2 which makes bug with numbering. Leave vertical mode to solve spurious space before minipage. . . . .	112
v1.16.0.	
General: <code>\edtext</code> is now defined only in <code>eledmac</code> , not in <code>eledpar</code> . Debug wrong numbering when using <code>\sameword + eledpar + \tag</code> command. . . . .	120
Compatibility of standard footnotes with some biblatex styles. . . . .	1
New <code>\stanzaindent</code> command. . . . .	1
v1.16.1.	
<code>\xlineref</code> : <code>\lineref</code> is not defined if defined by some other package, like <code>lineno</code> . Eledmac provides <code>\edlineref</code> instead. . . . .	249
v1.17.0.	
<code>\edtext</code> : Error message when calling <code>\edtext</code> outside of a numbered paragraph. . . .	120
v1.18.0.	
<code>\@edindex@hyperref</code> : Fix spurious space with <code>\edindex</code> when using <code>imakeidx/indextools + hyperref</code> . . . . .	275
<code>\edlabel</code> : <code>\edlabel</code> is now defined only one time for both <code>eledmac</code> and <code>eledpar</code> . .	245
<code>\l@d@section</code> : Option <code>parapparatus</code> works for endnotes. . . . .	210
<code>\l@dnumprintstartL</code> : Add <code>\ifl@dprintingpages</code> and <code>\dprintingcolumns</code> for <code>eledpar</code> . . . . .	79
<code>\print@line</code> : Compatibility with Lua $\TeX$ RTL languages. . . . .	138
<code>\printlinefootnote</code> : Code refactoring in <code>\printlinefootnote</code> : the printing of the numbers are factorized in <code>\printlinefootnotearea</code> . . . . .	176
<code>\printpstart</code> : Debug <code>\Xpstart</code> with parallel pages and columns ( <code>eledpar</code> ) . . . . .	175
General: Add <code>\Xpstarteverytime</code> . . . . .	36
Compatibility with Lua $\TeX$ RTL languages. . . . .	1
Debug <code>\Xonlypstart</code> when using <code>\Xnumberonlyfirstinline</code> and the current line number differs from the previous. . . . .	36
v1.19.0.	
<code>\footplitskips</code> : <code>\footplitskips</code> doesn't set <code>\floatingpenalty</code> to <code>\@MM</code> when processing parallel pages. . . . .	156
<code>\xxref</code> : <code>\xxref</code> works also with right side numbers, when <code>\@Rlineflag</code> is not empty. .	251
General: <code>\Xmaxhnotes</code> and <code>\maxhnotesX</code> work now for both two-columns and three-columns setting. . . . .	1
Compatibility with <code>eledpar v1.13.0</code> . . . . .	1
v1.19.1.	
General: Call <code>\correct@footinsX@box</code> and <code>\correct@Xfootins@box</code> directly in <code>\print@notesX@forpages</code> and <code>\print@Xnotes@forpages</code> , that is in <code>eledpar</code> . . .	1
v1.20.0.	
<code>\printlines</code> : Added <code>\ifl@d@Xmorethantwolines</code> and <code>\ifl@d@Xmorethantwolines</code> to <code>\printlines</code> . . . . .	184
<code>\stanza</code> : <code>&amp;</code> and <code>&amp;</code> can be preceded by spaces. . . . .	285
<code>\xxref</code> : Debug <code>\xxref</code> when not loading <code>eledpar</code> (fix bug added in 1.19.0). . . . .	251
General: Add <code>\Xendboxlinenum</code> . . . . .	38
Add <code>\Xtwolines</code> and <code>\Xmorethantwolines</code> hooks . . . . .	35
Add series option. . . . .	1

Correct <code>\Xinplaceofnumber</code> hook. . . . .	1
Explicit error message when calling <code>\Xfootnote</code> outside of <code>\edtext</code> . . . . .	1
Fix bug with line number typesetting direction when using <code>\eledsection</code> and similar commands for RTL texts with <code>Lua<math>\TeX</math></code> . . . . .	1
Fix issues with RTL text in notes when using <code>Lua<math>\TeX</math></code> . . . . .	1
Options <code>fulllines</code> in <code>\Xfootnote</code> . . . . .	24
The <code>\newifs</code> are not followed by boolean values set to false, because it is the <code><math>\TeX</math></code> default setting. . . . .	1
v1.21.0.	
<code>\edindex@hyperref</code> : Look at the <code>hyperindex</code> option of <code>hyperref</code> before inserting <code>hyperref</code> . . . . .	275
<code>\l@d@section</code> : <code>\endnotes</code> take five arguments. . . . .	210
<code>\ledinnotemark</code> : Add <code>\ledinnotemark</code> . . . . .	273
<code>\ledsetnormalparstuffX</code> : <code>\ledsetnormalparstuff</code> is deprecated and becomes <code>\ledsetnormalparstuffX</code> and <code>\Xledsetnormalparstuff</code> . . . . .	204
<code>\n@num</code> : <code>\n@num@ref</code> deleted . . . . .	106
<code>\n@num</code> defined only one time for both <code>Eledmac</code> and <code>Eledpar</code> . . . . .	106
<code>\newhookcommand@series</code> : <code>\newhookcommand@series</code> can take an optional argument. . . . .	233
<code>\newhooktoggle@series</code> : <code>\newhooktoggle@series</code> can take an optional argument. . . . .	233
<code>\print@footnoterule</code> : Code refactoring: the spaces after the footnote rules are directly managed in <code>\print@Xfootnoterule</code> and <code>\print@footnoterule</code> . . . .	206
<code>\seriesatend</code> : Fix spurious space in <code>\seriesatend</code> . . . . .	230
<code>\skipnumbering</code> : <code>\skipnumbering</code> defined only one time for both <code>Eledmac</code> and <code>Eledpar</code> . . . . .	116
Correct <code>\skipnumbering</code> for stanza. . . . .	116
Delete <code>\skipnumbering@reg</code> . . . . .	116
General: <code>\AtEveryPstart</code> and <code>\AtEveryPend</code> are now compatible with <code>\autopar</code> . . .	1
<code>\Xafterrule</code> and <code>\afterruleX</code> features no longer create problems of overflowing at the bottom of the page. . . . .	1
<code>\chapter</code> inside optional argument of <code>\pstart</code> works when typesetting parallel pages . . . . .	1
<code>\preXnotes</code> and <code>\prenotesX</code> features no longer create problems of overflowing at the bottom of the page. . . . .	1
<code>\seriesatbegin</code> and <code>\seriesatbegin</code> more efficient . . . . .	230
Add <code>\applabel</code> and related . . . . .	52
Add <code>\beforenotesX</code> and <code>\Xbeforenotes</code> features for notes set in two and three column. . . . .	1
Add <code>\hidenumbering</code> . . . . .	22
Add <code>\Xcolalign</code> and <code>\colalignX</code> hooks . . . . .	42
Add <code>\Xendtwolines</code> , <code>\Xendmorethantwolines</code> , <code>\Xendtwolinesbutnotmore</code> and <code>\Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage</code> . . . . .	36
Add <code>\Xparindent</code> and <code>\hangindentX</code> . . . . .	41
Add <code>\Xtwolinesbutnotmore</code> and <code>\Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage</code> . . . . .	1
Add <code>nocritical</code> , <code>noend</code> , <code>nofamiliar</code> and <code>noledgroup</code> options. . . . .	1
Add <code>noeledsec</code> package option . . . . .	1
Debug <code>\beforenotesX</code> <code>\maxhnotesX</code> <code>\noteswidthliketwocolumnsX</code> and <code>\afterruleX</code> with footnotes set in two and three columns. . . . .	1
Fix bug when a <code>\Xfootnote</code> follows a <code>\Xendnote</code> in the second argument of <code>\edtext</code> (bug added in <code>eledmac</code> 1.0.0 ). . . . .	1

Fix bug with <code>\maxnotesX</code> when using <code>\foottwocolX</code> or <code>\footthreecolX</code> . . . . .	1
Fix bug with space between columns with notes in two columns (bug added in v1.13.0). . . . .	1
Fix spurious space after first page number in <code>\doendnotes</code> . <code>oldprintnpnumspace</code> option allows to come back to previous setting . . . . .	1
<code>parapparatus</code> option works now with familiar footnotes. . . . .	1
Provide <code>\@gobblefive</code> . . . . .	78
v1.22.0.	
<code>\ledinnote</code> : <code>\ledinnote</code> takes a first optional argument, which is the label for hyperlinks. . . . .	273
General: Add <code>\doendnotesbysection</code> command. . . . .	25
Add option for lemma separator inside endnotes . . . . .	39
Adds hyperlink for references to notes in indices. . . . .	1
Fix conflict between <code>noend</code> package option and <code>edtabularx</code> environments . . . . .	1
Provides support for <code>xindy</code> . . . . .	1
Standardize endnotes handbook. . . . .	25
When using <code>hyperref</code> package, internal links in index or with <code>\edlineref</code> are now targeted to the top and not longer to the bottom of the lines they refer to. . . . .	1
v1.22.1.	
<code>\prevpage@num</code> : Correct double symbol when using both <code>\parafootsep</code> and <code>\Xsymlinenum</code> . . . . .	168
General: Fix bug (added on v1.22.0) with <code>\Xinplaceofnumber</code> hook. . . . .	1
v1.23.0.	
<code>\@edtext@level</code> : The boolean <code>\if@edtext@</code> becomes the counter <code>\edtext@level</code> . . . . .	120
<code>\Serefwithpage</code> : Debug <code>\Xendtwolines</code> , <code>\Xendmoreethantwolines</code> , <code>\Xendtwolinesbutnotmore</code> and <code>\Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage</code> when using <code>\apprefwithpage</code> . . . . .	254
<code>\lemma</code> : Fix spurious space after <code>\lemma</code> command . . . . .	124
<code>\newseries@</code> : Prevent spurious spaces when <code>\Afootnote</code> and similar commands are followed by spaces (bug added on 1.0.0). . . . .	221
<code>\sameword</code> : In order to allow use of <code>\sameword</code> with <code>inputenc</code> , we detokenize its mandatory argument before using it in control sequence names. . . . .	128
General: Add <code>\Xboxlinenumalign</code> and <code>\Xendboxlinenumalign</code> . . . . .	38
Add <code>\Xboxstartlinenum</code> , <code>\Xendboxstartlinenum</code> , <code>\Xboxendlinenum</code> , <code>\Xendboxendlinenum</code> . . . . .	38
Allow use of <code>\sameword</code> with <code>inputenc</code> managing of UTF-8. . . . .	1
Compatibility between <code>nofamiliar/nocriticals</code> option and <code>minipage/ledgroup</code> . . . . .	1
Error message when using <code>\beginnumbering... \endnumbering</code> without <code>\pstart</code> . . . . .	1
Fix bug with <code>\sameword</code> when the lemma overlaps multiple line. . . . .	27
Fix bug with <code>\sameword</code> when the same lemma is used for multiple notes or for nested <code>\edtexts</code> . . . . .	27
Fix bug with <code>\skipnumbering</code> called immediately after a <code>\pstart</code> . . . . .	1
Fix error of <code>\iftrue</code> not closed. . . . .	1
Fix spurious space with <code>\skipnumbering</code> (bug added on v1.21.0). . . . .	1
New tools to ensure the line-list file uses the right version of commands when upgrading the <code>eledmac</code> version. . . . .	1
Optional argument of <code>\sameword</code> can be a comma-separated list of <code>\edtext</code> depth. . . . .	27
v1.23.1.	
General: Fix bug with <code>\lemma</code> command in the right side. . . . .	1
v1.23.2.	
General: Compatibility with $\text{\LaTeX}$ 's release 2015. . . . .	1

v1.24.0.	
General: We can reinitialize <code>\AtEveryPstart</code> and <code>\AtEveryPend</code> providing to it an empty argument. . . . .	1
v1.24.1.	
General: <code>\lemma</code> is disabled when using ‘ <code>nocritical</code> ’ option. . . . .	1
v1.24.2.	
General: Fix incompatibility between ‘ <code>nofamiliar</code> ’ option and ‘ <code>memoir</code> ’ package. . . . .	1
v1.24.3.	
General: Restore marginal numbers and notes with sectioning command (bug introduced in v1.21.0) . . . . .	1
v1.24.4.	
General: Fix spurious space with <code>\edindex</code> when using <code>xindy+hyperref</code> option. . . . .	1
v1.24.5.	
General: Fix bug of indent, when a added in 1.1.0, when a <code>\beginnumbering</code> immediately follow a sectioning command. . . . .	1
v2.0.0.	
<code>\@iiiminipage</code> : Patch <code>\@iiiminipage</code> instead of redefining it. . . . .	267
<code>\@xympar</code> : Patching <code>\@xympar</code> instead of redefining it . . . . .	258
<code>\endminipage</code> : Patch <code>\endminipage</code> instead of redefining it. . . . .	267
<code>\initnumbering@quote</code> : <code>\initnumbering@sectcmd</code> becomes <code>\initnumbering@quote</code> . . . . .	317
<code>\l@advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes</code> : Some code of <code>\l@dumboxmpfoot</code> moved to <code>\l@advance@parledegroupp@beforenormalnotes</code> . . . . .	268
<code>\newseries@</code> : One endnotes file by series. . . . .	226
General: <code>\@makecol</code> , <code>\@reinserts</code> and <code>\@doclearpage</code> are patched instead of begin redefined . . . . .	242
<code>\doxtrafeeti</code> becomes <code>\do@feetX</code> ; <code>\doxtrafeetii</code> becomes <code>\Xdo@feet</code> ; <code>\@opxtrafeeti</code> becomes <code>\@opfeetX</code> ; <code>\doreinxtrafeetii</code> becomes <code>\X@doreinfeet</code> ; <code>\doreinxtrafeeti</code> becomes <code>\@doreinfeetX</code> . . . . .	242
Add <code>\Xendinplaceofnumber</code> hook. . . . .	1
Add <code>\Xendnonumber</code> hook. . . . .	1
Add <code>nonum</code> option for endnotes. . . . .	1
Fix bug when printing only one series of endnotes, but wanted to keep endnotes for other series. . . . .	1
In order to have a more consistent name’s convention, many names has been changed. . . . .	1
Many $\TeX$ ’s output macros are now patched and not override. . . . .	1
Package’s name becomes <code>reledmac</code> . . . . .	1
Patch <code>\@footnotemark</code> instead of redefine it . . . . .	186
Suppress indexing command specific to <code>memoir</code> . . . . .	273
v2.0.1.	
General: Fix bug in <code>eledmac-compat</code> option . . . . .	1
Fix incompatibility between optional argument of <code>\pstart</code> and <code>\numberpstarttrue</code> . . . . .	1
v2.1.0.	
General: Fix bug with <code>\advanceline</code> at the beginning of a <code>\pstart</code> . . . . .	1
Fix bug with <code>\chapter</code> in optional argument of <code>\pstart</code> in parallel typesetting with <code>scrbook</code> . . . . .	1
Fix bug with <code>\eledchapter</code> in parallel typesetting with <code>scrbook</code> . . . . .	1
Fix bug with <code>\setline</code> at the beginning of a <code>\pstart</code> . . . . .	1
Fix spacing bug with <code>\Xhooknote</code> and <code>\hooknoteX</code> when using them to insert text and not to execute code. . . . .	1

New tools to number stanzas . . . . .	1
v2.1.1.	
General: Fix bug with <code>\ledpbsetting{before}</code> . . . . .	1
v2.1.2.	
General: Fix bug with lineation by <code>pstart</code> and <code>tabular</code> environments (added in 2.1.0). . . . .	1
v2.1.3.	
<code>\ledsetnormalparstuffX</code> : Replaced <code>\noindent</code> with <code>\parindent</code> set to 0pt. . . . .	204
General: <code>\Xhangindent</code> and <code>\hangindentX</code> work now with all the paragraphs in the note. . . . .	1
<code>\Xnoindent</code> and <code>\noindentX</code> work now again (broken in 2.0.0). . . . .	1
Change some internal code in order to provide compatibility with $\TeX$ release of october 2015 . . . . .	1
Fix bug which inserted double space before paragraphed familiar notes. . . . .	1
Fix bug with <code>\edindex</code> when using not-Latin characters without UTF-8 engines . . . . .	1
v2.2.0.	
General: Fix bug with combination of <code>\onehalfspacing</code> and two columns and three columns notes typeset. . . . .	1
Fix bug with some setting command and optimization option. . . . .	1
Fix spurious space with paragraphed critical notes when using $\text{Lua}\TeX$ . . . . .	1
Increase line list version number to ensure compatibility with new options of <code>reledpar</code> package. . . . .	1
New setting tools for endnotes: <code>\Xendnumberonlyfirstinline</code> , <code>\Xendnumberonlyfirstintwolines</code> , <code>\Xendsymmlinenumber</code> , <code>\Xendbeforenumber</code> , <code>\Xendafternumber</code> , <code>\Xendbeforesymmlinenumber</code> , <code>\Xendaftersymmlinenumber</code> , <code>\Xendboxsymmlinenumber</code> , <code>\Xendhangindent</code> , <code>\Xendbhooklinenumber</code> , <code>\Xendahooklinenumber</code> , <code>\Xendbhookinplaceofnumber</code> , <code>\Xendahookinplaceofnumber</code> . . . . .	1
v2.2.1.	
General: Compatibility with $\text{TeX}$ format 2015/10/01. . . . .	1
v2.2.2.	
General: Fix bug in <code>\sethangingsymbol</code> . . . . .	1
Fix bug with old version of <code>etex</code> . . . . .	1
v2.3.0.	
General: Disable empty lines as paragraph in stanza. . . . .	1
Fix compatibility of paragraphed footnotes with <code>bidiv17.9</code> and following. . . . .	1
Warning message when using some setting commands inside <code>rightside</code> environment (deprecated behavior) . . . . .	1
v2.3.1.	
General: Fix spurious space when using optional argument of <code>\stanza</code> (introduced in v2.3.0). . . . .	1
v2.4.0.	
<code>\footnoteoptions@</code> : First argument of <code>\footnoteoption@</code> is now mandatory, not optional. . . . .	154
General: <code>\Xbhooknote</code> and <code>\bhooknoteX</code> work with notes in columns. . . . .	1
Fix bug of <code>\parindentX</code> and <code>\Xparindent</code> with two columns and three columns notes. . . . .	1
Fix bug with <code>\sameword</code> in right side. . . . .	1
Fix spurious space in two columns and three columns notes. . . . .	1
Fix spurious space when using optional argument of <code>\stanza</code> (introduced in v2.3.0). . . . .	1
New hooks: <code>\Xlinerrangeseparator</code> and <code>\Xendlinerrangeseparator</code> . . . . .	35

Option linerangesep for critical footnotes and endnotes. . . . .	35
v2.4.1.	
General: Fix bug with \appref and \apprefwithpage (introduced in v2.4.0). . . . .	1
Fix bug with tabular environments when using babel or polyglossia languages that override $\LaTeX$ \roman command, like Greek language. . . . .	1
Fix bug with tabular environments when using babel or polyglossia languages that override $\LaTeX$ \roman command, like Greek. . . . .	1
v2.5.0.	
\Serefwithpage: Debug \setapprefprefixsingle . . . . .	254
\edlabel: Fix bug when calling \edlabel in a footnotes of the rightside . . . . .	245
\l@d@section: \endnotes take six arguments. . . . .	210
\printlines: \printlines takes an eighth argument: the line flag . . . . .	183
\xlineref: \xlineref does not include anymore the side flag. Use \xflagref to get it. Not that \edlineref still contains the flag. . . . .	249
General: \apprefwithpage and \appref print double quotation mark when the label was not defined. . . . .	1
\apprefwithpage and \appref work with right side crossref. . . . .	1
\apprefwithpage works also when noend option is enabled. . . . .	1
\appref and \apprefwithpage can take linerangesep optional argument. . . . .	1
\edlabel works now in \Xfootnote. . . . .	1
\lemma can be used even when the nocritical is enabled. . . . .	1
Compatibility with new hook and tools of reledpar 2.6.0. . . . .	1
Fix spurious vertical space in astanza environment (reledpar) . . . . .	1
Log now states ‘There were undefined references’ when using wrong references in \edlineref or edpageref. . . . .	1
New hooks to customize page and line number appearance in endnotes. . . . .	1
New hooks: \Xhookgroup and \hookgroupX. . . . .	1
New tools to easily make cross-reference to a passage defined by a start and an end line	52
v2.6.0.	
General: Adds compatibility with innnote and notenumber options of indextools package. . . . .	1
Fix bug with footnote counter in ledgroup (added in v2.5.0). . . . .	1
Fix bug, introduced in v2.5.0, with footnote numbering in parallel typesetting when using perpage package. . . . .	1
v2.7.0.	
\@k: \rigidbalance is split in \Xrigidbalance and \rigidbalanceX. . . . .	168
\l@d@section: \endnotes take seven arguments. . . . .	210
General: Add dash as default page range separator for \SEonlypage . . . . .	1
Debug \SErefonlypage when referring to only one page. . . . .	1
Delete parenthesis after \SErefonlypage. . . . .	1
Fix (again) bugs with footnote numbering in parallel typesetting while using ledgroup environments (bug added in v2.5.0). . . . .	1
Fix bug with \Serefwithpage. . . . .	1
Fix bugs in compatibility with innote and notenumber options of indextools package, when indexing outside of a ledgroup. . . . .	1
New commands to make glossaries connected to page and linenumber with the glossaries package . . . . .	1
New hooks: \Xhsize and \hsizeX . . . . .	44
New hooks: \Xlemmafont and \Xendlemmafont . . . . .	40

New setting commands: <code>\setSErefonlypageprefixsingle</code> and <code>\setSErefonlypageprefixmore</code> . . . . .	1
Warning for duplicate and undefined labels are parsable by latexmk . . . . .	1
Warning for duplicate labels does not send any more a false line and page number . . . . .	1
When using <code>hyperref</code> package, add link in familiar footnotes between the footnote marks in the text and the footnote marks in the footnote . . . . .	1
When using <code>hyperref</code> package, add links for <code>\SEref</code> and related, <code>\appref</code> and related. . . . .	1
When using <code>hyperref</code> package, add links from critical footnotes and critical endnotes to the line of text they refers . . . . .	1
v2.7.1.	
General: Debug <code>\Xhookgroup</code> hooks executed on columnar footnotes (moved to a larger group, to take effect). . . . .	1
v2.7.2.	
General: <code>\Xhsize</code> and <code>\hsizeX</code> become <code>\Xwidth</code> and <code>\widthX</code> . . . . .	44
Fix problem of hyphenation when using <code>hyperref</code> package (added in v2.7.0). . . . .	1
v2.8.0.	
<code>\l@d@section</code> : <code>\Xendhangindent</code> and <code>\Xendafternote</code> can take values which are relative to the font size of the endnote. . . . .	210
General: <code>reledmac</code> cross-referencing can take advantage of <code>xr</code> package. . . . .	1
More <code>\edgls...</code> commands. . . . .	1
No indentation for paragraphed notes in <code>ledgroup</code> . Can be changed with <code>\Xparindent</code> and <code>\parindentX</code> . . . . .	1
v2.8.1.	
General: Warnings for undefined labels are really parsable by latexmk . . . . .	1
v2.8.2.	
General: Fix bug concerning indent in a paragraph immediately following a sectioning command (bug NOT fixed on <code>reledpar</code> ) . . . . .	1
Fix bug with <code>\AtEveryPstart</code> added in version 2.0.0. . . . .	1
Fix bug with vertical space after the between-sectioning command as optional argument of a <code>\pstart</code> and <code>\pstart</code> content . . . . .	1
v2.9.0.	
General: Allow continuing line numbering between normal text and parallel text, using <code>\pausenumbering</code> and <code>\resumenumbering</code> and the <code>continuousnumberingwithcolumns</code> option. . . . .	1
Fix bug when using <code>\linenum{page}</code> and <code>\pausenumbering... \resumenumbering</code> . . . . .	1
Fix bug with three- and two-column footnote setting (added in v2.4.0). . . . .	1
Fix spurious space inside three-column familiar footnote. . . . .	1
Write correct metadata in numbered files when using <code>\pausenumbering... \resumenumbering</code> . . . . .	1
v2.9.1.	
General: Fix bug when notes start with “plus” or “minus”. . . . .	1
v2.9.2.	
General: Fix bug with <code>hyperref</code> package when a lemma starts with “plus” or “minus” (bug introduced in v. 2.7.0). . . . .	1
v2.9.3.	
General: Fix bug with line number position and reset added by v. 2.9.0 . . . . .	1
v2.10.0.	
<code>\print@lemma</code> : Code refactoring between <code>\parafootfmt</code> , <code>\twocolfootfmt</code> , <code>\threecolfootfmt</code> and <code>\normalfootfmt</code> . . . . .	175

General: Add <code>\AtEveryStanza</code> and <code>\AtEveryStopStanza</code> .	1
Fix bug in <code>\ledlsnotefontsetup</code> and <code>\ledrsnotefontsetup</code> which could not handle <code>\color</code> command properly.	1
More specific error messages.	1
New hooks: <code>\Xwrapcontent</code> , <code>\Xendwrapcontent</code> and <code>\wrapcontentX</code> .	41
New hooks: <code>\Xwraplemma</code> and <code>\Xendwraplemma</code>	41
v2.10.1.	
General: Add ‘nopenalties’ option.	1
Fix bug introduced in v. 1.4: not paragraphed critical footnotes could prevent marginal line number from being displayed	1
v2.11.0.	
<code>\do@actions@fixedcode</code> : Add action 1010	143
General: Add new tools to produce an apparatus of manuscripts	1
Fix bug in <code>\Xparafootsep</code> in parallel typesetting	1
Make <code>\parafootsepX</code> work	1
Prevent <code>\Xtxtbeforenotes</code> hook from causing notes to go beyond the bottom margin	1
v2.12.0.	
General: <code>\preXnotes</code> becomes <code>\Xprenotes</code> (naming convention)	1
Add <code>\hidenumberingonleftpage</code> and <code>\hidenumberingonrightpage</code>	1
Add <code>\toendnotes</code> and related.	1
Add <code>auxdir</code> option.	1
Fix bug in critical and familiar footnotes when using uppercase letters with accent mark	1
Fix bug when using <code>\chapter</code> in optional argument of <code>\pstart</code> in parallel typesetting in combination with the <code>noeledsec</code> option.	1
Fix bug with <code>\ledinnernote</code> and <code>\ledouternote</code> in parallel typesetting	1
Fix bug with familiar footnote number in optional argument of <code>\pstart</code> or <code>\pend</code> in parallel typesetting	1
Fix spurious vertical space in <code>\chapter</code> when used as optional argument of <code>\pstart</code> in parallel typesetting.	1
Make endnote compatible with <code>\sameword</code> mechanism	1
More accurate message to control the position of <code>\Xfootnote</code> and <code>\applabel</code> in the $\TeX$ code	1
v2.13.0.	
General: Version 2.13.0 never existed.	1
v2.13.1.	
General: In critical footnotes, the right side flag is printed only if requested explicitly with <code>\Xlineflag</code> (bug added in v. 2.5.0).	1
v2.13.2.	
General: Fix bug added in v. 11.2 which could make parallel typesetting not work.	1
v2.13.3.	
General: Makes <code>\Xendafterpagenumbe</code> affecting <code>\Serefwithpage</code>	1
v2.14.0.	
General: Hyperref with the line number inside critical footnotes is correct when using <code>\xxref</code>	1
Some internal changes for new features of <code>reledpar</code> .	1
v2.14.1.	
General: Fix bug when using <code>\footnoteX</code> in the first argument of <code>\edtext</code> .	1
v2.14.1a.	
General: Fix problematic typos in the handbook.	1